

April 2015

A-012651
State of Kansas - Energy & Service Center

3.13 MASONRY WASTE DISPOSAL

- A. Excess masonry materials and masonry waste are Contractor's property. At completion of unit masonry work, remove from Project site.

END OF SECTION 04 2000

04 2000 - 17
UNIT MASONRY

SECTION 044200 - EXTERIOR STONE CLADDING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following types of dimension stone:
 - 1. Panels set with individual anchors.
 - 2. Trim units, including copings, belt courses and sills.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
 - 1. Division 04 Section "Unit Masonry" for masonry accessories not specified herein, including but not limited to, through-wall flashing, cavity drainage material and weeps.
 - 2. Division 05 Section "Cold-Formed Metal Framing" for steel stud frames supporting dimension stone cladding.
 - 3. Division 07 Section "Water Repellents" for water repellent material applied to exterior stone cladding.
 - 4. Division 07 Section "Thermal Insulation" for cavity insulation.
 - 5. Division 07 Section "Fluid-Applied Membrane Air Barriers" for air barriers applied to backup system.
 - 6. Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" for sealing joints in dimension stone cladding system with elastomeric sealants.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Definitions contained in ASTM C 119 apply to this Section.
- B. Dimension Stone Cladding System: An exterior wall covering system consisting of dimension stone panels and trim together with anchors, secondary weather barrier (sheathing), mortar, adhesives, fasteners, and sealants used to secure the stone to building structure and to produce a weather-resistant covering.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General: Design stone anchors and anchoring systems according to ASTM C 1242.
- B. Structural Performance: Provide dimension stone cladding system capable of withstanding the effects of gravity loads and the following loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated:
 - 1. Wind Loads: Determine loads based on the following minimum design wind pressures:

- a. Uniform pressure as indicated on Drawings.
- C. Seismic Performance: Provide dimension stone cladding system capable of withstanding the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE 7.
- D. Thermal Movements: Provide dimension stone cladding system that allows for thermal movements resulting from the following maximum change (range) in ambient and surface temperatures by preventing displacement of stone, opening of joints, overstressing of components, failure of joint sealants, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects. Base engineering calculation on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.
 - 1. Temperature Change (Range): 120 deg F (67 deg C), ambient; 180 deg F (100 deg C), material surfaces.
- E. Horizontal Building Movement (Interstory Drift): Allow for maximum horizontal building movement equal to quotient resulting from dividing floor-to-floor height at any floor by 400.
- F. Shrinkage and Creep: Allow for progressive vertical shortening of building frame equal to 1/8 inch in 10 feet (3 mm in 3 m).
- G. Safety Factors for Stone: Design dimension stone cladding system to withstand loads indicated without exceeding allowable working stress of stone determined by dividing stone's average ultimate strength, as established by testing, by the following safety factors:
 - 1. Safety Factor for Oolitic Limestone: 8.
- H. Design stone anchors to withstand loads indicated without exceeding allowable working stresses established by the following:
 - 1. For Structural Steel: AISC's "Specification for Structural Steel Buildings - Allowable Stress Design and Plastic Design."
 - 2. For Cold-Formed Steel: AISI's "North American Specification for the Design of Cold-Formed Steel Structural Members."
 - 3. For Postinstalled Fasteners in Concrete: One-fourth of tested capacity when installed in concrete with compressive strength indicated.
 - 4. For Post-Installed Fasteners in Masonry: One-sixth of tested capacity when installed in masonry units indicated.
- I. Limit deflection in each prefabricated assembly caused by indicated loads and thermal movements, acting singly or in combination with one another, to not more than 1/720 of assembly's clear span or the following, whichever is smaller:
 - 1. 1/16 inch (1.5 mm), measured in plane of wall.
 - 2. 1/4 inch (6 mm), measured perpendicular to wall.
- J. Provisions for Fabrication and Erection Tolerances: Allow for fabrication and erection tolerances of building's structural system. [oncrete fabrication and erection tolerances are specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete." Structural-steel fabrication and erection tolerances are specified in Division 05 Section "Structural Steel Framing."
- K. Provision for Deflection of Building Structure: Allow for the following:

1. Deflection due to Weight of Dimension Stone Cladding System: Allow for 1/4-inch (6-mm) vertical deflection in 20-foot (6-m) span of structural members supporting dimension stone cladding system.
 2. Live Load Deflection: Allow for 1/4-inch (6-mm) vertical deflection, in 20-foot (6-m) span of structural members supporting dimension stone cladding system, due to live loads imposed on building's structural frame after stone installation.
- L. Control of Corrosion and Staining: Prevent galvanic and other forms of corrosion as well as staining by isolating metals and other materials from direct contact with incompatible materials. Use materials that do not stain exposed surfaces of stone and joint materials.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each variety of stone, stone accessory, and other manufactured products indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details for dimension stone cladding system, including dimensions and profiles of stone units.
1. Show locations and details of joints both within dimension stone cladding system and between dimension stone cladding system and other construction.
 2. Include details of mortar joints, sealant joints and mortar joints pointed with sealant.
 3. Show locations and details of anchors.
 4. Include large-scale shaded elevations and details of decorative surfaces and inscriptions.
 5. For installed products indicated to comply with design loads, include structural analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For joint materials involving color selection.
- D. Stone Samples for Verification: Sets for each color, grade, finish, and variety of stone required; not less than 12 inches (300 mm) square.
1. Sets shall consist of at least two Samples, exhibiting extremes of the full range of color and other visual characteristics expected and will establish the standard by which stone will be judged.
- E. Welding certificates.
- F. Qualification Data: For Installer and fabricator.
- G. Material Test Reports: From a qualified independent testing agency, as follows:
1. Stone Test Reports: For each stone variety proposed for use on Project, provide test data indicating compliance with required physical properties, other than abrasion resistance, according to referenced ASTM standards. Base reports on testing done within previous five years.
 2. For metal components, indicate chemical and physical properties of metal.
 3. Sealant Compatibility and Adhesion Test Report: From sealant manufacturer complying with requirements in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" and indicating that sealants will not stain or damage stone. Include interpretation of test results and recommendations for primers and substrate preparation needed for adhesion.

- 4. Preconstruction Sealant Field Test Report: From Installer, complying with requirements in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants."
- H. Cold-Weather Procedures: Detailed description of methods, materials, and equipment to be used to comply with cold-weather requirements.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: A firm or individual experienced in installing dimension stone cladding systems similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project, whose work has a record of successful in-service performance.
- B. Fabricator Qualifications: Shop that employs skilled workers who custom-fabricate dimension stone cladding systems similar to that required for this Project and whose products have a record of successful in-service performance.
 - 1. Fabricator's responsibilities include fabricating dimension stone cladding and providing professional engineering services needed to assume engineering responsibility.
 - 2. Engineering Responsibility: Comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer.
- C. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency qualified according to ASTM E 329 for testing indicated.
- D. Source Limitations for Stone: Obtain each variety of stone, regardless of finish, from a single quarry, whether specified in this Section or in another Section of the Specifications, with resources to provide materials of consistent quality in appearance and physical properties.
 - 1. For stone types that include same list of varieties and sources, provide same variety from same source for each.
 - 2. Make quarried blocks available for examination by Architect for appearance characteristics.
- E. Source Limitations for Mortar Materials: Obtain mortar ingredients of uniform quality for each cementitious component from a single manufacturer and each aggregate from one source or producer.
- F. Source Limitations for Other Materials: Obtain each type of stone accessory, sealant, and other material from a single manufacturer for each product.
- G. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code—Steel."
- H. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for materials and execution.
 - 1. Build mockups of typical exterior wall with dimension stone cladding, approximately 72 inches (1800 mm) long by 48 inches (1200 mm) high.
 - a. Show typical components, attachments to building structure, and methods of installation.
 - b. Include window opening with stone returns.

- c. Include sealant-filled joint complying with requirements in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants."

- 2. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless such deviations are specifically approved by Architect in writing.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store and handle stone and related materials to prevent deterioration or damage due to moisture, temperature changes, contaminants, corrosion, breaking, chipping, and other causes.
 - 1. Lift stone with wide-belt slings; do not use wire rope or ropes that might cause staining. Move stone, if required, using dollies with cushioned wood supports.
 - 2. Store stone on wood skids or pallets with nonstaining, waterproof covers. Arrange to distribute weight evenly and to prevent damage to stone. Ventilate under covers to prevent condensation.
- B. Mark stone units, on surface that will be concealed after installation, with designations used on Shop Drawings to identify individual stone units. Orient markings on vertical panels so that they are right side up when units are installed.
- C. Deliver sealants to Project site in original unopened containers labeled with manufacturer's name, product name and designation, color, expiration period, pot life, curing time, and mixing instructions for multicomponent materials.
- D. Store cementitious materials on elevated platforms, under cover, and in a dry location. Do not use cementitious materials that have become damp.
- E. Store aggregates in locations where grading and other required characteristics can be maintained and where contamination can be avoided.

1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Protect dimension stone cladding during erection as follows:
 - 1. Cover tops of dimension stone cladding installation with nonstaining, waterproof sheeting at end of each day's work. Cover partially completed structures when work is not in progress. Extend cover a minimum of 24 inches (600 mm) down both sides and hold securely in place.
 - 2. Prevent staining of stone from mortar, grout, sealants, and other sources. Immediately remove such materials without damaging stone.
 - 3. Protect base of walls from rain-splashed mud and mortar splatter by coverings spread on ground and over wall surface.
 - 4. Protect sills, ledges, and projections from mortar and sealant droppings.
- B. Cold-Weather Requirements: Do not use frozen materials or materials mixed or coated with ice or frost. Remove and replace dimension stone cladding damaged by frost or freezing conditions.
 - 1. Comply with cold-weather construction and protection requirements for masonry contained in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602.

2. Cold-Weather Construction: When ambient temperature is within limits indicated, use the following procedures:
 - a. At 40 deg F (5 deg C) and below, produce mortar temperatures between 40 and 120 deg F (5 and 49 deg C) by heating mixing water, sand, or both. Do not heat water to above 160 deg F (71 deg C).
 - b. At 32 deg F (0 deg C) and below, maintain temperature of mortar on boards above freezing. Heat stone and substrates so they are above 32 deg F (0 deg C) at time of installation.
 - c. At 25 to 20 deg F (minus 4 to minus 7 deg C), heat both sides of walls under construction. Use windbreaks or enclosures when wind velocity exceeds 15 mph (25 km/h).
 - d. At 20 deg F (minus 7 deg C) and below, provide enclosure and auxiliary heat to maintain air temperature above 32 deg F (0 deg C) within enclosure.
 3. Cold-Weather Protection: When mean daily temperature is within limits indicated, provide the following protection for 48 hours after construction:
 - a. 40 to 25 Deg F (Plus 5 to Minus 4 Deg C): Cover dimension stone cladding with a weather-resistant membrane.
 - b. 25 to 20 Deg F (Minus 4 to Minus 7 Deg C): Cover dimension stone cladding with weather-resistant, insulating blankets or provide enclosure and heat to maintain air temperature above 32 deg F (0 deg C) within enclosure. Use windbreaks or enclosures when wind velocity exceeds 15 mph (25 km/h).
 - c. 20 Deg F (Minus 7 Deg C) and below: Provide enclosure and heat to maintain air temperature above 32 deg F (0 deg C) within enclosure.
 - C. Hot-Weather Requirements: Comply with hot-weather construction and protection requirements for masonry contained in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602.
 - D. Environmental Limitations for Sealants: Do not install sealants when ambient and substrate temperatures are outside limits permitted by sealant manufacturer or below 40 deg F (5 deg C) or when joint substrates are wet.
- 1.9 COORDINATION
- A. Coordinate installation of inserts that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry, flashing reglets, and similar items to be used by dimension stone cladding Installer for anchoring, supporting, and flashing of dimension stone cladding system. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing such items and deliver to Project site in time for installation.
 - B. Time delivery and installation of dimension stone cladding to avoid extended on-site storage and to coordinate with work adjacent to dimension stone cladding.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 LIMESTONE

- A. Limestone: Comply with ASTM C 568.

1. Classification: II Medium-Density.
 2. Description: Oolitic limestone.
- B. Variety and Source: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:
1. U.S. Stone Industries; Bayer Stone Division; Cottonwood Bottom Ledge.
- C. Cut stone from one block or contiguous, matched blocks in which natural markings occur.
- D. Finish:
1. Honed: Provide smooth finish at Statehouse exterior stairway.
 2. Belt Smoothed: Provide belt smoothed finish at Energy and Service Center building.
- E. Thickness: Not less than 3 inches (100 mm), unless otherwise indicated.

2.2 MORTAR MATERIALS

- A. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I or Type II, except Type III may be used for cold-weather construction. Provide natural color or white cement as required to produce mortar color indicated.
1. Low-Alkali Cement: Portland cement for use with limestone shall contain not more than 0.60 percent total alkali when tested according to ASTM C 114.
- B. Hydrated Lime: ASTM C 207.
- C. Portland Cement-Lime Mix: Packaged blend of portland cement complying with ASTM C 150, Type I or Type III, and hydrated lime complying with ASTM C 207.
- D. Aggregate: ASTM C 144; except for joints narrower than 1/4 inch (6 mm) and pointing mortar, use aggregate graded with 100 percent passing No. 16 (1.18-mm) sieve.
- E. Water: Potable.

2.3 ANCHORS AND FASTENERS

- A. Fabricate anchors, including shelf angles, from stainless steel, ASTM A 666, Type 304, temper as required to support loads imposed without exceeding allowable design stresses. Fabricate dowels and pins for anchors from stainless steel, ASTM A 276, Type 304.
- B. Postinstalled Anchor Bolts for Concrete and Masonry: Chemical anchors or torque-controlled expansion anchors made from stainless-steel components complying with ASTM F 593 and ASTM F 594, Alloy Group 1 or 2 (ASTM F 738M and ASTM F 836M, Alloy Group A1 or A4) for bolts and nuts; ASTM A 666 or ASTM A 276, Type 304 or 316, for anchors, with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to 4 times the loads imposed, for concrete, or 6 times the load imposed, for masonry, as determined by testing per ASTM E 488, conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.
- C. Threaded Fasteners: Heavy hexagon structural bolts, heavy hexagon nuts, and hardened washers.

1. For stainless steel, use annealed stainless-steel bolts, nuts, and washers; ASTM F 593 (ASTM F 738M) for bolts; and ASTM F 594 (ASTM F 836M) for nuts, Alloy Group [1 (A1)] [2 (A4)].

2.4 STONE ACCESSORIES

- A. Setting Shims: Strips of resilient plastic or vulcanized neoprene, Type A Shore durometer hardness of 50 to 70, nonstaining to stone, of thickness needed to prevent point loading of stone on anchors and of depths to suit anchors without intruding into required depths of pointing materials.
- B. Setting Buttons: Resilient plastic buttons, nonstaining to stone, sized to suit joint thicknesses and bed depths of stone units without intruding into required depths of pointing materials.
- C. Sealants for Joints in Dimension Stone Cladding: Manufacturer's standard chemically curing, elastomeric sealants of base polymer and characteristics indicated below that comply with applicable requirements in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" and do not stain stone.

2.5 STONE FABRICATION

- A. General: Fabricate stone units in sizes and shapes required to comply with requirements indicated, including details on Drawings and Shop Drawings.
 1. For limestone, comply with recommendations in ILI's "Indiana Limestone Handbook."
- B. Control depth of stone and back check to maintain minimum clearance of 1 inch (25 mm) between backs of stone units and surfaces or projections of structural members, fireproofing (if any), backup walls, and other work behind stone.
- C. Dress joints (bed and vertical) straight and at right angle to face, unless otherwise indicated. Shape beds to fit supports.
- D. Cut and drill sinkages and holes in stone for anchors, fasteners, supports, and lifting devices as indicated or needed to set stone securely in place.
- E. Finish exposed faces and edges of stone, except sawed reveals, to comply with requirements indicated for finish and to match approved samples and mockups.
- F. Quirk-miter corners, unless otherwise indicated; provide for cramp anchorage in top and bottom bed joints of corner pieces.
- G. Cut stone to produce uniform joints 3/8 inch (10 mm) wide and in locations indicated.
- H. Contiguous Work: Provide chases, reveals, reglets, openings, and similar features as required to accommodate contiguous work.
- I. Fabricate molded work, including washes and drips, to produce stone shapes with a uniform profile throughout entire unit length, with precisely formed arris slightly eased to prevent snipping, and with matching profile at joints between units.
 1. Produce moldings and molded edges with machines that use abrasive shaping wheels made to reverse contour of molding shape.

- J. Clean backs of stone to remove rust stains, iron particles, and stone dust.
- K. Inspect finished stone units at fabrication plant for compliance with requirements for appearance, material, and fabrication. Replace defective units.
 - 1. Grade and mark stone for overall uniform appearance when assembled in place. Natural variations in appearance are acceptable if installed stone units match range of colors and other appearance characteristics represented in approved samples and mockups.

2.6 MORTAR MIXES

- A. General: Comply with referenced standards and with manufacturers' written instructions for mix proportions, mixing equipment, mixer speeds, mixing containers, mixing time, and other procedures needed to produce mortar of uniform quality and with optimum performance characteristics.
 - 1. Do not use admixtures, including pigments, air-entraining agents, accelerators, retarders, water-repellent agents, antifreeze compounds, or other admixtures, unless otherwise indicated. Do not use calcium chloride.
 - 2. Combine and thoroughly mix cementitious materials, water, and aggregates in a mechanical batch mixer, unless otherwise indicated. Discard mortar when it has reached initial set.
- B. Portland Cement-Lime Setting Mortar: Comply with ASTM C 270, Proportion Specification, for types of mortar indicated below:
 - 1. Set limestone with Type N mortar.
- C. Pointing Mortar: Comply with ASTM C 270, Proportion Specification, for types of mortar indicated. Provide pointing mortar mixed to match Architect's sample and complying with the following:
 - 1. Point limestone with Type N mortar.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine surfaces to receive dimension stone cladding and conditions under which dimension stone cladding will be installed, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance.
 - 1. For the record, prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of dimension stone cladding.
 - 2. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 SETTING DIMENSION STONE CLADDING, GENERAL

- A. Before setting stone clean surfaces that are dirty or stained by removing soil, stains, and foreign materials. Clean stone by thoroughly scrubbing with fiber brushes and then drenching with

clear water. Use only mild cleaning compounds that contain no caustic or harsh materials or abrasives.

- B. Execute dimension stone cladding installation by skilled mechanics and employ skilled stone fitters at Project site to do necessary field cutting as stone is set.
 - 1. Use power saws with diamond blades to cut stone. Produce lines cut straight and true, with edges eased slightly to prevent snapping.
- C. Contiguous Work: Provide reveals, reglets, and openings as required to accommodate contiguous work.
- D. Set stone to comply with requirements indicated on Drawings and Shop Drawings. Install anchors, supports, fasteners, and other attachments indicated or necessary to secure dimension stone cladding in place. Shim and adjust anchors, supports, and accessories to set stone accurately in locations indicated with uniform joints of widths indicated and with edges and faces aligned according to established relationships and indicated tolerances.
- E. Provide expansion, control, and pressure-relieving joints of widths and at locations indicated.
 - 1. Sealing expansion and other joints is specified in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants."
 - 2. Keep expansion joints free of mortar and other rigid materials.
- F. Install concealed flashing at continuous shelf angles, lintels, ledges, and similar obstructions to downward flow of water to divert water to building exterior.
- G. Keep cavities open where unfilled space is indicated between back of stone units and backup wall; do not fill cavities with mortar or grout.
 - 1. Place weep holes in joints where moisture may accumulate, including base of cavity walls, above shelf angles, and flashing. Locate weep holes at intervals not exceeding 24 inches (600 mm).

3.3 SETTING MECHANICALLY ANCHORED DIMENSION STONE CLADDING

- A. Attach anchors securely to stone and to backup surfaces. Comply with recommendations in ASTM C 1242.
- B. Provide compressible filler in ends of dowel holes and bottoms of kerfs to prevent end bearing of dowels and anchor tabs on stone. Fill remainder of anchor holes and kerfs with sealant indicated for filling kerfs.
- C. Set stone supported on clips or continuous angles on resilient setting shims. Use material of thickness required to maintain uniform joint widths and to prevent point loading of stone on anchors. Hold shims back from face of stone a distance at least equal to width of joint.

3.4 SETTING DIMENSION STONE CLADDING WITH MORTAR

- A. Set stone in full bed of mortar with head joints filled, unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Use setting buttons of adequate size, in sufficient quantity, and of thickness required to maintain uniform joint width and to prevent mortar from extruding. Hold buttons back

- from face of stone a distance at least equal to width of joint, but not less than depth of pointing materials.
2. Do not set heavy units or projecting courses until mortar in courses below has hardened enough to resist being squeezed out of joint.
 3. Support and brace projecting stones until wall above is in place and mortar has set.
 4. Provide compressible filler in ends of dowel holes and bottoms of kerfs to prevent end bearing of dowels and anchor tabs on stone. Fill remainder of anchor holes and kerfs with mortar.
- B. Embed ends of sills in mortar; leave remainder of joint open until final pointing.
- C. Rake out joints for pointing with mortar to depths of not less than 1/2 inch (12 mm). Rake joints to uniform depths with square bottoms and clean sides.
- D. Prepare stone-joint surfaces for pointing with mortar by removing dust and mortar particles. Where setting mortar was removed to depths greater than surrounding areas, apply first layer of pointing mortar in layers not more than 3/8 inch (10 mm) until a uniform depth is formed.
- E. Point stone joints by placing pointing mortar in layers not more than 3/8 inch (10 mm). Compact each layer thoroughly and allow to become thumbprint hard before applying next layer.
- F. Tool joints with a round jointer having a diameter 1/8 inch (3 mm) larger than width of joint, when pointing mortar is thumbprint hard.
- G. Rake out mortar from sealant-pointed joints to depths of not less than 1/2 inch (12 mm) nor less than that required for sealant and sealant backing. Rake joints to uniform depths with square bottoms and clean sides.
- H. Set the following dimension stone cladding with unfilled head joints for installing joint sealants:
1. Cornices.
 2. Copings.
 3. Belt and other projecting courses.
- 3.5 JOINT-SEALANT INSTALLATION
- A. Prepare joints and apply sealants of type and at locations indicated to comply with applicable requirements in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants."
- 3.6 INSTALLATION TOLERANCES
- A. Variation from Plumb: For vertical lines and surfaces of walls, do not exceed 1/4 inch in 10 feet (6 mm in 3 m), 3/8 inch in 20 feet (10 mm in 6 m), or 1/2 inch in 40 feet (12 mm in 12 m) or more. For external corners, corners and jambs within 20 feet (6 m) of an entrance, expansion joints, and other conspicuous lines, do not exceed 1/8 inch in 10 feet (3 mm in 3 m), 1/4 inch in 20 feet (6 mm in 6 m), or 3/8 inch in 40 feet (10 mm in 12 m) or more.
- B. Variation from Level: For lintels, sills, water tables, parapets, horizontal bands, horizontal grooves, and other conspicuous lines, do not exceed 1/8 inch in 10 feet (3 mm in 3 m), 1/4 inch in 20 feet (6 mm in 6 m), or 3/8 inch (10 mm) maximum.

- C. Variation of Linear Building Line: For positions shown in plan and related portions of walls and partitions, do not exceed 1/4 inch in 20 feet (6 mm in 6 m) or 1/2 inch in 40 feet (12 mm in 12 m) or more.
- D. Variation in Cross-Sectional Dimensions: For thickness of walls from dimensions indicated, do not exceed plus or minus 1/4 inch (6 mm).
- E. Variation in Joint Width: Do not vary from average joint width more than plus or minus 1/8 inch (3 mm) or a quarter of nominal joint width, whichever is less. For joints within 60 inches (1500 mm) of each other, do not vary more than 1/8 inch (3 mm) or a quarter of nominal joint width, whichever is less from one to the other.
- F. Variation in Plane between Adjacent Stone Units (Lipping): Do not exceed 1/16-inch (1.5-mm) difference between planes of adjacent units.

3.7 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Remove and replace broken, chipped, stained, or otherwise damaged stone, defective joints, and dimension stone cladding that does not match approved samples and mockups. Damaged stone may be repaired if Architect approves methods and results.
- B. Replace in a manner that results in dimension stone cladding's matching approved samples and mockups, complying with other requirements, and showing no evidence of replacement.
- C. In-Progress Cleaning: Clean dimension stone cladding as work progresses. Remove mortar fins and smears before tooling joints. Remove excess sealant and smears as sealant is installed.
- D. Final Cleaning: Clean dimension stone cladding no fewer than six days after completion of pointing and sealing, using clean water and stiff-bristle fiber brushes. Do not use wire brushes, acid-type cleaning agents, cleaning agents containing caustic compounds or abrasives, or other materials or methods that could damage stone.

END OF SECTION 044200

SECTION 047200 - CAST STONE MASONRY

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Cast stone trim including the following:
 - a. Copings.
 - b. Accessories.
- B. Related Sections:
 - 1. Division 04 Section "Unit Masonry" for installing cast stone units in unit masonry.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
 - 1. For cast stone units, include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details for cast stone units. Include dimensions, details of reinforcement and anchorages if any, and indication of finished faces.
 - 1. Include building elevations showing layout of units and locations of joints and anchors.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For colored mortar.
- D. Samples for Verification: For each color and texture of cast stone required, 10 inches250 mm square in size.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For manufacturer.
 - 1. Include copies of material test reports for completed projects, indicating compliance of cast stone with ASTM C 1364.
- B. Material Test Reports: For each mix required to produce cast stone, based on testing according to ASTM C 1364, including test for resistance to freezing and thawing.

04 7200 - 1
CAST STONE MASONRY

1. Provide test reports based on testing within previous two years.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: A qualified manufacturer of cast stone units similar to those indicated for this Project, that has sufficient production capacity to manufacture required units, and is a plant certified by the Cast Stone Institute.
- B. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM E 329 for testing indicated.
- C. Source Limitations for Cast Stone: Obtain cast stone units through single source from single manufacturer.
- D. Mockups: Furnish cast stone for installation in mockups specified in Division 04 Section "Unit Masonry."

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Coordinate delivery of cast stone with unit masonry work.
- B. Pack, handle, and ship cast stone units in suitable packs or pallets.
 1. Lift with wide-belt slings; do not use wire rope or ropes that might cause staining. Move cast stone units, if required, using dollies with wood supports.
 2. Store cast stone units on wood skids or pallets with nonstaining, waterproof covers, securely tied. Arrange to distribute weight evenly and to prevent damage to units. Ventilate under covers to prevent condensation.
- C. Store cementitious materials on elevated platforms, under cover, and in a dry location. Do not use cementitious materials that have become damp.

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Cold-Weather Requirements: Do not use frozen materials or materials mixed or coated with ice or frost. Do not build on frozen substrates. Comply with cold-weather construction requirements in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602.
 1. Cold-Weather Cleaning: Use liquid cleaning methods only when air temperature is 40 deg F 4 deg C and above and will remain so until cast stone has dried, but no fewer than seven days after completing cleaning.
- B. Hot-Weather Requirements: Comply with hot-weather construction requirements in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CAST STONE MATERIALS

- A. General: Comply with ASTM C 1364 and the following:

04 7200 - 2
CAST STONE MASONRY

- B. Color Pigment: ASTM C 979, synthetic mineral-oxide pigments or colored water-reducing admixtures; color stable, free of carbon black, nonfading, and resistant to lime and other alkalis.

2.2 CAST STONE UNITS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, **provide products by one of the following:**
 - 1. Architectural Cast Stone, Inc.
 - 2. Corinthian Cast Stone, Inc.
 - 3. Continental Cast Stone Manufacturing, Inc.
 - 4. Heritage Cast Stone, Inc.
 - 5. Midwest Cast Stone.
- B. Provide cast stone units complying with ASTM C 1364 using either the vibrant dry tamp or wet-cast method.
 - 1. Provide units that are resistant to freezing and thawing as determined by laboratory testing according to ASTM C 666/C 666M, Procedure A, as modified by ASTM C 1364.
- C. Fabricate units with sharp arris and accurately reproduced details, with indicated texture on all exposed surfaces unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Slope exposed horizontal surfaces 1:12 to drain unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Provide drips on projecting elements unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Fabrication Tolerances:
 - 1. Variation in Cross Section: Do not vary from indicated dimensions by more than 1/8 inch
 - 2. Variation in Length: Do not vary from indicated dimensions by more than 1/360 of the length of unit or 1/8 inch, whichever is greater, but in no case by more than 1/4 inch.
 - 3. Warp, Bow, and Twist: Not to exceed 1/360 of the length of unit or 1/8 inch, whichever is greater.
 - 4. Location of Grooves, False Joints, Holes, Anchorages, and Similar Features: Do not vary from indicated position by more than 1/8 inch on formed surfaces of units and 3/8 inch on unformed surfaces.
- E. Cure units as follows:
 - 1. Cure units in enclosed moist curing room at 95 to 100 percent relative humidity and temperature of 100 deg F 38 deg C for 12 hours or 70 deg F 21 deg C for 16 hours.
 - 2. Keep units damp and continue curing to comply with one of the following:
 - a. No fewer than five days at mean daily temperature of 70 deg F 21 deg C or above.
- F. Acid etch units after curing to remove cement film from surfaces to be exposed to view.
- G. Colors and Textures: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

2.3 MORTAR MATERIALS

- A. Aggregate for Mortar: ASTM C 144.

1. For mortar that is exposed to view, use washed aggregate consisting of natural sand or crushed stone.
2. For joints less than 1/4 inch thick, use aggregate graded with 100 percent passing the No. 16 sieve.

B. Water: Potable.

2.4 ACCESSORIES

A. Anchors/Dowels: Type and size indicated, fabricated from Type 304 stainless steel complying with ASTM A 240/A 240M, ASTM A 276, or ASTM A 666.

B. Skate Stoppers:

1. Product: Morgan, Laser series – Surface Mount by Skate Stoppers
2. Material: White Tombasil
3. Finish: Brushed finish with matte clear coat
4. Corner Radius : 1/2"
5. Outside Dimensions: 1inch wide by 6 3/4 inch deep by 1 inch tall.
6. Anchoring: anchored with two blind SMART PINS PLUS anchors. Use anchors in conjunction with two-part epoxy.
7. Product spacing: 18 inches from end of planters/walls and per drawing.

2.5 MORTAR MIXES

A. Comply with requirements in Division 04 Section "Unit Masonry" for mortar mixes.

2.6 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Engage a qualified independent testing agency to sample and test cast stone units according to ASTM C 1364.

1. Include one test for resistance to freezing and thawing.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 SETTING CAST STONE IN MORTAR

- A. Rake out joints for pointing with mortar to depths of not less than 3/4 inch 19 mm. Rake joints to uniform depths with square bottoms and clean sides. Scrub faces of units to remove excess mortar as joints are raked.

- B. Point mortar joints by placing and compacting mortar in layers not greater than 3/8 inch10 mm. Compact each layer thoroughly and allow it to become thumbprint hard before applying next layer.
- C. Rake out joints for pointing with sealant to depths of not less than 3/4 inch19 mm. Scrub faces of units to remove excess mortar as joints are raked.
- D. Point joints with sealant to comply with applicable requirements in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."
 - 1. Prime cast-stone surfaces to receive sealant and install compressible backer rod in joints before applying sealant unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Provide sealant joints at head joints of copings and other horizontal surfaces; at expansion, control, and pressure-relieving joints; and at locations indicated.
 - 1. Keep joints free of mortar and other rigid materials.
 - 2. Build in compressible foam-plastic joint fillers where indicated.
 - 3. Form joint of width indicated, but not less than 3/8 inch.
 - 4. Prime cast-stone surfaces to receive sealant and install compressible backer rod in joints before applying sealant unless otherwise indicated.
 - 5. Prepare and apply sealant of type and at locations indicated to comply with applicable requirements in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."

3.3 INSTALLATION TOLERANCES

- A. Variation from Plumb: Do not exceed 1/8 inch in 10 feet, 1/4 inch in 20 feet, or 1/2 inch maximum.
- B. Variation from Level: Do not exceed 1/8 inch in 10 feet, 1/4 inch in 20 feet, or 1/2 inch maximum.
- C. Variation in Joint Width: Do not vary joint thickness more than 1/8 inch in 36 inches or one-fourth of nominal joint width, whichever is less.
- D. Variation in Plane between Adjacent Surfaces (Lipping): Do not vary from flush alignment with adjacent units or adjacent surfaces indicated to be flush with units by more than 1/16 inch, except where variation is due to warpage of units within tolerances specified.

3.4 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Remove and replace stained and otherwise damaged units and units not matching approved Samples. Cast stone may be repaired if methods and results are approved by Architect.
- B. Replace units in a manner that results in cast stone matching approved Samples, complying with other requirements, and showing no evidence of replacement.
- C. In-Progress Cleaning: Clean cast stone as work progresses.
 - 1. Remove mortar fins and smears before tooling joints.
 - 2. Remove excess sealant immediately, including spills, smears, and spatter.
- D. Final Cleaning: After mortar is thoroughly set and cured, clean exposed cast stone as follows:

April 2015

A-012651
State of Kansas - Energy & Service Center

1. Remove large mortar particles by hand with wooden paddles and nonmetallic scrape hoes or chisels.
2. Test cleaning methods on sample; leave one sample uncleaned for comparison purposes. Obtain Architect's approval of sample cleaning before proceeding with cleaning of cast stone.
3. Protect adjacent surfaces from contact with cleaner by covering them with liquid strippable masking agent or polyethylene film and waterproof masking tape.
4. Wet surfaces with water before applying cleaners; remove cleaners promptly by rinsing thoroughly with clear water.
5. Clean cast stone by bucket-and-brush hand-cleaning method described in BIA Technical Notes 20.

END OF SECTION 047200

04 7200 - 6
CAST STONE MASONRY

SECTION 05 1200 - STRUCTURAL STEEL FRAMING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Structural steel.
 - 2. Grout.
- B. Related Sections:
 - 1. Division 05 Section "Steel Decking" for field installation of shear connectors through deck.
 - 2. Division 05 Section "Metal Fabrications" for steel lintels and shelf angles not attached to structural-steel frame miscellaneous steel fabrications and other metal items not defined as structural steel.
 - 3. Division 05 Section "Metal Pan Stairs."
 - 4. Division 09 painting Sections for surface-preparation and priming requirements.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Structural Steel: Elements of structural-steel frame, as classified by AISC 303, "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges."
- B. Heavy Sections: Rolled and built-up sections as follows:
 - 1. Shapes included in ASTM A 6/A 6M with flanges thicker than 1-1/2 inches (38 mm).
 - 2. Welded built-up members with plates thicker than 2 inches (50 mm).
 - 3. Column base plates thicker than 2 inches (50 mm).
- C. Demand Critical Welds: Those welds, the failure of which would result in significant degradation of the strength and stiffness of the Seismic-Load-Resisting System and which are indicated as "Demand Critical" or "Seismic Critical" on Drawings.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Connections: Provide details of connections required by the Contract Documents to be selected or completed by structural-steel fabricator, including comprehensive engineering design by a qualified professional engineer, to withstand loads indicated and comply with other information and restrictions indicated.
 - 1. Select and complete connections using schematic details indicated.
- B. Moment Connections: Type FR, fully restrained.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication of structural-steel components.
 - 1. Include details of cuts, connections, splices, camber, holes, and other pertinent data.
 - 2. Include embedment Drawings.
 - 3. Indicate welds by standard AWS symbols, distinguishing between shop and field welds, and show size, length, and type of each weld. Show backing bars that are to be removed and supplemental fillet welds where backing bars are to remain.
 - 4. Indicate type, size, and length of bolts, distinguishing between shop and field bolts. Identify pretensioned and slip-critical, high-strength bolted connections.
 - 5. Identify members and connections of the Seismic-Load-Resisting System.
 - 6. Indicate locations and dimensions of protected zones.
 - 7. Identify demand critical welds.
- C. Welding Procedure Specifications (WPSs) and Procedure Qualification Records (PQRs): Provide according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel," for each welded joint whether prequalified or qualified by testing, including the following:
 - 1. Power source (constant current or constant voltage).
 - 2. Electrode manufacturer and trade name, for demand critical welds.
- D. Delegated-Design Submittal: For structural-steel connections indicated to comply with design loads, include analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer and fabricator shop-painting.
- B. Welding certificates.
- C. Paint Compatibility Certificates: From manufacturers of topcoats applied over shop primers, certifying that shop primers are compatible with topcoats.
- D. Mill test reports for structural steel, including chemical and physical properties.
- E. Product Test Reports: For the following:
 - 1. Bolts, nuts, and washers including mechanical properties and chemical analysis.
 - 2. Direct-tension indicators.
 - 3. Tension-control, high-strength, bolt-nut-washer assemblies.
 - 4. Shear stud connectors.
 - 5. Shop primers.
 - 6. Nonshrink grout.
- F. Survey of existing conditions.
- G. Source quality-control reports.
- H. Field quality-control reports.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Fabricator Qualifications: A qualified fabricator that participates in the AISC Quality Certification Program and is designated an AISC-Certified Plant, Category STD.
- B. Installer Qualifications: A qualified installer who participates in the AISC Quality Certification Program and is designated an AISC-Certified Erector, Category ACSE.
- C. Shop-Painting Applicators: Qualified according to AISC's Sophisticated Paint Endorsement P1 or SSPC-QP 3, "Standard Procedure for Evaluating Qualifications of Shop Painting Applicators."
- D. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
 - 1. Welders and welding operators performing work on bottom-flange, demand-critical welds shall pass the supplemental welder qualification testing, as required by AWS D1.8. FCAW-S and FCAW-G shall be considered separate processes for welding personnel qualification.
- E. Comply with applicable provisions of the following specifications and documents:
 - 1. AISC 303.
 - 2. AISC 341 and AISC 341s1.
 - 3. AISC 360.
 - 4. RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts."
- F. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store materials to permit easy access for inspection and identification. Keep steel members off ground and spaced by using pallets, dunnage, or other supports and spacers. Protect steel members and packaged materials from corrosion and deterioration.
 - 1. Do not store materials on structure in a manner that might cause distortion, damage, or overload to members or supporting structures. Repair or replace damaged materials or structures as directed.
- B. Store fasteners in a protected place in sealed containers with manufacturer's labels intact.
 - 1. Fasteners may be repackaged provided Owner's testing and inspecting agency observes repackaging and seals containers.
 - 2. Clean and relubricate bolts and nuts that become dry or rusty before use.
 - 3. Comply with manufacturers' written recommendations for cleaning and lubricating ASTM F 1852 fasteners and for retesting fasteners after lubrication.

1.9 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate selection of shop primers with topcoats to be applied over them. Comply with paint and coating manufacturers' recommendations to ensure that shop primers and topcoats are compatible with one another.
- B. Coordinate installation of anchorage items to be embedded in or attached to other construction without delaying the Work. Provide setting diagrams, sheet metal templates, instructions, and directions for installation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 STRUCTURAL-STEEL MATERIALS

- A. W-Shapes: ASTM A 992/A 992M, Grade 50 (345).
- B. Channels, Angles, M , S-Shapes: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
- C. Plate and Bar: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
- D. Corrosion-Resisting Structural-Steel Shapes, Plates, and Bars: ASTM A 588/A 588M, Grade 50 (345).
- E. Cold-Formed Hollow Structural Sections: ASTM A 500, Grade B C, structural tubing.
- F. Corrosion-Resisting Cold-Formed Hollow Structural Sections: ASTM A 847/A 847M, structural tubing.
- G. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E or S, Grade B.
 - 1. Weight Class: As indicated on drawings.
 - 2. Finish: Black except where indicated to be galvanized.
- H. Steel Castings: ASTM A 216/A 216M, Grade WCB with supplementary requirement S11.
- I. Steel Forgings: ASTM A 668/A 668M.
- J. Welding Electrodes: Comply with AWS requirements.

2.2 BOLTS, CONNECTORS, AND ANCHORS

- A. Tension-Control, High-Strength Bolt-Nut-Washer Assemblies: ASTM F 1852, Type 1, heavy-hex head assemblies consisting of steel structural bolts with splined ends, heavy-hex carbon-steel nuts, and hardened carbon-steel washers.
 - 1. Finish: Plain.
- B. Shear Connectors: ASTM A 108, Grades 1015 through 1020, headed-stud type, cold-finished carbon steel; AWS D1.1/D1.1M, Type B.
- C. Threaded Rods: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
 - 1. Nuts: ASTM A 563 (ASTM A 563M) hex carbon steel.
 - 2. Washers: ASTM A 36/A 36M carbon steel.
 - 3. Finish: Plain.

2.3 PRIMER

- A. Primer: Fabricator's standard lead- and chromate-free, nonasphaltic, rust-inhibiting primer complying with MPI#79 and compatible with topcoat.
- B. Galvanizing Repair Paint: ASTM A 780.

2.4 GROUT

- A. Nonmetallic, Shrinkage-Resistant Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-packaged, nonmetallic aggregate grout, noncorrosive and nonstaining, mixed with water to consistency suitable for application and a 30-minute working time.

2.5 FABRICATION

- A. Structural Steel: Fabricate and assemble in shop to greatest extent possible. Fabricate according to AISC's "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges" and AISC 360.
 - 1. Camber structural-steel members where indicated.
 - 2. Fabricate beams with rolling camber up.
 - 3. Identify high-strength structural steel according to ASTM A 6/A 6M and maintain markings until structural steel has been erected.
 - 4. Mark and match-mark materials for field assembly.
 - 5. Complete structural-steel assemblies, including welding of units, before starting shop-priming operations.
- B. Thermal Cutting: Perform thermal cutting by machine to greatest extent possible.
 - 1. Plane thermally cut edges to be welded to comply with requirements in AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
- C. Bolt Holes: Cut, drill, or punch standard bolt holes perpendicular to metal surfaces.
- D. Finishing: Accurately finish ends of columns and other members transmitting bearing loads.
- E. Cleaning: Clean and prepare steel surfaces that are to remain unpainted according to SSPC-SP 2, "Hand Tool Cleaning."
- F. Shear Connectors: Prepare steel surfaces as recommended by manufacturer of shear connectors. Use automatic end welding of headed-stud shear connectors according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M and manufacturer's written instructions.
- G. Steel Wall-Opening Framing: Select true and straight members for fabricating steel wall-opening framing to be attached to structural steel. Straighten as required to provide uniform, square, and true members in completed wall framing.
- H. Holes: Provide holes required for securing other work to structural steel and for other work to pass through steel framing members.
 - 1. Cut, drill, or punch holes perpendicular to steel surfaces. Do not thermally cut bolt holes or enlarge holes by burning.
 - 2. Baseplate Holes: Cut, drill, mechanically thermal cut, or punch holes perpendicular to steel surfaces.
 - 3. Weld threaded nuts to framing and other specialty items indicated to receive other work.

2.6 SHOP CONNECTIONS

- A. High-Strength Bolts: Shop install high-strength bolts according to RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts" for type of bolt and type of joint specified.
 - 1. Joint Type: Pretensioned.

- B. Weld Connections: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M and AWS D1.8/D1.8M for tolerances, appearances, welding procedure specifications, weld quality, and methods used in correcting welding work.
 - 1. Assemble and weld built-up sections by methods that will maintain true alignment of axes without exceeding tolerances in AISC 303 for mill material.

2.7 SHOP PRIMING

- A. Shop prime non-galvanized steel surfaces exposed to view.
- B. Surface Preparation: Clean surfaces to be painted. Remove loose rust and mill scale and spatter, slag, or flux deposits. Prepare surfaces according to the following specifications and standards:
 - 1. SSPC-SP 2, "Hand Tool Cleaning."
- C. Priming: Immediately after surface preparation, apply primer according to manufacturer's written instructions and at rate recommended by SSPC to provide a minimum dry film thickness of 1.5 mils (0.038 mm). Use priming methods that result in full coverage of joints, corners, edges, and exposed surfaces.
 - 1. Stripe paint corners, crevices, bolts, welds, and sharp edges.
 - 2. Apply two coats of shop paint to surfaces that are inaccessible after assembly or erection. Change color of second coat to distinguish it from first.
- D. Painting: Prepare steel and apply a one-coat, nonasphaltic primer to provide a dry film thickness of not less than 1.5 mils (0.038 mm).

2.8 GALVANIZING

- A. Hot-Dip Galvanized Finish: Apply zinc coating by the hot-dip process to structural steel according to ASTM A 123/A 123M.
 - 1. Fill vent and drain holes that will be exposed in the finished Work unless they will function as weep holes, by plugging with zinc solder and filing off smooth.
 - 2. Galvanize lintels and shelf angles.
 - 3. Galvanize interior and exterior ladders, including brackets and fasteners.

2.9 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage an independent testing and inspecting agency to perform shop tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
 - 1. Provide testing agency with access to places where structural-steel work is being fabricated or produced to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Correct deficiencies in Work that test reports and inspections indicate does not comply with the Contract Documents.
- C. Bolted Connections: Shop-bolted connections will be tested and inspected according to RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts."
- D. Welded Connections: In addition to visual inspection, shop-welded connections will be tested and inspected according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M and the following inspection procedures, at testing agency's option:
 - 1. Liquid Penetrant Inspection: ASTM E 165.

2. Magnetic Particle Inspection: ASTM E 709; performed on root pass and on finished weld. Cracks or zones of incomplete fusion or penetration will not be accepted.
 3. Ultrasonic Inspection: ASTM E 164.
 4. Radiographic Inspection: ASTM E 94.
- E. In addition to visual inspection, shop-welded shear connectors will be tested and inspected according to requirements in AWS D1.1/D1.1M for stud welding and as follows:
1. Bend tests will be performed if visual inspections reveal either a less-than-continuous 360-degree flash or welding repairs to any shear connector.
 2. Tests will be conducted on additional shear connectors if weld fracture occurs on shear connectors already tested, according to requirements in AWS D1.1/D1.1M.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify, with steel Erector present, elevations of concrete- and masonry-bearing surfaces and locations of anchor rods, bearing plates, and other embedments for compliance with requirements.
1. Prepare a certified survey of bearing surfaces, anchor rods, bearing plates, and other embedments showing dimensions, locations, angles, and elevations.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Provide temporary shores, guys, braces, and other supports during erection to keep structural steel secure, plumb, and in alignment against temporary construction loads and loads equal in intensity to design loads. Remove temporary supports when permanent structural steel, connections, and bracing are in place unless otherwise indicated.
1. Do not remove temporary shoring supporting composite deck construction until cast-in-place concrete has attained its design compressive strength.

3.3 ERECTION

- A. Set structural steel accurately in locations and to elevations indicated and according to AISC 303 and AISC 360.
- B. Base Bearing and Leveling Plates: Clean concrete surfaces of bond-reducing materials, and roughen surfaces prior to setting plates. Clean bottom surface of plates.
1. Set plates for structural members on wedges, shims, or setting nuts as required.
 2. Weld plate washers to top of baseplate.
 3. Snug-tighten anchor rods after supported members have been positioned and plumbed. Do not remove wedges or shims but, if protruding, cut off flush with edge of plate before packing with grout.
 4. Promptly pack grout solidly between bearing surfaces and plates so no voids remain. Neatly finish exposed surfaces; protect grout and allow to cure. Comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions for shrinkage-resistant grouts.

- C. Maintain erection tolerances of structural steel within AISC's "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges."
- D. Align and adjust various members that form part of complete frame or structure before permanently fastening. Before assembly, clean bearing surfaces and other surfaces that will be in permanent contact with members. Perform necessary adjustments to compensate for discrepancies in elevations and alignment.
 - 1. Level and plumb individual members of structure.
 - 2. Make allowances for difference between temperature at time of erection and mean temperature when structure is completed and in service.
- E. Splice members only where indicated.
- F. Do not use thermal cutting during erection unless approved by Architect. Finish thermally cut sections within smoothness limits in AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
- G. Do not enlarge unfair holes in members by burning or using drift pins. Ream holes that must be enlarged to admit bolts. Flame cutting shall not be permitted unless approved by the architect.
- H. Shear Connectors: Prepare steel surfaces as recommended by manufacturer of shear connectors. Use automatic end welding of headed-stud shear connectors according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M and manufacturer's written instructions.

3.4 FIELD CONNECTIONS

- A. High-Strength Bolts: Install high-strength bolts according to RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts" for type of bolt and type of joint specified.
 - 1. Joint Type: Pretensioned.
- B. Weld Connections: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M and AWS D1.8/D1.8M for tolerances, appearances, welding procedure specifications, weld quality, and methods used in correcting welding work.
 - 1. Comply with AISC 303 and AISC 360 for bearing, alignment, adequacy of temporary connections, and removal of paint on surfaces adjacent to field welds.
 - 2. Remove backing bars or runoff tabs where indicated, back gouge, and grind steel smooth.
 - 3. Assemble and weld built-up sections by methods that will maintain true alignment of axes without exceeding tolerances in AISC's "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges" for mill material.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency to inspect field welds and high-strength bolted connections.
- B. Bolted Connections: Bolted connections will be tested and inspected according to RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts."
- C. Welded Connections: Field welds will be visually inspected according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
 - 1. In addition to visual inspection, where indicated on drawings field welds will be tested and inspected according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M and the following inspection procedures, at testing agency's option:
 - a. Liquid Penetrant Inspection: ASTM E 165.

- b. Magnetic Particle Inspection: ASTM E 709; performed on root pass and on finished weld. Cracks or zones of incomplete fusion or penetration will not be accepted.
 - c. Ultrasonic Inspection: ASTM E 164.
 - d. Radiographic Inspection: ASTM E 94.
- D. In addition to visual inspection, test and inspect field-welded shear connectors according to requirements in AWS D1.1/D1.1M for stud welding and as follows:
- 1. Perform bend tests if visual inspections reveal either a less-than-continuous 360-degree flash or welding repairs to any shear connector.
 - 2. Conduct tests on additional shear connectors if weld fracture occurs on shear connectors already tested, according to requirements in AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
- E. Correct deficiencies in Work that test reports and inspections indicate does not comply with the Contract Documents.

3.6 REPAIRS AND PROTECTION

- A. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas. Repair hot-dip galvanizing to comply with the following:
- 1. Hot Galvanizing Repair Low-Melting Point Zinc Alloy Repair Rods:
 - a. Zinc Cadmium: Liquid temperature 518°F-527°F.
 - b. Zinc-Tin Copper Alloys: Liquid temperature 660°F-670°F.
 - 1) Zinc-tin copper alloys must be applied while in a semi-solid state in the preferred application temperature range from 480°F-570°F.
 - 2. Repair Procedures Using Zinc-Based Solder:
 - a. Surfaces must be cleaned using a wire brush, a light grinding action or a mild blasting. To ensure a smooth reconditioned coating can be affected, surface preparation shall extend into the surrounding, undamaged galvanized coating.
 - b. If the area to be repaired includes welds, all weld flux residue and weld spatter shall be removed by wire brush, chipping, grinding or power scaling.
 - c. Areas to be repaired shall be preheated to at least 600°F.
 - 1) Do not heat the surface over 750°F or allow the surrounding galvanized coating to be burned. Wirebrush the surface to be reconditioned during preheating and pre-flux.
 - a) Pre-flux is required when solder will not adhere to stone surface.
 - d. Rub the cleaned, preheated welds/areas with the repair rod to deposit an evenly distributed layer of zinc alloy.
 - e. Thickness shall match original hot-dip galvanizing.
 - f. Rinse with water or wipe with a damp cloth to remove flux residue.
- B. Touchup Painting: Immediately after erection, clean exposed areas where primer is damaged or missing and paint with the same material as used for shop painting to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-painted surfaces.
- 1. Clean and prepare surfaces by SSPC-SP 2 hand-tool cleaning or SSPC-SP 3 power-tool cleaning.
- C. Touchup Painting: Cleaning and touchup painting are specified in Division 09 painting Sections.

END OF SECTION 05 1200

SECTION 05 2100 - STEEL JOIST FRAMING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
 - 1. K-series steel joists.
 - 2. K-series steel joist substitutes.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of joist, accessory, and product.
- B. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Include layout, designation, number, type, location, and spacing of joists.
 - 2. Include joining and anchorage details, bracing, bridging, and joist accessories; splice and connection locations and details; and attachments to other construction.
 - 3. Indicate locations and details of bearing plates to be embedded in other construction.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For manufacturer.
- B. Welding certificates.
- C. Manufacturer certificates.
- D. Mill Certificates: For each type of bolt.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: A manufacturer certified by the Steel Joist Institute (SJI) to manufacture joists complying with SJI standard specifications and load tables.
- B. SJI Specifications: Comply with SJI's "Standard Specifications, Load Tables and Weight Tables for Steel Joists and Joist Girders" (hereafter, SJI's "Specifications") that are applicable to types of joists indicated.
- C. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver, store, and handle joists as recommended in SJI's "Specifications."
- B. Do not store joists in contact with the ground.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Steel: Comply with SJI's "Specifications" for web and steel-angle chord members.
- B. Carbon-Steel Bolts and Threaded Fasteners: ASTM A 307, Grade A (ASTM F 568M, Property Class 4.6), carbon-steel, hex-head bolts and threaded fasteners; carbon-steel nuts; and flat, unhardened steel washers.
 - 1. Finish: Plain, uncoated.
- C. High-Strength Bolts, Nuts, and Washers: ASTM A 325 (ASTM A 325M), Type 1, heavy hex steel structural bolts; ASTM A 563 (ASTM A 563M) heavy hex carbon-steel nuts; and ASTM F 436 (ASTM F 436M) hardened carbon-steel washers.
 - 1. Finish: Plain.

2.2 K-SERIES STEEL JOISTS

- A. Manufacture steel joists of type indicated according to "Standard Specifications for Open Web Steel Joists, K-Series" in SJI's "Specifications," with steel-angle top- and bottom-chord members, underslung ends, and parallel top chord.
 - 1. Joist Type: K-series steel joists and KCS-type K-series steel joists.
- B. Steel Joist Substitutes: Manufacture according to "Standard Specifications for Open Web Steel Joists, K-Series" in SJI's "Specifications," with steel-angle or -channel members.

2.3 JOIST ACCESSORIES

- A. Bridging: Provide bridging anchors and number of rows of horizontal or diagonal bridging of material, size, and type required by SJI's "Specifications" for type of joist, chord size, spacing, and span. Furnish additional erection bridging if required for stability.
- B. Bridging: Schematically indicated. Detail and fabricate according to SJI's "Specifications." Furnish additional erection bridging if required for stability.
- C. Supply ceiling extensions, either extended bottom-chord elements or a separate extension unit of enough strength to support ceiling construction. Extend ends to within 1/2 inch (13 mm) of finished wall surface, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Supply miscellaneous accessories, including splice plates and bolts required by joist manufacturer to complete joist installation.

2.4 CLEANING AND SHOP PAINTING

- A. Clean and remove loose scale, heavy rust, and other foreign materials from fabricated joists and accessories.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Do not install joists until supporting construction is in place and secured.
- B. Install joists and accessories plumb, square, and true to line; securely fasten to supporting construction according to SJI's "Specifications," joist manufacturer's written recommendations, and requirements in this Section.
 - 1. Before installation, splice joists delivered to Project site in more than one piece.
 - 2. Space, adjust, and align joists accurately in location before permanently fastening.
 - 3. Install temporary bracing and erection bridging, connections, and anchors to ensure that joists are stabilized during construction.
- C. Field weld joists to supporting steel framework. Coordinate welding sequence and procedure with placement of joists. Comply with AWS requirements and procedures for welding, appearance and quality of welds, and methods used in correcting welding work.
- D. Bolt joists to supporting steel framework using carbon-steel bolts.
- E. Bolt joists to supporting steel framework using high-strength structural bolts. Comply with Research Council on Structural Connections' "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or ASTM A 490 Bolts" for high-strength structural bolt installation and tightening requirements.
- F. Install and connect bridging concurrently with joist erection, before construction loads are applied. Anchor ends of bridging lines at top and bottom chords if terminating at walls or beams.

3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency to inspect field welds and bolted connections and to perform field tests and inspections and prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 05 2100

SECTION 05 3100 - STEEL DECKING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
 - 1. Roof deck.
 - 2. Composite floor deck.
 - 3. Noncomposite form deck.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of deck, accessory, and product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Include layout and types of deck panels, anchorage details, reinforcing channels, pans, cut deck openings, special jointing, accessories, and attachments to other construction.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Welding certificates.
- B. Product Certificates: For each type of steel deck.
- C. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency, indicating that each of the following complies with requirements:
 - 1. Power-actuated mechanical fasteners.
- D. Evaluation Reports: For steel deck.
- E. Field quality-control reports.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.3, "Structural Welding Code - Sheet Steel."
- B. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Where indicated, provide steel deck units identical to those tested for fire resistance per ASTM E 119 by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 1. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Indicated by design designations of applicable testing and inspecting agency.
 - 2. Steel deck units shall be identified with appropriate markings of applicable testing and inspecting agency.
- C. AISI Specifications: Comply with calculated structural characteristics of steel deck according to AISI's "North American Specification for the Design of Cold-Formed Steel Structural Members."

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect steel deck from corrosion, deformation, and other damage during delivery, storage, and handling.
- B. Stack steel deck on platforms or pallets and slope to provide drainage. Protect with a waterproof covering and ventilate to avoid condensation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. ASC Profiles, Inc.
 - 2. Canam Steel Corp.; The Canam Manac Group.
 - 3. Consolidated Systems, Inc.
 - 4. DACS, Inc.
 - 5. D-Mac Industries Inc.
 - 6. Epic Metals Corporation.
 - 7. Marlyn Steel Decks, Inc.
 - 8. New Millennium Building Systems, LLC.
 - 9. Nucor Corp.; Vulcraft Division.
 - 10. Roof Deck, Inc.
 - 11. United Steel Deck, Inc.
 - 12. Valley Joist; Division of EBSCO Industries, Inc.
 - 13. Verco Manufacturing Co.
 - 14. Wheeling Corrugating Company; Div. of Wheeling-Pittsburgh Steel Corporation.

2.2 ROOF DECK

- A. Steel Roof Deck: Fabricate panels, without top-flange stiffening grooves, to comply with "SDI Specifications and Commentary for Steel Roof Deck," in SDI Publication No. 30, and with the following:
 - 1. Galvanized Steel Sheet: ASTM A653M, Structural Steel (SS), Grade 33 (230), G60 (Z180) zinc coating.
 - 2. Deck Profile: As indicated.
 - 3. Profile Depth: As indicated.
 - 4. Design Uncoated-Steel Thickness: As indicated.

2.3 COMPOSITE FLOOR DECK

- A. Composite Steel Floor Deck: Fabricate panels, with integrally embossed or raised pattern ribs and interlocking side laps, to comply with "SDI Specifications and Commentary for Composite Steel Floor Deck," in SDI Publication No. 30, with the minimum section properties indicated, and with the following:

1. Galvanized Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, Structural Steel (SS), Grade 33 (230), G60 (Z180) zinc coating.
2. Profile Depth: As indicated.
3. Design Uncoated-Steel Thickness: As indicated.

2.4 NONCOMPOSITE FORM DECK

- A. Noncomposite Steel Form Deck: Fabricate ribbed-steel sheet noncomposite form-deck panels to comply with "SDI Specifications and Commentary for Noncomposite Steel Form Deck," in SDI Publication No. 30, with the minimum section properties indicated, and with the following:
 1. Prime-Painted Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, Structural Steel (SS), Grade 33 (230) minimum, with top and underside surface shop primed with manufacturer's standard baked-on, rust-inhibitive primer.
 - a. Color: Manufacturer's standard.
 2. Profile Depth: 9/16 inch (14 mm).
 3. Design Uncoated-Steel Thickness: As indicated.
 4. Span Condition: Triple span or more.

2.5 ACCESSORIES

- A. General: Provide manufacturer's standard accessory materials for deck that comply with requirements indicated.
- B. Mechanical Fasteners: Corrosion-resistant, low-velocity, power-actuated or pneumatically driven carbon-steel fasteners; or self-drilling, self-threading screws.
- C. Side-Lap Fasteners: Corrosion-resistant, hexagonal washer head; self-drilling, carbon-steel screws, No. 10 (4.8-mm) minimum diameter.
- D. Flexible Closure Strips: Vulcanized, closed-cell, synthetic rubber.
- E. Miscellaneous Sheet Metal Deck Accessories: Steel sheet, minimum yield strength of 33,000 psi (230 MPa), not less than 0.0359-inch (0.91-mm) design uncoated thickness, of same material and finish as deck; of profile indicated or required for application.
- F. Repair Paint: Manufacturer's standard rust-inhibitive primer of same color as primer.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install deck panels and accessories according to applicable specifications and commentary in SDI Publication No. 30, manufacturer's written instructions, requirements in this Section, and as indicated.
- B. Place deck panels on supporting frame and adjust to final position with ends accurately aligned and bearing on supporting frame before being permanently fastened. Do not stretch or contract side-lap interlocks.

- C. Place deck panels flat and square and fasten to supporting frame without warp or deflection.
- D. Cut and neatly fit deck panels and accessories around openings and other work projecting through or adjacent to deck.
- E. Provide additional reinforcement and closure pieces at openings as required for strength, continuity of deck, and support of other work.
- F. Comply with AWS requirements and procedures for manual shielded metal arc welding, appearance and quality of welds, and methods used for correcting welding work.
- G. Mechanical fasteners may be used in lieu of welding to fasten deck. Locate mechanical fasteners and install according to deck manufacturer's written instructions.
- H. End Bearing: Install deck ends over supporting frame with a minimum end bearing of 1½ inches (38 mm.)
- I. Roof Sump Pans and Sump Plates: Install over openings provided in roof deck and mechanically fasten flanges to top of deck. Space mechanical fasteners not more than 12 inches (305 mm) apart with at least one fastener at each corner.
 - 1. Install reinforcing channels or zees in ribs to span between supports and mechanically fasten.
- J. Miscellaneous Roof-Deck Accessories: Install ridge and valley plates, finish strips, end closures, and reinforcing channels according to deck manufacturer's written instructions. Mechanically fasten to substrate to provide a complete deck installation.
 - 1. Weld cover plates at changes in direction of roof-deck panels, unless otherwise indicated.
- K. Pour Stops and Girder Fillers: Weld steel sheet pour stops and girder fillers to supporting structure according to SDI recommendations, unless otherwise indicated.
- L. Floor-Deck Closures: Weld steel sheet column closures, cell closures, and Z-closures to deck, according to SDI recommendations, to provide tight-fitting closures at open ends of ribs and sides of deck.

3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency to perform field tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
- B. Field welds will be subject to inspection.
- C. Testing agency will report inspection results promptly and in writing to Contractor and Architect.
- D. Remove and replace work that does not comply with specified requirements.
- E. Additional inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of corrected work with specified requirements.

April 2015

A-012651
State of Kansas - Energy & Service Center

3.3 REPAIRS

- A. Galvanizing Repairs: Prepare and repair damaged galvanized coatings on both surfaces of deck with galvanized repair paint according to ASTM A 780 and manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Repair Painting: Wire brush and clean rust spots, welds, and abraded areas on both surfaces of prime-painted deck immediately after installation, and apply repair paint.

END OF SECTION 05 3100

05 3100 - 5
STRUCTURAL DECKING

SECTION 05 4000 - COLD-FORMED METAL FRAMING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
 - 1. Exterior non-load-bearing wall framing.
 - 2. Ceiling joist framing.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
 - 1. Division 05 Section "Metal Fabrications" for masonry shelf angles and connections.
 - 2. Division 09 Section "Non-Structural Metal Framing" for interior non-load-bearing, metal-stud framing and ceiling-suspension assemblies.
 - 3. Division 09 Section "Gypsum Board Shaft Wall Assemblies" for interior non-load-bearing, metal-stud-framed, shaft-wall assemblies.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Structural Performance: Provide cold-formed metal framing capable of withstanding design loads within limits and under conditions indicated. Gage of studs shown on documents is for bidding purposes only.
 - 1. Design Loads: Based on design parameters shown on Sheet S0.0.1 of structural drawings.
 - 2. Deflection Limits: Design framing systems to withstand design loads without deflections greater than the following:
 - a. Exterior Non-Load-Bearing Framing: Horizontal deflection of 1/600 of the wall height.
 - b. Ceiling Joist Framing: Vertical deflection of 1/360 of the span.
 - 3. Design framing systems to provide for movement of framing members without damage or overstressing, sheathing failure, connection failure, undue strain on fasteners and anchors, or other detrimental effects when subject to a maximum ambient temperature change of 120 deg F (67 deg C).
 - 4. Design framing system to maintain clearances at openings, to allow for construction tolerances, and to accommodate live load deflection of primary building structure as follows:
 - a. Upward and downward movement of 3/4 inch (19 mm).
- B. Cold-Formed Steel Framing, General: Design according to AISI's "Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing - General Provisions."
 - 1. Headers: Design according to AISI's "Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing - Header Design."
 - 2. Design exterior non-load-bearing wall framing to accommodate horizontal deflection without regard for contribution of sheathing materials.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of cold-formed steel framing product and accessory.
- B. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Include layout, spacings, sizes, thicknesses, and types of cold-formed steel framing; fabrication; and fastening and anchorage details, including mechanical fasteners.
 - 2. Indicate reinforcing channels, opening framing, supplemental framing, strapping, bracing, bridging, splices, accessories, connection details, and attachment to adjoining work.
- C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For cold-formed steel framing.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For testing agency.
- B. Welding certificates.
- C. Product Test Reports: For each listed product, for tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency.
 - 1. Steel sheet.
 - 2. Expansion anchors.
 - 3. Power-actuated anchors.
 - 4. Mechanical fasteners.
 - 5. Vertical deflection clips.
 - 6. Horizontal drift deflection clips
 - 7. Miscellaneous structural clips and accessories.
- D. Research Reports: For non-standard cold-formed steel framing, from ICC-ES.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Engineering Responsibility: Preparation of Shop Drawings, design calculations, and other structural data by a qualified professional engineer.
- B. Professional Engineer Qualifications: A professional engineer who is legally qualified to practice in jurisdiction where Project is located and who is experienced in providing engineering services of the kind indicated. Engineering services are defined as those performed for installations of cold-formed metal framing that are similar to those indicated for this Project in material, design, and extent.
- C. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, qualified according to ASTM E 329 to conduct the testing indicated.
- D. Product Tests: Mill certificates or data from a qualified independent testing agency, or in-house testing with calibrated test equipment indicating steel sheet complies with requirements, including base-metal thickness, yield strength, tensile strength, total elongation, chemical requirements, and metallic-coating thickness.
- E. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code--Steel," and AWS D1.3, "Structural Welding Code--Sheet Steel."

- F. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Where indicated, provide cold-formed metal framing identical to that of assemblies tested for fire resistance per ASTM E 119 by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 - G. AISI Specifications and Standards: Comply with AISI's "North American Specification for the Design of Cold-Formed Steel Structural Members" and its "Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing - General Provisions."
 - 1. Comply with AISI's "Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing - Header Design."
 - H. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 01 Section "Project Management and Coordination."
- 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING
- A. Protect cold-formed metal framing from corrosion, deformation, and other damage during delivery, storage, and handling.
 - B. Store cold-formed metal framing, protect with a waterproof covering, and ventilate to avoid condensation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering cold-formed metal framing that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide cold-formed metal framing by one of the following:
 - 1. Allied Studco.
 - 2. AllSteel Products, Inc.
 - 3. California Expanded Metal Products Company.
 - 4. Clark Steel Framing.
 - 5. Consolidated Fabricators Corp.; Building Products Division.
 - 6. Craco Metals Manufacturing, LLC.
 - 7. Custom Stud, Inc.
 - 8. Dale/Incor.
 - 9. Design Shapes in Steel.
 - 10. Dietrich Metal Framing; a Worthington Industries Company.
 - 11. Formetal Co. Inc. (The).
 - 12. Innovative Steel Systems.
 - 13. MarinoWare; a division of Ware Industries.
 - 14. Quail Run Building Materials, Inc.
 - 15. SCAFCO Corporation.
 - 16. Southeastern Stud & Components, Inc.
 - 17. Steel Construction Systems.
 - 18. Steeler, Inc.
 - 19. Super Stud Building Products, Inc.
 - 20. United Metal Products, Inc.

2.2 MATERIALS

- A. Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1003/A 1003M, Structural Grade, Type H, metallic coated, of grade and coating weight as follows:
 - 1. Grade: As required by structural performance.
 - 2. Coating: G60.
- B. Steel Sheet for Vertical Deflection Clips: ASTM A 653/A 653M, structural steel, zinc coated, of grade and coating as follows:
 - 1. Grade: As required by structural performance.
 - 2. Coating: G60 (Z275).

2.3 EXTERIOR NON-LOAD-BEARING WALL FRAMING

- A. Steel Studs: Manufacturer's standard C-shaped steel studs, of web depths indicated, punched, with stiffened flanges, and as follows:
 - 1. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: As indicated.
 - 2. Flange Width: 1-5/8 inches (41 mm).
- B. Steel Track: Manufacturer's standard U-shaped steel track, of web depths indicated, unpunched, with unstiffened flanges, and as follows:
 - 1. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: Matching steel studs.
 - 2. Flange Width: 1-1/4 inches (32 mm).
- C. Vertical Deflection Clips: Manufacturer's standard bypass or head clips, capable of accommodating upward and downward vertical displacement of primary structure through positive mechanical attachment to stud web.
 - 1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Dietrich Metal Framing; a Worthington Industries Company.
 - b. MarinoWare, a division of Ware Industries.
 - c. SCAFCO Corporation
 - d. The Steel Network, Inc.
- D. Single Deflection Track: Manufacturer's single, deep-leg, U-shaped steel track; unpunched, with unstiffened flanges, of web depth to contain studs while allowing free vertical movement, with flanges designed to support horizontal and lateral loads and transfer them to the primary structure, and as follows:
 - 1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 2. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: As indicated.
 - 3. Flange Width: 1 inch (25 mm) plus the design gap for 1-story structures and 1 inch (25 mm) plus twice the design gap for other applications.
- E. Drift Clips: Manufacturer's standard bypass or head clips, capable of isolating wall stud from upward and downward vertical displacement and lateral drift of primary structure.

2.4 CEILING JOIST FRAMING

- A. Steel Ceiling Joists: Manufacturer's standard C-shaped steel sections, of web depths indicated, unpunched, with stiffened flanges, and as follows:
 - 1. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: 0.0538 inch (1.37 mm).
 - 2. Flange Width: 1-5/8 inches (41 mm), minimum.

2.5 FRAMING ACCESSORIES

- A. Fabricate steel-framing accessories from steel sheet, ASTM A 1003/A 1003M, Structural Grade, Type H, metallic coated, of same grade and coating weight used for framing members.
- B. Provide accessories of manufacturer's standard thickness and configuration, unless otherwise indicated, as follows:
 - 1. Supplementary framing.
 - 2. Bracing, bridging, and solid blocking.
 - 3. Web stiffeners.
 - 4. Anchor clips.
 - 5. End clips.
 - 6. Foundation clips.
 - 7. Gusset plates.
 - 8. Stud kickers, knee braces, and girts.
 - 9. Joist hangers and end closures.
 - 10. Hole reinforcing plates.
 - 11. Backer plates.

2.6 ANCHORS, CLIPS, AND FASTENERS

- A. Steel Shapes and Clips: ASTM A 36/A 36M, zinc coated by hot-dip process according to ASTM A 123/A 123M.
- B. Anchor Bolts: ASTM F 1554, Grade 36, threaded carbon-steel hex-headed bolts and carbon-steel nuts; and flat, hardened-steel washers; zinc coated by hot-dip process according to ASTM A 153/A 153M, Class C.
- C. Expansion Anchors: Fabricated from corrosion-resistant materials, with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to 5 times design load, as determined by testing per ASTM E 488 conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.
- D. Power-Actuated Anchors: Fastener system of type suitable for application indicated, fabricated from corrosion-resistant materials, with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to 10 times design load, as determined by testing per ASTM E 1190 conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.
- E. Mechanical Fasteners: ASTM C 1513, corrosion-resistant-coated, self-drilling, self-tapping steel drill screws.
 - 1. Head Type: Low-profile head beneath sheathing, manufacturer's standard elsewhere.
- F. Welding Electrodes: Comply with AWS standards.

2.7 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Galvanizing Repair Paint: ASTM A 780.
- B. Cement Grout: Portland cement, ASTM C 150, Type I; and clean, natural sand, ASTM C 404. Mix at ratio of 1 part cement to 2-1/2 parts sand, by volume, with minimum water required for placement and hydration.
- C. Nonmetallic, Nonshrink Grout: Premixed, nonmetallic, noncorrosive, nonstaining grout containing selected silica sands, portland cement, shrinkage-compensating agents, and plasticizing and water-reducing agents, complying with ASTM C 1107, with fluid consistency and 30-minute working time.
- D. Shims: Load bearing, high-density multimonomer plastic, nonleaching.
- E. Sealer Gaskets: Closed-cell neoprene foam, 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) thick, selected from manufacturer's standard widths to match width of bottom track or rim track members.

2.8 FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate cold-formed metal framing and accessories plumb, square, and true to line, and with connections securely fastened, according to referenced AISI's specifications and standards, manufacturer's written instructions, and requirements in this Section.
 - 1. Fabricate framing assemblies using jigs or templates.
 - 2. Cut framing members by sawing or shearing; do not torch cut.
 - 3. Fasten cold-formed metal framing members by welding, screw fastening, clinch fastening, or riveting as standard with fabricator. Wire tying of framing members is not permitted.
 - a. Comply with AWS D1.3 requirements and procedures for welding, appearance and quality of welds, and methods used in correcting welding work.
 - b. Locate mechanical fasteners and install according to Shop Drawings, with screw penetrating joined members by not less than three exposed screw threads.
 - 4. Fasten other materials to cold-formed metal framing by welding, bolting, or screw fastening, according to Shop Drawings.
- B. Reinforce, stiffen, and brace framing assemblies to withstand handling, delivery, and erection stresses. Lift fabricated assemblies to prevent damage or permanent distortion.
- C. Fabrication Tolerances: Fabricate assemblies level, plumb, and true to line to a maximum allowable tolerance variation of 1/8 inch in 10 feet (1:960) and as follows:
 - 1. Spacing: Space individual framing members no more than plus or minus 1/8 inch (3 mm) from plan location. Cumulative error shall not exceed minimum fastening requirements of sheathing or other finishing materials.
 - 2. Squareness: Fabricate each cold-formed metal framing assembly to a maximum out-of-square tolerance of 1/8 inch (3 mm).

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine supporting substrates and abutting structural framing for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance.
 - 1. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Before sprayed fire-resistive materials are applied, attach continuous angles, supplementary framing, or tracks to structural members indicated to receive sprayed fire-resistive materials.
- B. After applying sprayed fire-resistive materials, remove only as much of these materials as needed to complete installation of cold-formed framing without reducing thickness of fire-resistive materials below that are required to obtain fire-resistance rating indicated. Protect remaining fire-resistive materials from damage.
- C. Install load bearing shims or grout between the underside of wall bottom track or rim track and the top of foundation wall or slab at stud or joist locations to ensure a uniform bearing surface on supporting concrete or masonry construction.
- D. Install sealer gaskets to isolate the underside of wall bottom track or rim track and the top of foundation wall or slab at stud or joist locations.

3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Cold-formed metal framing may be shop or field fabricated for installation, or it may be field assembled.
- B. Install cold-formed metal framing according to AISI's "Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing - General Provisions" and to manufacturer's written instructions unless more stringent requirements are indicated.
- C. Install shop- or field-fabricated, cold-formed framing and securely anchor to supporting structure.
 - 1. Screw, bolt, or weld wall panels at horizontal and vertical junctures to produce flush, even, true-to-line joints with maximum variation in plane and true position between fabricated panels not exceeding 1/16 inch (1.6 mm).
- D. Install cold-formed metal framing and accessories plumb, square, and true to line, and with connections securely fastened.
 - 1. Cut framing members by sawing or shearing; do not torch cut.
 - 2. Fasten cold-formed metal framing members by welding, screw fastening, clinch fastening, or riveting. Wire tying of framing members is not permitted.
 - a. Comply with AWS D1.3 requirements and procedures for welding, appearance and quality of welds, and methods used in correcting welding work.
 - b. Locate mechanical fasteners and install according to Shop Drawings, and complying with requirements for spacing, edge distances, and screw penetration.
 - c. Touch up paint all welds.
- E. Install framing members in one-piece lengths unless splice connections are indicated for track or tension members.
- F. Install temporary bracing and supports to secure framing and support loads comparable in intensity to those for which structure was designed. Maintain braces and supports in place, undisturbed, until entire integrated supporting structure has been completed and permanent connections to framing are secured.

- G. Do not bridge building expansion and control joints with cold-formed metal framing. Independently frame both sides of joints.
- H. Install insulation, specified in Division 07 Section "Thermal Insulation," in built-up exterior framing members, such as headers, sills, boxed joists, and multiple studs at openings, that are inaccessible on completion of framing work.
- I. Fasten hole reinforcing plate over web penetrations that exceed size of manufacturer's standard punched openings.
- J. Erection Tolerances: Install cold-formed metal framing level, plumb, and true to line to a maximum allowable tolerance variation of 1/8 inch in 10 feet (1:960) and as follows:
 - 1. Space individual framing members no more than plus or minus 1/8 inch (3 mm) from plan location. Cumulative error shall not exceed minimum fastening requirements of sheathing or other finishing materials.

3.4 EXTERIOR NON-LOAD-BEARING WALL INSTALLATION

- A. Install continuous tracks sized to match studs. Align tracks accurately and securely anchor to supporting structure as indicated.
- B. Fasten both flanges of studs to top and bottom track, unless otherwise indicated. Space studs as follows:
 - 1. Stud Spacing: As indicated.
- C. Set studs plumb, except as needed for diagonal bracing or required for nonplumb walls or warped surfaces and similar requirements.
- D. Isolate non-load-bearing steel framing from building structure to prevent transfer of vertical loads while providing lateral support.
 - 1. Install single-leg deflection tracks and anchor to building structure.
 - 2. Install double deep-leg deflection tracks and anchor outer track to building structure.
 - 3. Connect vertical deflection clips to bypassing studs and anchor to building structure.
 - 4. Connect drift clips to cold formed metal framing and anchor to building structure.
- E. Install horizontal bridging in wall studs, spaced in rows indicated on Shop Drawings but not more than 48 inches (1220 mm) apart. Fasten at each stud intersection.
 - 1. Top Bridging for Single Deflection Track: Install row of horizontal bridging within 12 inches (305 mm) of single deflection track. Install a combination of flat, taut, steel sheet straps of width and thickness indicated and stud or stud-track solid blocking of width and thickness matching studs. Fasten flat straps to stud flanges and secure solid blocking to stud webs or flanges.
 - a. Install solid blocking at 96-inch (2440-mm) centers.
 - 2. Bridging: Proprietary bridging bars installed according to manufacturer's written instructions.

- F. Install miscellaneous framing and connections, including stud kickers, web stiffeners, clip angles, continuous angles, anchors, fasteners, and stud girts, to provide a complete and stable wall-framing system.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing: Owner will engage a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency to perform field tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
- B. Field and shop welds will be subject to testing and inspecting.
- C. Testing agency will report test results promptly and in writing to Contractor and Architect.
- D. Remove and replace work where test results indicate that it does not comply with specified requirements.
- E. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.

3.6 REPAIRS AND PROTECTION

- A. Galvanizing Repairs: Prepare and repair damaged galvanized coatings on fabricated and installed cold-formed metal framing with galvanized repair paint according to ASTM A 780 and manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Provide final protection and maintain conditions, in a manner acceptable to manufacturer and Installer, that ensure that cold-formed metal framing is without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 05 4000

SECTION 05 5000 - METAL FABRICATIONS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Steel framing and supports for operable partitions.
2. Steel framing and supports for suspended ceiling clouds.
3. Steel framing and supports for overhead doors.
4. Steel framing and supports for countertops.
5. Steel framing and supports for mechanical and electrical equipment.
6. Steel framing and supports for applications where framing and supports are not specified in other Sections.
7. Metal bollards.
8. Steel ladders.
9. Loose bearing and leveling plates for applications where they are not specified in other Sections.

- B. Products furnished, but not installed, under this Section:

1. Loose steel lintels.

- C. Related Sections:

1. Division 03 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for installing anchor bolts, steel pipe sleeves, slotted-channel inserts, wedge-type inserts, and other items cast into concrete.
2. Division 04 Section "Unit Masonry" for installing loose lintels, anchor bolts, and other items built into unit masonry.
3. Division 05 Section "Structural Steel Framing."
4. Division 05 Section "Metal Stairs."
5. Division 05 Section "Pipe and Tube Railings."
6. Division 12 Section "Site Furnishings" for bicycle racks.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes acting on exterior metal fabrications by preventing buckling, opening of joints, overstressing of components, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects.

1. Temperature Change: 120 deg F (67 deg C), ambient; 180 deg F (100 deg C), material surfaces.

05 5000 - 1
METAL FABRICATIONS

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details for metal fabrications.
 - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and details of metal fabrications and their connections. Show anchorage and accessory items.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Welding certificates.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
- B. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
 - 1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
 - 2. AWS D1.2/D1.2M, "Structural Welding Code - Aluminum."
 - 3. AWS D1.6, "Structural Welding Code - Stainless Steel."

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify actual locations of walls and other construction contiguous with metal fabrications by field measurements before fabrication.

1.8 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate selection of shop primers with topcoats to be applied over them. Comply with paint and coating manufacturers' written recommendations to ensure that shop primers and topcoats are compatible with one another.
- B. Coordinate installation of anchorages. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors, that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 METALS, GENERAL

- A. Metal Surfaces, General: Provide materials with smooth, flat surfaces unless otherwise indicated. For metal fabrications exposed to view in the completed Work, provide materials without seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names, or blemishes.

2.2 FERROUS METALS

- A. Recycled Content of Steel Products: Postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content not less than 25 percent.
- B. Steel Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
- C. Stainless-Steel Sheet, Strip, and Plate: ASTM A 240/A 240M or ASTM A 666, Type 304.
- D. Stainless-Steel Bars and Shapes: ASTM A 276, Type 304.
- E. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, standard weight (Schedule 40) unless otherwise indicated.

2.3 NONFERROUS METALS

- A. Aluminum Plate and Sheet: ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M), Alloy 6061-T6.
- B. Aluminum Extrusions: ASTM B 221 (ASTM B 221M), Alloy 6063-T6.
- C. Aluminum Castings: ASTM B 26/B 26M, Alloy 443.0-F.

2.4 FASTENERS

- A. General: Unless otherwise indicated, provide Type 304 stainless-steel fasteners for exterior use and zinc-plated fasteners with coating complying with ASTM B 633 or ASTM F 1941 (ASTM F 1941M), Class Fe/Zn 5, at exterior walls. Select fasteners for type, grade, and class required.
 - 1. Provide stainless-steel fasteners for fastening aluminum.
 - 2. Provide stainless-steel fasteners for fastening stainless steel.
- B. Steel Bolts and Nuts: Regular hexagon-head bolts, ASTM A 307, Grade A (ASTM F 568M, Property Class 4.6); with hex nuts, ASTM A 563 (ASTM A 563M); and, where indicated, flat washers.
- C. Stainless-Steel Bolts and Nuts: Regular hexagon-head annealed stainless-steel bolts, ASTM F 593 (ASTM F 738M); with hex nuts, ASTM F 594 (ASTM F 836M); and, where indicated, flat washers; Alloy Group 2 (A4).
- D. Anchor Bolts: ASTM F 1554, Grade 36, of dimensions indicated; with nuts, ASTM A 563; and, where indicated, flat washers.
 - 1. Hot-dip galvanize or provide mechanically deposited, zinc coating where item being fastened is indicated to be galvanized.
- E. Eyebolts: ASTM A 489.
- F. Machine Screws: ASME B18.6.3 (ASME B18.6.7M).
- G. Lag Screws: ASME B18.2.1 (ASME B18.2.3.8M).
- H. Wood Screws: Flat head, ASME B18.6.1.

- I. Plain Washers: Round, ASME B18.22.1 (ASME B18.22M).
- J. Lock Washers: Helical, spring type, ASME B18.21.1 (ASME B18.21.2M).
- K. Anchors, General: Anchors capable of sustaining, without failure, a load equal to six times the load imposed when installed in unit masonry and four times the load imposed when installed in concrete, as determined by testing according to ASTM E 488, conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.
- L. Cast-in-Place Anchors in Concrete: Either threaded type or wedge type unless otherwise indicated; galvanized ferrous castings, either ASTM A 47/A 47M malleable iron or ASTM A 27/A 27M cast steel. Provide bolts, washers, and shims as needed, all hot-dip galvanized per ASTM F 2329.
- M. Post-Installed Anchors: Torque-controlled expansion anchors or chemical anchors.
 - 1. Material for Interior Locations: Carbon-steel components zinc plated to comply with ASTM B 633 or ASTM F 1941 (ASTM F 1941M), Class Fe/Zn 5, unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Material for Exterior Locations and Where Stainless Steel is Indicated: Alloy Group 2 (A4) stainless-steel bolts, ASTM F 593 (ASTM F 738M), and nuts, ASTM F 594 (ASTM F 836M).

2.5 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Welding Rods and Bare Electrodes: Select according to AWS specifications for metal alloy welded.
- B. Shop Primers: Provide primers that comply with Division 09 painting Sections.
- C. Galvanizing Repair Paint: High-zinc-dust-content paint complying with SSPC-Paint 20 and compatible with paints specified to be used over it.
- D. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D 1187.
- E. Nonshrink, Metallic Grout: Factory-packaged, ferrous-aggregate grout complying with ASTM C 1107, specifically recommended by manufacturer for heavy-duty loading applications.
- F. Nonshrink, Nonmetallic Grout: Factory-packaged, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous grout complying with ASTM C 1107. Provide grout specifically recommended by manufacturer for interior and exterior applications.
- G. Concrete: Comply with requirements in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for normal-weight, air-entrained, concrete with a minimum 28-day compressive strength of 3000 psi (20 MPa).

2.6 FABRICATION, GENERAL

- A. Shop Assembly: Preassemble items in the shop to greatest extent possible. Disassemble units only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Use connections that maintain structural value of joined pieces. Clearly mark units for reassembly and coordinated installation.

- B. Cut, drill, and punch metals cleanly and accurately. Remove burrs and ease edges to a radius of approximately 1/32 inch (1 mm) unless otherwise indicated. Remove sharp or rough areas on exposed surfaces.
- C. Form bent-metal corners to smallest radius possible without causing grain separation or otherwise impairing work.
- D. Form exposed work with accurate angles and surfaces and straight edges.
- E. Weld corners and seams continuously to comply with the following:
 - 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
 - 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
 - 3. Remove welding flux immediately.
 - 4. At exposed connections, finish exposed welds and surfaces smooth and blended so no roughness shows after finishing and contour of welded surface matches that of adjacent surface.
- F. Form exposed connections with hairline joints, flush and smooth, using concealed fasteners or welds where possible. Where exposed fasteners are required, use Phillips flat-head (countersunk) fasteners unless otherwise indicated. Locate joints where least conspicuous.
- G. Fabricate seams and other connections that will be exposed to weather in a manner to exclude water. Provide weep holes where water may accumulate.
- H. Cut, reinforce, drill, and tap metal fabrications as indicated to receive finish hardware, screws, and similar items.
- I. Provide for anchorage of type indicated; coordinate with supporting structure. Space anchoring devices to secure metal fabrications rigidly in place and to support indicated loads.
 - 1. Where units are indicated to be cast into concrete or built into masonry, equip with integrally welded steel strap anchors, 1/8 by 1-1/2 inches (3.2 by 38 mm), with a minimum 6-inch (150-mm) embedment and 2-inch (50-mm) hook, not less than 8 inches (200 mm) from ends and corners of units and 24 inches (600 mm) o.c., unless otherwise indicated.

2.7 MISCELLANEOUS FRAMING AND SUPPORTS

- A. General: Provide steel framing and supports not specified in other Sections as needed to complete the Work.
- B. Fabricate units from steel shapes, plates, and bars of welded construction unless otherwise indicated. Fabricate to sizes, shapes, and profiles indicated and as necessary to receive adjacent construction.
 - 1. Furnish inserts for units installed after concrete is placed.
- C. Fabricate supports for operable partitions from continuous steel beams of sizes indicated with attached bearing plates, anchors, and braces as recommended by partition manufacturer. Drill or punch bottom flanges of beams to receive partition track hanger rods; locate holes where indicated on operable partition Shop Drawings.

- D. Fabricate supports for suspended ceiling clouds from continuous beams of sizes indicated with attached bearing plates, anchors, angle brackets to provide connection to masonry or metal framed partitions.
- E. Galvanize miscellaneous framing and supports where indicated.

2.8 MISCELLANEOUS STEEL TRIM

- A. Unless otherwise indicated, fabricate units from steel shapes, plates, and bars of profiles shown with continuously welded joints and smooth exposed edges. Miter corners and use concealed field splices where possible.
- B. Galvanize exterior miscellaneous steel trim.

2.9 METAL BOLLARDS

- A. Fabricate metal bollards from Schedule 80 steel pipe.
- B. Galvanize bollards.

2.10 LOOSE BEARING AND LEVELING PLATES

- A. Provide loose bearing and leveling plates for steel items bearing on masonry or concrete construction. Drill plates to receive anchor bolts and for grouting.
- B. Galvanize plates.

2.11 LOOSE STEEL LINTELS

- A. Fabricate loose steel lintels from steel angles and shapes of size indicated for openings and recesses in masonry walls and partitions at locations indicated. Fabricate in single lengths for each opening unless otherwise indicated. Weld adjoining members together to form a single unit where indicated.
- B. Size loose lintels to provide bearing length at each side of openings equal to 1/12 of clear span but not less than 8 inches (200 mm) unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Galvanize loose steel lintels located in exterior walls.

2.12 STEEL WELD PLATES AND ANGLES

- A. Provide steel weld plates and angles not specified in other Sections, for items supported from concrete construction as needed to complete the Work. Provide each unit with no fewer than two integrally welded steel strap anchors for embedding in concrete.

2.13 STEEL LADDERS

- A. Materials:
 - 1. Fasteners: Manufacturer's standard.
 - 2. Fittings, Connectors and Rung Ends: Manufacturer's standard.
- B. Fabrication:
 - 1. Vertical Fixed Wall Ladders: Minimum 20-1/4 inches wide; steel serrated rungs minimum 1-1/8 inches in diameter, connected to minimum 2-1/2 inch steel side rail channels; mounting brackets minimum 1/4 inches thick.
 - a. Brackets: Wall supported brackets.

2.14 FINISHES, GENERAL

- A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- B. Finish metal fabrications after assembly.
- C. Finish exposed surfaces to remove tool and die marks and stretch lines, and to blend into surrounding surface.

2.15 STEEL AND IRON FINISHES

- A. Galvanizing: Hot-dip galvanize items as indicated to comply with ASTM A 153/A 153M for steel and iron hardware and with ASTM A 123/A 123M for other steel and iron products.
 - 1. Do not quench or apply post galvanizing treatments that might interfere with paint adhesion.
- B. Shop prime iron and steel items not indicated to be galvanized unless they are to be embedded in concrete, sprayed-on fireproofing, or masonry, or unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Preparation for Shop Priming: Prepare surfaces to comply with requirements indicated below:
 - 1. Exterior Items: SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."
 - 2. Other Items: SSPC-SP 3, "Power Tool Cleaning."
- D. Shop Priming: Apply shop primer to comply with SSPC-PA 1, "Paint Application Specification No. 1: Shop, Field, and Maintenance Painting of Steel," for shop painting.
 - 1. Stripe paint corners, crevices, bolts, welds, and sharp edges.

2.16 ALUMINUM FINISHES

- A. Finish designations prefixed by AA comply with the system established by the Aluminum Association for designating aluminum finishes.
- B. Class I, Clear Anodic Finish: AA-M12C22A41 (Mechanical Finish: nonspecular as fabricated; Chemical Finish: etched, medium matte; Anodic Coating: Architectural Class I, clear coating 0.018 mm or thicker) complying with AAMA 611.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Cutting, Fitting, and Placement: Perform cutting, drilling, and fitting required for installing metal fabrications. Set metal fabrications accurately in location, alignment, and elevation; with edges and surfaces level, plumb, true, and free of rack; and measured from established lines and levels.
- B. Fit exposed connections accurately together to form hairline joints. Weld connections that are not to be left as exposed joints but cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations. Do not weld, cut, or abrade surfaces of exterior units that have been hot-dip galvanized after fabrication and are for bolted or screwed field connections.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with the following requirements:
 - 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
 - 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
 - 3. Remove welding flux immediately.
 - 4. At exposed connections, finish exposed welds and surfaces smooth and blended so no roughness shows after finishing and contour of welded surface matches that of adjacent surface.
- D. Fastening to In-Place Construction: Provide anchorage devices and fasteners where metal fabrications are required to be fastened to in-place construction. Provide threaded fasteners for use with concrete and masonry inserts, toggle bolts, through bolts, lag screws, wood screws, and other connectors.
- E. Provide temporary bracing or anchors in formwork for items that are to be built into concrete, masonry, or similar construction.
- F. Corrosion Protection: Coat concealed surfaces of aluminum that will come into contact with grout, concrete, masonry, wood, or dissimilar metals with the following:
 - 1. Cast Aluminum: Heavy coat of bituminous paint.
 - 2. Extruded Aluminum: Two coats of clear lacquer.

3.2 INSTALLING MISCELLANEOUS FRAMING AND SUPPORTS

- A. General: Install framing and supports to comply with requirements of items being supported, including manufacturers' written instructions and requirements indicated on Shop Drawings.
- B. Anchor supports for operable partitions securely to and rigidly brace from building structure.

3.3 INSTALLING METAL BOLLARDS

- A. Anchor bollards in place with concrete footings. Center and align bollards in holes 3 inches (75 mm) above bottom of excavation. Place concrete and vibrate or tamp for consolidation. Support and brace bollards in position until concrete has cured.
- B. Fill bollards solidly with concrete, mounding top surface to shed water.

3.4 INSTALLING BEARING AND LEVELING PLATES

- A. Clean concrete and masonry bearing surfaces of bond-reducing materials, and roughen to improve bond to surfaces. Clean bottom surface of plates.
- B. Set bearing and leveling plates on wedges, shims, or leveling nuts. After bearing members have been positioned and plumbed, tighten anchor bolts. Do not remove wedges or shims but, if protruding, cut off flush with edge of bearing plate before packing with grout.
 - 1. Use nonshrink grout, either metallic or nonmetallic, in concealed locations where not exposed to moisture; use nonshrink, nonmetallic grout in exposed locations unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Pack grout solidly between bearing surfaces and plates to ensure that no voids remain.

3.5 INSTALLING LADDERS

- A. Fastening to In-Place Construction: provide anchorage devices and fasteners where necessary for securing steel stairs to in-place construction; include threaded fasteners for concrete and masonry inserts, through-bolts, lag bolts, and other connectors as required.
- B. Cutting, Fitting and Placement: Perform cutting, drilling and fitting required for installing steel stairs. Set units accurately in location, alignment and elevation; with edges and surfaces level, plumb, true and free of rack; and measured from established lines and levels.
- C. Provide temporary bracing or anchors in formwork for items that are to be built into concrete masonry or similar construction.
- D. Fit exposed connections accurately together to form hairline joints. Weld connections that are not to be left as exposed joints, but cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations. Do not weld, cut or abrade the surface of exterior units which have been hot-dip galvanized after fabrication, and are intended for bolted or screwed field connections.

3.6 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Touchup Painting: Immediately after erection, clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas. Paint uncoated and abraded areas with the same material as used for shop painting to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-painted surfaces.
 - 1. Apply by brush or spray to provide a minimum 2.0-mil (0.05-mm) dry film thickness.
- B. Touchup Painting: Cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint are specified in Division 09 painting Sections.
- C. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and repair galvanizing to comply with ASTM A 780.

END OF SECTION 05 5000

SECTION 05 5100 - METAL STAIRS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Industrial-type stairs with steel grating treads.
- B. Related Sections:
 - 1. Division 03 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for concrete fill for stair treads and platforms.
 - 2. Division 05 Section "Pipe and Tube Railings" for pipe and tube railings.
 - 3. Division 06 Section "Miscellaneous Rough Carpentry" for wood blocking for anchoring railings.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Design metal stairs, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
- B. Structural Performance of Stairs: Metal stairs shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and the following loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated.
 - 1. Uniform Load: 100 lbf/sq. ft. (4.79 kN/sq. m).
 - 2. Concentrated Load: 300 lbf (1.33 kN) applied on an area of 4 sq. in. (2580 sq. mm).
 - 3. Uniform and concentrated loads need not be assumed to act concurrently.
 - 4. Stair Framing: Capable of withstanding stresses resulting from railing loads in addition to loads specified above.
 - 5. Limit deflection of treads, platforms, and framing members to L/240 or 1/4 inch (6.4 mm), whichever is less.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For metal stairs and the following:
 - 1. Grating treads.
 - 2. Abrasive nosings.
 - 3. Paint products.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

05 5100 - 1
METAL STAIRS

- C. Samples for Verification: For the following products, in manufacturer's standard sizes:
 - 1. Grating treads.
 - 2. Abrasive nosings.
- D. Delegated-Design Submittal: For installed products indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified professional engineer.
- B. Welding certificates.
- C. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency, for stairs.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Fabricator of products.
- B. NAAMM Stair Standard: Comply with "Recommended Voluntary Minimum Standards for Fixed Metal Stairs" in NAAMM AMP 510, "Metal Stairs Manual," for class of stair designated, unless more stringent requirements are indicated.
 - 1. Industrial-Type Stairs: Industrial class.
- C. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
 - 1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
 - 2. AWS D1.3, "Structural Welding Code - Sheet Steel."

1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate selection of shop primers with topcoats to be applied over them. Comply with paint and coating manufacturers' written recommendations to ensure that shop primers and topcoats are compatible with one another.
- B. Coordinate installation of anchorages for metal stairs. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors, that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.
- C. Coordinate locations of hanger rods and struts with other work so that they will not encroach on required stair width and will be within the fire-resistance-rated stair enclosure.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 METALS, GENERAL

05 5100 - 2
METAL STAIRS

- A. Metal Surfaces, General: Provide materials with smooth, flat surfaces unless otherwise indicated. For components exposed to view in the completed Work, provide materials without seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names, or blemishes.

2.2 FERROUS METALS

- A. Recycled Content of Steel Products: Postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content not less than [25] percent.
- B. Steel Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
- C. Steel Bars for Grating Treads: ASTM A 36/A 36M or steel strip, ASTM A 1011/A 1011M or ASTM A 1018/A 1018M.
- D. Wire Rod for Grating Crossbars: ASTM A 510 (ASTM A 510M).
- E. Cast Iron: Either gray iron, ASTM A 48/A 48M, or malleable iron, ASTM A 47/A 47M, unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Uncoated, Hot-Rolled Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1011/A 1011M, either commercial steel, Type B, or structural steel, Grade 30 (Grade 205), unless another grade is required by design loads.

2.3 ABRASIVE NOSINGS

- A. Cast-Metal Units: Cast aluminum, with an integral abrasive, as-cast finish consisting of aluminum oxide, silicon carbide, or a combination of both. Fabricate units in lengths necessary to accurately fit openings or conditions.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. American Safety Tread Co., Inc.
 - b. Balco Inc.
 - c. Barry Pattern & Foundry Co., Inc.
 - d. Granite State Casting Co.
 - e. Safe-T-Metal Company, Inc.
 - f. Wooster Products Inc.
 - 2. Configuration: Cross-hatched angle-shaped units, same depth as bar-grating treads and 1 to 1-1/2 inches (25 to 38 mm) wide.
- B. Provide anchors for embedding units in concrete, either integral or applied to units, as standard with manufacturer.
- C. Apply bituminous paint to concealed surfaces of cast-metal units set into concrete.

2.4 FASTENERS

- A. General: Provide zinc-plated fasteners with coating complying with ASTM B 633 or ASTM F 1941 (ASTM F 1941M), Class Fe/Zn 12 for exterior use, and Class Fe/Zn 5 where built into exterior walls. Select fasteners for type, grade, and class required.

- B. Bolts and Nuts: Regular hexagon-head bolts, ASTM A 307, Grade A (ASTM F 568M, Property Class 4.6); with hex nuts, ASTM A 563 (ASTM A 563M); and, where indicated, flat washers.
- C. Anchor Bolts: ASTM F 1554, Grade 36, of dimensions indicated; with nuts, ASTM A 563 (ASTM A 563M); and, where indicated, flat washers.
- D. Machine Screws: ASME B18.6.3 (ASME B18.6.7M).
- E. Plain Washers: Round, ASME B18.22.1 (ASME B18.22M).
- F. Lock Washers: Helical, spring type, ASME B18.21.1 (ASME B18.21.2M).

2.5 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Welding Rods and Bare Electrodes: Select according to AWS specifications for metal alloy welded.
- B. Shop Primers: Provide primers that comply with Division 09 painting Sections.
- C. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D 1187.

2.6 FABRICATION, GENERAL

- A. Provide complete stair assemblies, including metal framing, hangers, struts, clips, brackets, bearing plates, and other components necessary to support and anchor stairs and platforms on supporting structure.
 - 1. Join components by welding unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Use connections that maintain structural value of joined pieces.
- B. Preassembled Stairs: Assemble stairs in shop to greatest extent possible. Disassemble units only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Clearly mark units for reassembly and coordinated installation.
- C. Cut, drill, and punch metals cleanly and accurately. Remove burrs and ease edges to a radius of approximately 1/32 inch (1 mm) unless otherwise indicated. Remove sharp or rough areas on exposed surfaces.
- D. Form bent-metal corners to smallest radius possible without causing grain separation or otherwise impairing work.
- E. Form exposed work with accurate angles and surfaces and straight edges.
- F. Weld connections to comply with the following:
 - 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
 - 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
 - 3. Remove welding flux immediately.
 - 4. Weld exposed corners and seams continuously unless otherwise indicated.
 - 5. At exposed connections, finish exposed welds to comply with NOMMA's "Voluntary Joint Finish Standards" for Type 1 welds: no evidence of a welded joint.

- G. Form exposed connections with hairline joints, flush and smooth, using concealed fasteners where possible. Where exposed fasteners are required, use Phillips flat-head (countersunk) screws or bolts unless otherwise indicated. Locate joints where least conspicuous.

2.7 STEEL-FRAMED STAIRS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Alfab, Inc.
 - 2. American Stair, Inc.
 - 3. Sharon Companies Ltd. (The).
- B. Stair Framing:
 - 1. Fabricate stringers of steel channels, tubes or other shapes as indicated.
 - a. Provide closures for exposed ends of tube stringers.
 - 2. Construct platforms of steel channel or tube headers and miscellaneous framing members as needed to comply with performance requirements and as indicated.
 - 3. Weld stringers to headers; weld framing members to stringers and headers.
 - 4. Where masonry walls support metal stairs, provide temporary supporting struts designed for erecting steel stair components before installing masonry.
- C. Metal Bar-Grating Stairs: Form treads and platforms to configurations shown from metal bar grating; fabricate to comply with NAAMM MBG 531, "Metal Bar Grating Manual."
 - 1. Fabricate treads and platforms from welded or pressure-locked steel grating with 1-1/4-by-3/16-inch (32-by-5-mm) bearing bars at 15/16 inch (24 mm) o.c. and crossbars at 4 inches (100 mm) o.c.
 - 2. Surface: Plain.
 - 3. Finish: Shop primed.
 - 4. Fabricate grating treads with cast abrasive nosing and with steel angle or steel plate carrier at each end for stringer connections. Secure treads to stringers with bolts.
 - 5. Fabricate grating platforms with nosing matching that on grating treads. Provide toeplates at open-sided edges of grating platforms. Weld grating to platform framing.

2.8 STAIR RAILINGS

- A. Comply with applicable requirements in Section 055213 "Pipe and Tube Railings"
 - 1. Rails may be bent at corners, rail returns, and wall returns, instead of using prefabricated fittings.
 - 2. Connect posts to stair framing by direct welding unless otherwise indicated.
 - 3. Provide 3/16 inch diameter, 1 x 19 construction stainless steel, type 316 cable railing infill as detailed, with cabling hardware including ferrules, receivers, and tensioners.

2.9 FINISHES

- A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- B. Finish metal stairs after assembly.
- C. Preparation for Shop Priming: Prepare uncoated ferrous-metal surfaces to comply with minimum requirements indicated below for SSPC surface preparation specifications and environmental exposure conditions of installed products:
 - 1. Interior Stairs: SSPC-SP 3, "Power Tool Cleaning."
- D. Apply shop primer to uncoated surfaces of metal stair components, except those with galvanized finishes and those to be embedded in concrete or masonry unless otherwise indicated. Comply with SSPC-PA 1, "Paint Application Specification No. 1: Shop, Field, and Maintenance Painting of Steel," for shop painting.
 - 1. Stripe paint corners, crevices, bolts, welds, and sharp edges.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Fastening to In-Place Construction: Provide anchorage devices and fasteners where necessary for securing metal stairs to in-place construction. Include threaded fasteners for concrete and masonry inserts, through-bolts, lag bolts, and other connectors.
- B. Cutting, Fitting, and Placement: Perform cutting, drilling, and fitting required for installing metal stairs. Set units accurately in location, alignment, and elevation, measured from established lines and levels and free of rack.
- C. Provide temporary bracing or anchors in formwork for items that are to be built into concrete, masonry, or similar construction.
- D. Fit exposed connections accurately together to form hairline joints. Weld connections that are not to be left as exposed joints but cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations. Do not weld, cut, or abrade surfaces of exterior units that have been hot-dip galvanized after fabrication and are for bolted or screwed field connections.
- E. Field Welding: Comply with requirements for welding in "Fabrication, General" Article.

3.2 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Touchup Painting: Cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint are specified in Division 09 painting Sections.

END OF SECTION 05 5100

05 5100 - 6
METAL STAIRS

SECTION 055113 - METAL PAN STAIRS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Preassembled steel stairs with concrete-filled pans and precast concrete treads.
- 2. Steel tube railings attached to metal stairs.

- B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for concrete fill for stair treads and platforms.
- 2. Section 055213 "Pipe and Tube Railings" for pipe and tube railings.

1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate selection of shop primers with topcoats to be applied over them. Comply with paint and coating manufacturers' written recommendations to ensure that shop primers and topcoats are compatible with one another.
- B. Coordinate installation of anchorages for metal stairs. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors, that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.
- C. Coordinate locations of hanger rods and struts with other work so that they do not encroach on required stair width and are within the fire-resistance-rated stair enclosure.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For metal pan stairs and the following:
 - 1. Precast concrete treads.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Welding certificates.
- B. Paint Compatibility Certificates: From manufacturers of topcoats applied over shop primers certifying that shop primers are compatible with topcoats.

05 5113 - 1
METAL PAN STAIRS

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Fabricator of products.
- B. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
 - 1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
 - 2. AWS D1.3/D1.3M, "Structural Welding Code - Sheet Steel."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Alfab, Inc.
 - 2. American Stair, Inc.
 - 3. Lapeyre Stair Inc.
 - 4. Pacific Stair Corporation.
 - 5. Worthington Metal Fabricators.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design stairs[and railings].
- B. Structural Performance of Stairs: Metal stairs shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and the following loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated:
 - 1. Uniform Load: 100 lbf/sq. ft. 4.79 kN/sq. m.
 - 2. Concentrated Load: 300 lbf 1.33 kN applied on an area of 4 sq. in. 2580 sq. mm.
 - 3. Uniform and concentrated loads need not be assumed to act concurrently.
 - 4. Stair Framing: Capable of withstanding stresses resulting from railing loads in addition to loads specified above.
 - 5. Limit deflection of treads, platforms, and framing members to $[L/360]$ <Insert deflection ratio> or 1/4 inch 6.4 mm, whichever is less.
- C. Structural Performance of Railings: Railings shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and the following loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated:
 - 1. Handrails and Top Rails of Guards:
 - a. Uniform load of 50 lbf/ft. 0.73 kN/m applied in any direction.
 - b. Concentrated load of 200 lbf 0.89 kN applied in any direction.
 - c. Uniform and concentrated loads need not be assumed to act concurrently.
- D. Seismic Performance of Stairs: Metal stairs shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to [ASCE/SEI 7]
 - 1. Component Importance Factor: 1

2.3 METALS

- A. Metal Surfaces, General: Provide materials with smooth, flat surfaces unless otherwise indicated. For components exposed to view in the completed Work, provide materials without seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names, or blemishes.
- B. Steel Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
- C. Steel Tubing: ASTM A 500 (cold formed)
- D. Uncoated, Cold-Rolled Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M,[either commercial steel, Type B, or] structural steel, Grade 25Grade 170, unless another grade is required by design loads; exposed.
- E. Uncoated, Hot-Rolled Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1011/A 1011M,[either commercial steel, Type B, or] structural steel, Grade 30Grade 205, unless another grade is required by design loads.

2.4 FASTENERS

- A. General: Provide zinc-plated fasteners with coating complying with ASTM B 633 or ASTM F 1941ASTM F 1941M, Class Fe/Zn 12 for exterior use, and Class Fe/Zn 5 where built into exterior walls. Select fasteners for type, grade, and class required.
- B. Bolts and Nuts: Regular hexagon-head bolts, ASTM A 307, Grade AASTM F 568M, Property Class 4.6; with hex nuts, ASTM A 563ASTM A 563M; and, where indicated, flat washers.
- C. Anchor Bolts: ASTM F 1554, Grade 36, of dimensions indicated; with nuts, ASTM A 563ASTM A 563M; and, where indicated, flat washers.
 - 1. Provide mechanically deposited or hot-dip, zinc-coated anchor bolts for [exterior stairs] [stairs indicated to be galvanized] .
- D. Post-Installed Anchors: [Torque-controlled expansion anchors] [or] [chemical anchors] capable of sustaining, without failure, a load equal to six times the load imposed when installed in unit masonry and four times the load imposed when installed in concrete, as determined by testing according to ASTM E 488/E 488M, conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.
 - 1. Material for Interior Locations: Carbon-steel components zinc plated to comply with ASTM B 633 or ASTM F 1941ASTM F 1941M, Class Fe/Zn 5, unless otherwise indicated.

2.5 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Shop Primers: Provide primers that comply with [Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" and Section 099123 "Interior Painting."] [Section 099600 "High-Performance Coatings."] [Section 099113 "Exterior Painting," Section 099123 "Interior Painting," and Section 099600 "High-Performance Coatings."]
- B. Universal Shop Primer: Fast-curing, lead- and chromate-free, universal modified-alkyd primer complying with MPI#79 and compatible with topcoat.
 - 1. Use primer containing pigments that make it easily distinguishable from zinc-rich primer.

- C. Shop Primer for Galvanized Steel: Primer formulated for exterior use over zinc-coated metal and compatible with finish paint systems indicated.

2.6 PRECAST CONCRETE TREADS

- A. Concrete Materials and Properties: Comply with requirements in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for normal-weight, ready-mixed concrete with a minimum 28-day compressive strength of 5000 psi 35 MPa and a total air content of not less than 4 percent or more than 6 percent.

2.7 FABRICATION, GENERAL

- A. Provide complete stair assemblies, including metal framing, hangers, struts, **railings**, clips, brackets, bearing plates, and other components necessary to support and anchor stairs and platforms on supporting structure.
 - 1. Join components by welding unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Preassembled Stairs: Assemble stairs in shop to greatest extent possible. Disassemble units only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Clearly mark units for reassembly and coordinated installation.
- C. Cut, drill, and punch metals cleanly and accurately. Remove burrs and ease edges to a radius of approximately 1/32 inch 1 mm (1mm) unless otherwise indicated. Remove sharp or rough areas on exposed surfaces.
- D. Form bent-metal corners to smallest radius possible without causing grain separation or otherwise impairing work.
- E. Form exposed work with accurate angles and surfaces and straight edges.
- F. Weld connections to comply with the following:
 - 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
 - 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
 - 3. Remove welding flux immediately.
 - 4. Weld exposed corners and seams continuously unless otherwise indicated.
 - 5. At exposed connections, finish exposed welds to comply with NOMMA's "Voluntary Joint Finish Standards" for **Type 3 welds: partially dressed weld with spatter removed.**
- G. Form exposed connections with hairline joints, flush and smooth, using concealed fasteners where possible. Where exposed fasteners are required, use Phillips flat-head (countersunk) screws or bolts unless otherwise indicated. Locate joints where least conspicuous.

2.8 STEEL-FRAMED STAIRS

- A. NAAMM Stair Standard: Comply with "Recommended Voluntary Minimum Standards for Fixed Metal Stairs" in NAAMM AMP 510, "Metal Stairs Manual," Commercial Class, unless more stringent requirements are indicated.
- B. Stair Framing:

1. Fabricate stringers of steel tubes].
 - a. Provide closures for exposed ends of stringers.
 2. Construct platforms of steel plate or channel headers and miscellaneous framing members as needed to comply with performance requirements] [indicated].
 3. Weld stringers to headers; weld framing members to stringers and headers.
 4. Where masonry walls support metal stairs, provide temporary supporting struts designed for erecting steel stair components before installing masonry.
- C. Metal Pan Stairs: Form risers, sub-tread pans, and sub-platforms to configurations shown from steel sheet of thickness [needed to comply with performance requirements, but not less than 0.067 inch1.7 mm] .
1. Steel Sheet: Uncoated cold-rolled steel sheet.
 - 2.
 3. Directly weld metal pans to stringers; locate welds on top of subtreads where they are concealed by concrete fill. Do not weld risers to stringers.
 4. Attach risers and sub treads to stringers with brackets made of steel angles or bars. Weld brackets to stringers and attach metal pans to brackets by welding, riveting, or bolting.
 5. Shape metal pans to include nosing integral with riser.

2.9 STAIR RAILINGS

- A. Comply with applicable requirements in [Section 055213 "Pipe and Tube Railings."] [Section 057300 "Decorative Metal Railings."]
1. Fabricate newels of square steel tubing and provide newel caps of pressed steel, as shown.
 2. Rails may be bent at corners, rail returns, and wall returns, instead of using prefabricated fittings.
 3. Connect posts to stair framing by direct welding unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Steel Tube Railings: Fabricate railings to comply with requirements indicated for design, dimensions, details, finish, and member sizes, including wall thickness of tube, post spacings, and anchorage, but not less than that needed to withstand indicated loads.
1. Rails and Posts: 41-mm- top rails 1inch x2 1/2 inch and bottom rails1 1/4inch x 1/2 inch and 1-1/2-inch- 38-mm- square posts.
 2. Picket Infill: 1 inch by1/4-inch pickets spaced less than 4 inches 100 mm clear.
 3. Mesh Infill: Woven wire mesh crimped into 1-by-1/2-by-1/8-inch 25-by-13-by-3-mm steel channel frames. Orient wire mesh with wires perpendicular and parallel to top rail.
- C. Welded Connections: Fabricate railings with welded connections. Cope components at connections to provide close fit, or use fittings designed for this purpose. Weld all around at connections, including at fittings.
1. Finish welds to comply with NOMMA's "Voluntary Joint Finish Standards" for Type 2 welds: completely sanded joint, some undercutting and pinholes are okayas shown in NAAMM AMP 521.
- D. Form changes in direction of railings as follows:

1. By bending or by inserting prefabricated elbow fittings.
 2. Steel tube change in direction must be mitered and welded.
- E. For changes in direction made by bending, use jigs to produce uniform curvature for each repetitive configuration required. Maintain cross section of member throughout entire bend without buckling, twisting, cracking, or otherwise deforming exposed surfaces of components.
- F. Close exposed ends of railing members with prefabricated end fittings.
- G. Provide wall returns at ends of wall-mounted handrails unless otherwise indicated. Close ends of returns unless clearance between end of rail and wall is 1/4 inch (6 mm).
- H. Connect posts to stair framing by direct welding unless otherwise indicated.
- I. Brackets, Flanges, Fittings, and Anchors: Provide wall brackets, end closures, flanges, miscellaneous fittings, and anchors for interconnecting components and for attaching to other work. Furnish inserts and other anchorage devices for connecting to concrete or masonry work.
1. For galvanized railings, provide galvanized fittings, brackets, fasteners, sleeves, and other ferrous-metal components.
 2. For non-galvanized railings, provide non-galvanized ferrous-metal fittings, brackets, fasteners, and sleeves, except galvanize anchors embedded in exterior masonry and concrete construction.
 3. Provide type of bracket [with predrilled hole for exposed bolt anchorage] and that provides 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) clearance from inside face of handrail to finished wall surface.
- J. Fillers: Provide fillers made from steel plate, or other suitably crush-resistant material, where needed to transfer wall bracket loads through wall finishes to structural supports. Size fillers to suit wall finish thicknesses and to produce adequate bearing area to prevent bracket rotation and overstressing of substrate.
- 2.10 FINISHES
- A. Finish metal stairs after assembly.
- B. Galvanizing: Hot-dip galvanize items as indicated to comply with ASTM A 153/A 153M for steel and iron hardware and with ASTM A 123/A 123M for other steel and iron products.
1. Do not quench or apply post galvanizing treatments that might interfere with paint adhesion.
 2. Fill vent and drain holes that are exposed in the finished Work, unless indicated to remain as weep holes, by plugging with zinc solder and filing off smooth.
- C. Preparation for Shop Priming: Prepare uncoated ferrous-metal surfaces to comply with SSPC-SP 3, "Power Tool Cleaning."
- D. Apply shop primer to uncoated surfaces of metal stair components, except those with galvanized finishes and those to be embedded in concrete or masonry unless otherwise indicated. Comply with SSPC-PA 1, "Paint Application Specification No. 1: Shop, Field, and Maintenance Painting of Steel," for shop painting.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLING METAL PAN STAIRS

- A. Fastening to In-Place Construction: Provide anchorage devices and fasteners where necessary for securing metal stairs to in-place construction. Include threaded fasteners for concrete and masonry inserts, through-bolts, lag bolts, and other connectors.
- B. Cutting, Fitting, and Placement: Perform cutting, drilling, and fitting required for installing metal stairs. Set units accurately in location, alignment, and elevation, measured from established lines and levels and free of rack.
- C. Install metal stairs by welding stair framing to steel structure or to weld plates cast into concrete unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Provide temporary bracing or anchors in formwork for items that are to be built into concrete, masonry, or similar construction.
- E. Fit exposed connections accurately together to form hairline joints. Weld connections that are not to be left as exposed joints but cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations. Do not weld, cut, or abrade surfaces of exterior units that have been hot-dip galvanized after fabrication and are for bolted or screwed field connections.
- F. Field Welding: Comply with requirements for welding in "Fabrication, General" Article.
- G. Place and finish concrete fill for treads and platforms to comply with Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
 - 1. Install abrasive nosings with anchors fully embedded in concrete. Center nosings on tread width.
- H. Install precast concrete treads with adhesive / mechanical fasteners supplied by manufacturer.

3.2 INSTALLING RAILINGS

- A. Adjust railing systems before anchoring to ensure matching alignment at abutting joints. Space posts at spacing indicated or, if not indicated, as required by design loads. Plumb posts in each direction. Secure posts and rail ends to building construction as follows:
 - 1. Anchor posts to steel by welding to steel supporting members.
 - 2. Anchor handrail ends to concrete and masonry with steel round flanges welded to rail ends and anchored with post installed anchors and bolts.
- B. Attach handrails to wall with wall brackets. Locate brackets as indicated or, if not indicated, at spacing required to support structural loads. Secure wall brackets to building construction as required to comply with performance requirements as follows:
 - 1. For concrete and solid masonry anchorage, use drilled-in expansion shields and hanger or lag bolts.
 - 2. For hollow masonry anchorage, use toggle bolts.
 - 3. For steel-framed partitions, use hanger or lag bolts set into fire-retardant-treated wood backing between studs. Coordinate with stud installation to locate backing members.

4. For steel-framed partitions, use self-tapping screws fastened to steel framing or to concealed steel reinforcements.

3.3 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Touchup Painting: Immediately after erection, clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint, and paint exposed areas with same material as used for shop painting to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-painted surfaces.
 1. Apply by brush or spray to provide a minimum 2.0-mil 0.05-mm dry film thickness.
- B. Touchup Painting: Cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint are specified in [Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" and Section 099123 "Interior Painting."] [Section 099600 "High-Performance Coatings."] [Section 099113 "Exterior Painting," Section 099123 "Interior Painting," and Section 099600 "High-Performance Coatings."]
- C. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and repair galvanizing to comply with ASTM A 780/A 780M.

END OF SECTION 055113

SECTION 05 5213 - PIPE AND TUBE RAILINGS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Steel pipe railings.
- B. Related Sections:
 - 1. Division 05 Section "Metal Stairs" for steel tube railings associated with metal stairs.
 - 2. Division 06 Section "Miscellaneous Rough Carpentry" for wood blocking for anchoring railings.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Design railings, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
- B. General: In engineering railings to withstand structural loads indicated, determine allowable design working stresses of railing materials based on the following:
 - 1. Steel: 72 percent of minimum yield strength.
 - 2. Aluminum: The lesser of minimum yield strength divided by 1.65 or minimum ultimate tensile strength divided by 1.95.
 - 3. Stainless Steel: 60 percent of minimum yield strength.
- C. Structural Performance: Railings shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and the following loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated:
 - 1. Handrails and Top Rails of Guards:
 - a. Uniform load of 50 lbf/ ft. (0.73 kN/m) applied in any direction.
 - b. Concentrated load of 200 lbf (0.89 kN) applied in any direction.
 - c. Uniform and concentrated loads need not be assumed to act concurrently.
 - 2. Infill of Guards:
 - a. Concentrated load of 50 lbf (0.22 kN) applied horizontally on an area of 1 sq. ft. (0.093 sq. m).
 - b. Infill load and other loads need not be assumed to act concurrently.

- D. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes acting on exterior metal fabrications by preventing buckling, opening of joints, overstressing of components, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects.
 - 1. Temperature Change: 120 deg F (67 deg C), ambient; 180 deg F (100 deg C), material surfaces.
 - E. Control of Corrosion: Prevent galvanic action and other forms of corrosion by insulating metals and other materials from direct contact with incompatible materials.
- 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS
- A. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
 - B. Delegated-Design Submittal: For installed products indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
- 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS
- A. Qualification Data: For qualified professional engineer.
 - B. Mill Certificates: Signed by manufacturers of stainless-steel products certifying that products furnished comply with requirements.
 - C. Welding certificates.
 - D. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency, according to ASTM E 894 and ASTM E 935.
- 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE
- A. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of railing from single source from single manufacturer.
 - B. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
 - C. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
 - 1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
 - 2. AWS D1.2/D1.2M, "Structural Welding Code - Aluminum."
 - 3. AWS D1.6, "Structural Welding Code - Stainless Steel."
- 1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS
- A. Field Measurements: Verify actual locations of walls and other construction contiguous with metal fabrications by field measurements before fabrication.
- 1.8 COORDINATION AND SCHEDULING

- A. Coordinate selection of shop primers with topcoats to be applied over them. Comply with paint and coating manufacturers' written recommendations to ensure that shop primers and topcoats are compatible with one another.
- B. Coordinate installation of anchorages for railings. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors, that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.
- C. Schedule installation so wall attachments are made only to completed walls. Do not support railings temporarily by any means that do not satisfy structural performance requirements.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 METALS, GENERAL

- A. Metal Surfaces, General: Provide materials with smooth surfaces, without seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names, stains, discolorations, or blemishes.
- B. Brackets, Flanges, and Anchors: Cast or formed metal of same type of material and finish as supported rails unless otherwise indicated.

2.2 STEEL AND IRON

- A. Recycled Content of Steel Products: Postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content not less than 25 percent.
- B. Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type F or Type S, Grade A, Standard Weight (Schedule 40), unless another grade and weight are required by structural loads.
- C. Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
- D. Cast Iron: Either gray iron, ASTM A 48/A 48M, or malleable iron, ASTM A 47/A 47M, unless otherwise indicated.

2.3 FASTENERS

- A. General: Provide the following:
 - 1. Ungalvanized-Steel Interior Stairway Railings: Plated steel fasteners complying with ASTM B 633 or ASTM F 1941 (ASTM F 1941M), Class Fe/Zn 5 for zinc coating.
 - 2. Hot-Dip Galvanized Exterior Railings: Type 304 stainless-steel or hot-dip zinc-coated steel fasteners complying with ASTM A 153/A 153M or ASTM F 2329 for zinc coating
- B. Fasteners for Anchoring Railings to Other Construction: Select fasteners of type, grade, and class required to produce connections suitable for anchoring railings to other types of construction indicated and capable of withstanding design loads.
- C. Fasteners for Interconnecting Railing Components:

1. Provide concealed fasteners for interconnecting railing components and for attaching them to other work, unless otherwise indicated.
2. Provide tamper-resistant flat-head machine screws for exposed fasteners unless otherwise indicated.

2.4 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Welding Rods and Bare Electrodes: Select according to AWS specifications for metal alloy welded.
- B. Shop Primers: At interior stairway railing, provide primers that comply with Division 09 painting Sections.
- C. Epoxy Zinc-Rich Primer: At exterior railings, complying with MPI#20 and compatible with topcoat

2.5 FABRICATION

- A. General: Fabricate railings to comply with requirements indicated for design, dimensions, member sizes and spacing, details, finish, and anchorage, but not less than that required to support structural loads.
- B. Assemble railings in the shop to greatest extent possible to minimize field splicing and assembly. Disassemble units only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Clearly mark units for reassembly and coordinated installation. Use connections that maintain structural value of joined pieces.
- C. Cut, drill, and punch metals cleanly and accurately. Remove burrs and ease edges to a radius of approximately 1/32 inch (1 mm) unless otherwise indicated. Remove sharp or rough areas on exposed surfaces.
- D. Form work true to line and level with accurate angles and surfaces.
- E. Fabricate connections that will be exposed to weather in a manner to exclude water. Provide weep holes where water may accumulate.
- F. Cut, reinforce, drill, and tap as indicated to receive finish hardware, screws, and similar items.
- G. Connections: Fabricate railings with welded connections unless otherwise indicated.
- H. Welded Connections: Cope components at connections to provide close fit, or use fittings designed for this purpose. Weld all around at connections, including at fittings.
 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
 3. Remove flux immediately.
 4. At exposed connections, finish exposed surfaces smooth and blended so no roughness shows after finishing and welded surface matches contours of adjoining surfaces.
- I. Form changes in direction as follows:
 1. As detailed.

- J. Bend members in jigs to produce uniform curvature for each configuration required; maintain cross section of member throughout entire bend without buckling, twisting, cracking, or otherwise deforming exposed surfaces of components.
 - K. Close exposed ends of railing members with prefabricated end fittings.
 - L. Provide wall returns at ends of wall-mounted handrails unless otherwise indicated. Close ends of returns unless clearance between end of rail and wall is 1/4 inch (6 mm) or less.
 - M. Brackets, Flanges, Fittings, and Anchors: Provide wall brackets, flanges, miscellaneous fittings, and anchors to interconnect railing members to other work unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. At brackets and fittings fastened to plaster or gypsum board partitions, provide crush-resistant fillers, or other means to transfer loads through wall finishes to structural supports and prevent bracket or fitting rotation and crushing of substrate.
 - N. Provide inserts and other anchorage devices for connecting railings to concrete or masonry work. Fabricate anchorage devices capable of withstanding loads imposed by railings. Coordinate anchorage devices with supporting structure.
- 2.6 FINISHES, GENERAL
- A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
 - B. Provide exposed fasteners with finish matching appearance, including color and texture, of railings.
- 2.7 STEEL AND IRON FINISHES
- A. Galvanized Railings:
 - 1. Hot-dip galvanize exterior steel and iron railings, including hardware, after fabrication.
 - 2. Comply with ASTM A 123/A 123M for hot-dip galvanized railings.
 - 3. Comply with ASTM A 153/A 153M for hot-dip galvanized hardware.
 - 4. Do not quench or apply post galvanizing treatments that might interfere with paint adhesion.
 - 5. Fill vent and drain holes that will be exposed in the finished Work, unless indicated to remain as weep holes, by plugging with zinc solder and filing off smooth.
 - B. For galvanized railings, provide hot-dip galvanized fittings, brackets, fasteners, sleeves, and other ferrous components.
 - C. Preparing Galvanized Railings for Shop Priming: After galvanizing, thoroughly clean railings of grease, dirt, oil, flux, and other foreign matter, and treat with etching cleaner.
 - D. For nongalvanized steel railings, provide nongalvanized ferrous-metal fittings, brackets, fasteners, and sleeves, except galvanize anchors to be embedded in exterior concrete or masonry.
 - E. Preparation for Shop Priming: Prepare uncoated ferrous-metal surfaces to comply with SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."

- F. Primer Application: Apply shop primer to prepared surfaces of railings unless otherwise indicated. Comply with requirements in SSPC-PA 1, "Paint Application Specification No. 1: Shop, Field, and Maintenance Painting of Steel," for shop painting. Primer need not be applied to surfaces to be embedded in concrete or masonry.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine plaster and gypsum board assemblies, where reinforced to receive anchors, to verify that locations of concealed reinforcements have been clearly marked for Installer. Locate reinforcements and mark locations if not already done.

3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Fit exposed connections together to form tight, hairline joints.
- B. Perform cutting, drilling, and fitting required for installing railings. Set railings accurately in location, alignment, and elevation; measured from established lines and levels and free of rack.
 - 1. Do not weld, cut, or abrade surfaces of railing components that have been coated or finished after fabrication and that are intended for field connection by mechanical or other means without further cutting or fitting.
 - 2. Set posts plumb within a tolerance of 1/16 inch in 3 feet (2 mm in 1 m).
 - 3. Align rails so variations from level for horizontal members and variations from parallel with rake of steps and ramps for sloping members do not exceed 1/4 inch in 12 feet (5 mm in 3 m).
- C. Adjust railings before anchoring to ensure matching alignment at abutting joints.
- D. Fastening to In-Place Construction: Use anchorage devices and fasteners where necessary for securing railings and for properly transferring loads to in-place construction.

3.3 RAILING CONNECTIONS

- A. Welded Connections: Use fully welded joints for permanently connecting railing components. Comply with requirements for welded connections in "Fabrication" Article whether welding is performed in the shop or in the field.

3.4 ATTACHING RAILINGS

- A. Attach railings to wall with wall brackets. Provide brackets with 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) clearance from inside face of handrail and finished wall surface. Locate brackets as indicated or, if not indicated, at spacing required to support structural loads.
 - 1. Use type of bracket with predrilled hole for exposed bolt anchorage.
 - 2. Locate brackets as indicated or, if not indicated, at spacing required to support structural loads.
- B. Secure wall brackets to building construction as follows:

April 2015

A-012651
State of Kansas - Energy & Service Center

1. For hollow masonry anchorage, use toggle bolts.
2. For steel-framed partitions, use hanger or lag bolts set into fire-retardant-treated wood backing between studs. Coordinate with stud installation to locate backing members.

3.5 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Touchup Painting: Cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint are specified in Division 09 painting Sections.

3.6 PROTECTION

- A. Protect finishes of railings from damage during construction period with temporary protective coverings approved by railing manufacturer. Remove protective coverings at time of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 05 5213

05 5213 - 7
PIPE AND TUBE RAILINGS

SECTION 05 720 – DECORATIVE METAL RAILINGS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This section Includes the following:
 - 1. Steel and iron ornamental handrails and railings.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
 - 1. Division 05 Section "Metal Stairs" for handrails and railings associated with metal stairs.
 - 2. Division 05 Section "Pipe and Tube Railings" for handrails and railings fabricated from pipe and tube components.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General: In engineering handrails and railings to withstand structural loads indicated, determine allowable design working stresses of materials based on the following:
 - 1. Cold-Formed Structural Steel: AISI SG-673, Part I, "Specification for the Design of Cold-Formed Steel Structural Members."
- B. Structural Performance of Handrails and Railings: Provide handrails and railings capable of withstanding the following structural loads without exceeding allowable design working stress of materials for handrails, railings, anchors, and connections:
 - 1. Top Rail of Guards: Capable of withstanding the following loads applied as indicated:
 - a. Concentrated load of 200 lbf (890 N) applied at any point and in any direction.
 - b. Uniform load of 50 lbf/ft (730 N/m) applied horizontally and concurrently with uniform load of 100 lbf/ft (1460 N/m) applied vertically downward.
 - c. Concentrated and uniform loads above need not be assumed to act concurrently.
 - 2. Handrails Not Serving As Top Rails: Capable of withstanding the following loads applied as indicated:
 - a. Concentrated load of 200 lbf (890 N) applied at any point and in any direction.
 - b. Uniform load of 50 lbf/ft (730 N/m) applied in any direction.
 - c. Concentrated and uniform loads above need not be assumed to act concurrently.
 - 3. Infill Area of Guards: Capable of withstanding a horizontal concentrated load of 200 lbf (890 N) applied to 1 sq. ft. (0.09 sq. m) at any point in system, including panels, intermediate rails, balusters, or other elements composing infill area.

05 7300 - 1
DECORATIVE METAL RAILINGS

- C. Load above need not be assumed to act concurrently with loads on top rails in determining stress on guard. Thermal Movements: Provide handrails and railings that allow for thermal movements resulting from the following maximum change (range) in ambient and surface temperatures by preventing buckling, opening of joints, overstressing of components, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects. Base engineering calculation on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.
 - 1. Temperature Change (Range): 120 deg F (67 deg C), ambient; 180 deg F (100 deg C), material surfaces.
- D. Control of Corrosion: Prevent galvanic action and other forms of corrosion by insulating metals and other materials from direct contact with incompatible materials.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For manufacturer's product lines of handrails and railings assembled from standard components.
 - 1. Include Product Data for grout, anchoring cement, and paint products.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation of handrails and railings. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other Work.
 - 1. For installed handrails and railings indicated to comply with design loads, include structural analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
- C. Samples for Verification: For each type of exposed finish required, prepared on components indicated below and of same thickness and metal indicated for the Work. If finishes involve normal color and texture variations, include sample sets showing the full range of variations expected.
 - 1. Fittings and brackets.
 - 2. Welded connections.
 - 3. Assembled Samples of railings, made from full-size components, including top rail, post, handrail, and infill. Show method of finishing members at intersections. Samples need not be full height.
- D. Qualification Data: For firms and persons specified in "Quality Assurance" Article to demonstrate their capabilities and experience. Include lists of completed projects with project names and addresses, names and addresses of architects and owners, and other information specified.
- E. Product Test Reports: Indicating handrails and railings comply with ASTM E 985, based on comprehensive testing of current products.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Professional Engineer Qualifications: A professional engineer who is legally qualified to practice in jurisdiction where Project is located and who is experienced in providing engineering services of the kind indicated. Engineering services are defined as those performed for installations of handrails and railing that are similar to those indicated for this Project in material, design, and extent.

- B. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent testing agency with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated, as documented according to ASTM E 548.
 - C. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of railing through one source from a single manufacturer.
 - D. Mockups: Before installing handrails and railings, build mockups to verify selections made under sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and qualities of materials and execution. Build mockups to comply with the following requirements, using materials indicated for the completed Work:
 - 1. Build mockups in the location indicated or, if not indicated, as directed by Architect.
 - 2. Build mockups for each form and finish of railing consisting of two posts, top rail, infill area, and anchorage system components that are full height and are not less than 48 inches (1.2 m) in length.
 - 3. Notify Architect seven days in advance of dates and times when mockups will be constructed.
 - 4. Obtain Architect's approval of mockups before fabricating ornamental handrails and railings.
 - 5. Maintain mockups during construction in an undisturbed condition as a standard for judging the completed Work.
 - 6. Demolish and remove mockups when directed.
- 1.6 STORAGE
- A. Store handrails and railings in a dry, well-ventilated, weathertight place.
- 1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS
- A. Field Measurements: Verify handrail and railing dimensions by field measurements before fabrication and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delaying the Work.
- 1.8 COORDINATION
- A. Coordinate installation of anchorages for handrails and railings. Furnish Setting Drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors, that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.
- 1.9 SCHEDULING
- A. Schedule installation so handrails and railings are mounted only on completed walls. Do not support temporarily by any means that do not satisfy structural performance requirements.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:

1. Steel and Iron Handrails and Railings:

- a. Blum: Julius Blum & co., Inc.
- b. Braun: J.G. Braun Co.
- c. Livers Bronze Co., Inc.
- d. Wagner: R&B Wagner, Inc.
- e. Others, pre-approved by Architect

2. Custom Steel and Iron Handrails and Railings:

- a. Topeka Metal Specialties Inc, 5600 SW Topeka Blvd., Topeka, KS. Phone 785-862-1071
- b. Perine Metal Works, 916 SE 4th Street, Topeka, KS. Phone 785-232-1018
- c. Custom Metals, 4544 Don's Road, Madison Wisconsin. Phone 608-222-4699
- d. Others, pre-approved by Architect.

2.2 METALS

- A. General: Provide metal free from pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, and other imperfections where exposed to view on finished units.

- B. Steel and Iron: Comply with the following requirements for each form required:

1. Steel Tubing: Cold-Formed steel tubing, ASTM A 500, Grade A, unless another grade is indicated or required by structural loads.
2. Steel Rails and Bars: Hot-rolled, carbon steel complying with ASTM A 29/A 29M, Grade 1010.
3. Steel Plates, Shapes and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
4. Iron Castings: Malleable iron complying with ASTM A 47, Grade 32510 (ASTM A 47M, Grade 22010)
5. Iron Castings: Gray iron complying with ASTM A 48, Class 30 (ASTM A 48M, Class 200)

- C. Brackets, Flanges, and Anchors: cast or formed metal of same type of material and finish as supported rail, unless otherwise indicated.

1. Provide cast brackets with flange tapped for concealed anchorage to threaded hanger bolt.

2.3 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Filler Metal and electrodes: Provide type and alloy of filler metal and electrodes as recommended by producer of metal to be welded or brazed and as required for color match, strength, corrosion resistance, and compatibility in fabricated items.

2.4 FASTNERS

- A. Fasteners for Anchoring Handrails and Railings to Other Construction: Select fasteners of type, grade and class required to produce connections suitable for anchoring handrails and railing to other types of construction indicated and capable of withstanding design loads.

1. For steel handrails, railings and fittings, use plated fasteners complying with ASTM B 633, Class Fe/Zn 25 for electrodeposited zinc coating.
- B. Fasteners for Interconnecting Handrail and Railing Components: Use fasteners fabricated from same basic metal as fastened metal, unless otherwise indicated. Do not use metals that are corrosive or incompatible with materials joined
 1. Provide concealed fasteners for interconnection railing components and for attaching them to other Work, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Cast-in-Place and Postinstalled Anchors: Anchors of type indicated below, fabricated from corrosion-resistant materials with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to six times the load imposed when installed in unit masonry and equal to four times the load imposed when installed in concrete, as determined by testing per ASTM E 488 conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.
 1. Cast-in-place anchors.
 2. Expansion anchors.

2.5 PAINT

- A. At all Handrails or Guardrails exposed to public view, and in lieu of a shop-primed and field-painted finish, provide a powder-coated finish in accordance with the following requirements:
 1. Materials: The material shall be finely ground free flowing powder of a one component material consisting of a resin and curing agent system, catalysts, fillers, colorants, and flow control agents in order to form a powder formulation capable of being electrostatically applied. The powder shall be uniform, free from grit, and free of solvent, abrasives, water, chlorides or other impurities.
 2. Coating Characteristics: When applied to a substrate and subjected to a heating cycle, as required by the contractor, the material shall melt, fuse, and subsequently cure to form a coating which conforms to the requirement of this specification.
 3. Film Properties: the powder coating shall be applied by established commercial powder coating methods over abrasive blasted steel. Coatings shall have a total dry film thickness of 4 to 6 mils. The cured coating shall be uniform, smooth, even and free from run, sags and streaks.
 4. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard colors.

2.6 GROUT AND ANCHORING CEMENT

- A. Nonshrink, Nonmetallic Grout: Premixed, factory-packaged, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous grout complying with ASTM C 1107. Provide grout specifically recommended by manufacturer for interior and exterior applications.
- B. Erosion-Resistant Anchoring Cement: Factory-packaged, nonshrink, nonstaining, hydraulic-controlled expansion cement formulation for mixing with water at Project site to create pourable anchoring, patching, and grouting compound. Provide formulation that is resistant to erosion from water exposure without needing protection by a sealer or waterproof coating and that is recommended by manufacturer for exterior use.

2.7 FABRICATION

- A. Assemble handrails and railings in shop to greatest extent possible to minimize field splicing and assembly. Disassemble units only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Clearly mark units for reassembly and coordinated installation. Use connections that maintain structural value of joined pieces.
- B. Form changes in direction of railing members as follows:
 - 1. As detailed.
- C. Form simple and compound curves by bending members in jigs to produce uniform curvature for each repetitive configuration required; maintain profile of member throughout entire bend without buckling, twisting, cracking, or otherwise deforming exposed surfaces of handrail and railing components.
- D. Welded Connections: Fabricate handrails and railing for connecting members by welding. Cope components at perpendicular and skew connections to provide close fit, or use fittings designed for this purpose. Weld connections continuously to comply with the following:
 - 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
 - 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
 - 3. Remove flux immediately.
 - 4. At exposed connections, finish exposed surfaces smooth and blended so no roughness shows after finishing and welded surface matches contours of adjoining surfaces.
- E. Brackets, Flanges, Fittings and Anchors: Provide manufacturer's standard wall brackets, flanges, miscellaneous fittings, and anchors to connect handrail and railing members to other construction.
- F. Provide inserts and other anchorage devices to connect handrails and railings to concrete or masonry. Fabricate anchorage devices capable of withstanding loads imposed by handrails and railings. Coordinate anchorage devices with supporting structure.
- G. For railing posts set in concrete, provide preset sleeves of steel not less than 6 inches (150 mm) long with inside dimensions not less than 1/2 inch (12 mm) larger than outside dimensions of post, and steel plate forming bottom closure.
- H. Shear and punch metals cleanly and accurately. Remove burrs from exposed cut edges.
- I. Ease exposed edges to a radius of approximately 1/32 inch (1 mm), unless otherwise indicated. Form bent-metal corners to smallest radius possible without causing grain separation or otherwise impairing the Work.
- J. Cut, reinforce, drill and tap components, as indicated, to receive finish hardware, screws and similar items.
- K. Provide weep holes or another means to drain entrapped water in hollow sections of railing members that are exposed to exterior or to moisture from condensation or other sources.
- L. Fabricate joints that will be exposed to weather in a watertight manner.
- M. Close exposed ends of railing members with prefabricated end fittings.
- N. Provide wall returns at ends of wall-mounted handrails, unless otherwise indicated. Close ends of returns.

2.8 FINISHES, GENERAL

- A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- B. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipment.
- C. Appearance of Finished Work: Variations in appearance of abutting or adjacent pieces are acceptable if they are within one-half of the range of approved Samples. Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of other components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

2.9 STEEL AND IRON FINISHES

- A. Galvanized Handrails and Railing: Hot-dip galvanize exterior steel and iron handrails and railings to comply with ASTM A 123. Hot-dip galvanize hardware for exterior steel and iron handrails and railings to comply with ASTM A 153/A 153M.
- B. Fill vent and drain holes that will be exposed in finished Work, unless indicated to remain as weep holes, by plugging with zinc solder and filing off smooth.
- C. For galvanized handrails and railings, provide galvanized fittings, brackets, fasteners, sleeves and other ferrous components.
- D. Preparation for Shop Priming: After galvanizing, thoroughly clean handrails and railings of grease, dirt, oil, flux, and other foreign matter, and treat with metallic-phosphate process.
- E. Apply shop primer to prepared surfaces of handrails and railings, unless otherwise indicated. Comply with requirements in SSPC-PA 1, "Paint Application Specification No. 1", for shop painting. Primer need not be applied to surfaces to be embedded in concrete or masonry.
 - 1. Stripe paint edges, corners, crevices, bolts and welds.
- F. Painted Finish: Comply with Division 9 Section "Painting".

PART 3 – EXCEUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Fit exposed connections together to form tight, hairline joints.
- B. Cutting, Fitting and Placement: Perform cutting drilling and fitting required for installing handrails and railings. Set handrails and railings accurately in location, alignment, and elevation, measured from established lines and levels and free from rack.
 - 1. Do not weld, cut or abrade surfaces of railing components that have been coated or finished after fabrication and that are intended for field connection by mechanical or other means without further cutting or fitting.
 - 2. Set posts plumb within a tolerance of 1/16 inch in 3 feet (2 mm in 1 m).

3. Align rails so variation from level for horizontal members and from parallel with rake of steps and ramps for sloping members do not exceed 1.4 inch in 12 feet (5 mm in 3 m)
- C. Adjust handrails and railings before anchoring to ensure alignment at abutting joints. Space posts at interval indicated, but not less than that required by structural loads.
- D. Fastening to in-Place Construction: Use anchorage devices and fasteners where necessary for securing handrails and railing and for properly transferring loads to in-place construction.

3.2 RAILING CONNECTIONS

- A. Welded Connections: Use fully welded joints for permanently connecting railing components. Comply with requirements for welded connections in "Fabrication" Article whether welding is performed in shop or in field.
- B. Expansion Joints: Install expansion joints at locations indicated but not further apart than required to accommodate thermal movement. Provide slip-joint internal sleeve extending 2 inches (50 mm) beyond joint on either side; fasten internal sleeve securely to one side; locate joint within 6 inches (150 mm) of post.

3.3 ANCHORING POSTS

- A. Use steel pipe sleeves preset and anchored into concrete for installing posts. After posts have been inserted into sleeves, fill annular space between post and sleeve with the following anchoring material, mixed and placed to comply with anchoring material manufacturer's written instructions:
 1. Nonshrink, nonmetallic grout or anchoring cement.
- B. Cover anchorage joint with a flange of same metal as post, attached to post as follows:
 1. Welded to post after placing anchoring material.

3.4 ANCHORING RAIL ENDS

- A. Anchor rail ends to concrete and masonry with brackets on underside of rail connected to rail ends and anchored with postinstalled anchors and bolts.

3.5 ATTACHING HANDRAILS TO WALLS

- A. Attach handrails to wall with wall brackets. Provide bracket with 1-1/2-inch (38 mm) clearance from inside face of handrail and finished wall surface.
- B. Locate brackets as indicated or, if not indicated, at spacing required to support structural loads.
- C. Secure wall brackets to building construction as follows:
 1. For concrete and solid masonry anchorage, use drilled-in expansion shields and hanger or lag bolts.
 2. For hollow masonry anchorage, use toggle bolts.

3.6 CLEANING

- A. Touchup Painting: Cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint are specified in Division 9 Section "Painting."
- B. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and repair galvanizing to comply with ASTM A 780.

3.7 PROTECTION

- A. Protect finishes of handrails and railings from damage during construction period with temporary protective coverings approved by railing manufacturer. Remove protective coverings at the time of Substantial Completion.
- B. Restore finishes damaged during installation and construction period so no evidence remains of correction work. Return items that cannot be refinished in field to shop; make required alterations and refinish entire unit, or provide new units.

END OF SECTION 05 7300

SECTION 05 7500 - DECORATIVE FORMED METAL

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Architectural Stamped Grilles.

- B. Related Sections:

- 1. Section 06 40 00 - Architectural Woodwork: Grilles, registers, diffusers and bar grates for custom casework.
 - 2. Section 23 30 00 - HVAC Air Distribution: Grilles, registers, diffusers and bar grates for terminal fixtures for ductwork.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Structural Performance: Decorative formed metal items, including anchors and connections, shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and the following loads and stresses without exceeding the allowable design working stress of materials involved and without exhibiting permanent deformation in any components:
- B. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes acting on exterior metal fabrications by preventing buckling, opening of joints, overstressing of components, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects.
 - 1. Temperature Change: 120 deg F (67 deg C), ambient; 180 deg F (100 deg C), material surfaces.
- C. Control of Corrosion: Prevent galvanic action and other forms of corrosion by insulating metals and other materials from direct contact with incompatible materials.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include finishing materials.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details for decorative formed metal.
 - 1. Include plans, elevations, component details, and attachments to other work.
 - 2. Indicate materials and profiles of each decorative formed metal member, fittings, joinery, finishes, fasteners, anchorages, and accessory items.

05 7500 - 1
DECORATIVE FORMED METAL

- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For products involving selection of color, texture, or design, including mechanical finishes.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: For decorative formed metal elements that house items specified in other Sections. Show dimensions of housed items, including locations of housing penetrations and attachments, and necessary clearances.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver decorative formed metal products wrapped in protective coverings and strapped together in suitable packs or in heavy-duty cartons.
- B. Store unopened packaged products on elevated platforms in a dry, heated location.

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify actual locations of Aluminum Curtain Wall Frames contiguous with decorative formed metal by field measurements before fabrication and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.

1.8 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate installation of anchorages for decorative formed metal items. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages.
- B. Coordinate installation of decorative formed metal with adjacent construction to ensure that wall assemblies, flashings, trim, and joint sealants, are protected against damage from the effects of weather, age, corrosion, and other causes.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SHEET METAL

- A. General: Provide sheet metal without pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, or other imperfections where exposed to view on finished units.
- B. Aluminum Sheet: Flat sheet complying with ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M), alloy and temper recommended by aluminum producer and finisher for type of use and finish indicated, and with not less than strength and durability properties of Alloy 5005-H32.

2.2 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Sealants, Interior: Nonsag, paintable, nonstaining, latex sealant complying with ASTM C 834; of type and grade required to seal joints in decorative formed metal; and as recommended in writing by decorative formed metal manufacturer.

1. Use sealant that has a VOC content of not more than 250 g/L when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 - B. Fasteners: Fabricated from same basic metal and alloy as fastened metal unless otherwise indicated. Do not use metals that are incompatible with materials joined.
 1. Provide concealed fasteners for interconnecting decorative formed metal items and for attaching them to other work unless otherwise indicated.
- 2.3 ARCHITECTURAL STAMPED AND GRILLES.
- A. Acceptable Manufacturers: KEES, Inc. Architectural Division Profile: Rectangular face.
 - B. Requests for substitutions will be considered in accordance with provisions of Section 01 6000.
 - C. Profile: Rectangular Face.
 - D. Dimensions: Refer to drawings for grille and dimensions.
 - E. Application: Opposed Blade Damper (OBD): Provide where scheduled or as required.
 - F. Mounting: Concealed mounted with integral angle: Mounting D, into curtain wall frame.
 - G. Material and Thickness: Stainless Steel Type 304: 14 gauge (1.90 mm) through 10 gauge (3.42 mm).
 - H. Finish: Epoxy Paint, Match curtain wall frame.
 - I. Pattern: Kees, Inc. RE188 RECTANGULAR CANE.
- 2.4 FORMED METAL CLOSEURES
- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 1. Fry Reglet Corporation.
 2. Pittcon Industries.
 3. Forman Fabricators, Inc.
 - B. Form closures and trim from metal of type and thickness indicated below. Fabricate to fit tightly to adjoining construction
 1. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: 0.052 inch (1.32 mm).
 - a. Finish: Factory primed.
- 2.5 FABRICATION, GENERAL
- A. Shop Assembly: Preassemble decorative formed metal items in shop to greatest extent possible to minimize field splicing and assembly. Disassemble units only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Clearly mark units for reassembly and coordinated installation.

- B. Coordinate dimensions and attachment methods of decorative formed metal items with those of adjoining construction to produce integrated assemblies with closely fitting joints and with edges and surfaces aligned unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Form metal to profiles indicated, in maximum lengths to minimize joints. Produce flat, flush surfaces without cracking or grain separation at bends. Fold back exposed edges of unsupported sheet metal to form a 1/2-inch- (12-mm-) wide hem on the concealed side, or ease edges to a radius of approximately 1/32 inch (1 mm) and support with concealed stiffeners.
- D. Increase metal thickness or reinforce with concealed stiffeners, backing materials, or both, as needed to provide surface flatness equivalent to stretcher-leveled standard of flatness and sufficient strength for indicated use.
- E. Support joints with concealed stiffeners as needed to hold exposed faces of adjoining sheets in flush alignment.
- F. Build in straps, plates, and brackets as needed to support and anchor fabricated items to adjoining construction. Reinforce decorative formed metal items as needed to attach and support other construction.
- G. Provide support framing, mounting and attachment clips, splice sleeves, backplates, fasteners, and accessories needed to install decorative formed metal items.

2.6 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- B. Complete mechanical finishes of flat sheet metal surfaces before fabrication where possible. After fabrication, finish all joints, bends, abrasions, and other surface blemishes to match sheet finish.
- C. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- D. Apply organic and anodic finishes to formed metal after fabrication unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Appearance of Finished Work: Variations in appearance of abutting or adjacent pieces are acceptable if they are within one-half of the range of approved Samples. Noticeable variations in the same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of other components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

2.7 ALUMINUM FINISHES

- A. Architectural Stamped and Lattice Return Air Grilles: Baked Enamel or Powder Coat.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of decorative formed metal.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
- C. If substrate preparation is the responsibility of another installer, notify Architect of unsatisfactory preparation before proceeding.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Locate and place decorative formed metal items level and plumb and in alignment with adjacent construction. Perform cutting, drilling, and fitting required to install decorative formed metal.
 - 1. Do not cut or abrade finishes that cannot be completely restored in the field. Return items with such finishes to the shop for required alterations, followed by complete refinishing, or provide new units as required.
- B. Use concealed anchorages where possible. Provide brass or lead washers fitted to screws where needed to protect metal surfaces.
- C. Form tight joints with exposed connections accurately fitted together. Provide reveals and openings for sealants and joint fillers as indicated.
- D. Install concealed gaskets, joint fillers, insulation, sealants, and flashings, as the Work progresses, to make exterior decorative formed metal items weatherproof.

3.3 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Unless otherwise indicated, clean metals by washing thoroughly with clean water and soap, rinsing with clean water, and drying with soft cloths.
- B. Restore finishes damaged during installation and construction period so no evidence remains of correction work. Return items that cannot be refinished in the field to the shop; make required alterations and refinish entire unit or provide new units.

3.4 PROTECTION

- A. Protect finishes of decorative formed metal items from damage during construction period. Remove temporary protective coverings at time of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 05 7500

SECTION 06 1053 - MISCELLANEOUS ROUGH CARPENTRY

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Wood blocking and nailers.
 - 2. Plywood backing panels.
 - 3. Wall sheathing
 - 4. Cement Board for Wall Tile Backerboard.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Division 06 Section "Sheathing."

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Dimension Lumber: Lumber of 2 inches nominal (38 mm actual) or greater but less than 5 inches nominal (114 mm actual) in least dimension.
- B. Lumber grading agencies, and the abbreviations used to reference them, include the following:
 - 1. NeLMA: Northeastern Lumber Manufacturers' Association.
 - 2. NHLA: National Hardwood Lumber Association.
 - 3. NLGA: National Lumber Grades Authority.
 - 4. SPIB: The Southern Pine Inspection Bureau.
 - 5. WCLIB: West Coast Lumber Inspection Bureau.
 - 6. WWPA: Western Wood Products Association.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of process and factory-fabricated product. Indicate component materials and dimensions and include construction and application details.
 - 1. Include data for wood-preserved treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated materials comply with requirements. Indicate type of preservative used and net amount of preservative retained.
 - 2. Include data for fire-retardant treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated materials comply with requirements. Include physical properties of treated materials based on testing by a qualified independent testing agency.

3. For fire-retardant treatments, include physical properties of treated lumber both before and after exposure to elevated temperatures, based on testing by a qualified independent testing agency according to ASTM D 5664.
4. For products receiving a waterborne treatment, include statement that moisture content of treated materials was reduced to levels specified before shipment to Project site.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Evaluation Reports: For the following, from ICC-ES:

1. Preservative-treated wood.
2. Power-driven fasteners.
3. Powder-actuated fasteners.
4. Expansion anchors.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- ### A.
- Stack lumber flat with spacers beneath and between each bundle to provide air circulation. Protect lumber from weather by covering with waterproof sheeting, securely anchored. Provide for air circulation around stacks and under coverings.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 WOOD PRODUCTS, GENERAL

- ### A.
- Lumber: DOC PS 20 and applicable rules of grading agencies indicated. If no grading agency is indicated, provide lumber that complies with the applicable rules of any rules-writing agency certified by the ALSC Board of Review. Provide lumber graded by an agency certified by the ALSC Board of Review to inspect and grade lumber under the rules indicated.

1. Factory mark each piece of lumber with grade stamp of grading agency.
2. For exposed lumber indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, mark grade stamp on end or back of each piece or omit grade stamp and provide certificates of grade compliance issued by grading agency.
3. Where nominal sizes are indicated, provide actual sizes required by DOC PS 20 for moisture content specified. Where actual sizes are indicated, they are minimum dressed sizes for dry lumber.
4. Provide dressed lumber, S4S, unless otherwise indicated.

- ### B.
- Maximum Moisture Content of Lumber: 19 percent unless otherwise indicated.

2.2 WOOD-PRESERVATIVE-TREATED MATERIALS

- ### A.
- Preservative Treatment by Pressure Process: AWP A U1; Use Category UC2 for interior construction not in contact with the ground, Use Category UC3b for exterior construction not in contact with the ground, and Use Category UC4a for items in contact with the ground.

1. Preservative Chemicals: Acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and containing no arsenic or chromium.

- B. Kiln-dry lumber after treatment to a maximum moisture content of 19 percent. Do not use material that is warped or does not comply with requirements for untreated material.
- C. Mark lumber with treatment quality mark of an inspection agency approved by the ALSC Board of Review.
 - 1. For exposed lumber indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, mark end or back of each piece.
- D. Application: Treat items indicated on Drawings, and the following:
 - 1. Wood cants, nailers, curbs, equipment support bases, blocking, stripping, and similar members in connection with roofing, flashing, vapor barriers, and waterproofing.
 - 2. Wood sills, sleepers, blocking, and similar concealed members in contact with masonry or concrete.

2.3 FIRE-RETARDANT-TREATED MATERIALS

- A. General: Comply with performance requirements in AWPA C20 (lumber) and AWPA C27 (plywood)
 - 1. Use Exterior type for exterior locations and where indicated.
 - 2. Use Interior Type A, High Temperature (HT) for enclosed roof framing, framing in attic spaces, and where indicated.
 - 3. Use Interior type A, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Identify fire-retardant-treated wood with appropriate classification marking of testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Application: Treat items indicated on Drawings, and the following:
 - 1. Concealed blocking.
 - 2. Roof construction.
 - 3. Plywood backing panels.
 - 4. Cants

2.4 MISCELLANEOUS LUMBER

- A. General: Provide miscellaneous lumber indicated and lumber for support or attachment of other construction, including the following:
 - 1. Blocking.
 - 2. Nailers.
 - 3. Furring.
- B. For items of dimension lumber size, provide Construction or No. 2 grade lumber and any of the following species:
 - 1. Hem-fir (north); NLGA.
 - 2. Hem-fir; WCLIB or WWPA.

- C. For concealed boards, provide lumber with 19 percent maximum moisture content and any of the following species and grades:
 - 1. Hem-fir or hem-fir (north), Construction or No. 2 Common grade; NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
- D. For blocking not used for attachment of other construction, Utility, Stud, or No. 3 grade lumber of any species may be used provided that it is cut and selected to eliminate defects that will interfere with its attachment and purpose.
- E. For blocking and nailers used for attachment of other construction, select and cut lumber to eliminate knots and other defects that will interfere with attachment of other work.
- F. For furring strips for installing plywood or hardboard paneling, select boards with no knots capable of producing bent-over nails and damage to paneling.

2.5 FIRE-RETARDANT-TREATED PLYWOOD

- A. General: Comply with performance requirements in AWPA C27.
 - 1. Use treatment that does not promote corrosion of metal fasteners.
 - 2. Use Exterior type for exterior locations and where indicated.
 - 3. Use Interior type A, High Temperature (HT) for roof sheathing and where indicated.
 - 4. Use Interior Type A, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Kiln-dry material after treatment to a maximum moisture content of 15 percent. Do not use material that is warped or does not comply with requirements for untreated material.
- C. Identify fire-retardant-treated plywood with appropriate classification marking of UL, U.S. Testing, timber Products Inspection, or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. Application: Treat all plywood, unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Roof and wall sheathing within 48 inches of fire walls.
 - 2. Subflooring and underlayment for raised platforms.
- E. Plywood Wall Sheathing: Exterior Exposure 1, Structural I sheathing.
 - 1. Span Rating: As required by code.
 - 2. Nominal thickness: As indicated on drawings.

2.6 PLYWOOD BACKING PANELS

- A. Equipment Backing Panels: DOC PS 1, Exposure 1, C-D Plugged, fire-retardant treated, in thickness indicated or, if not indicated, not less than 1/2-inch (13-mm) nominal thickness.

2.7 WALL SHEATHING

- A. Glass-Mat Gypsum Wall Sheathing: ASTM C 1177/1177M.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. CertainTeed Corporation; GlasRoc.
 - b. G-P Gypsum Corporation; Dens-Glass Gold.
 - c. National Gypsum Company; Gold Bond e(2)XP.
 - d. United States Gypsum Co.; Securock.
 2. Type and Thickness: Type X, 5/8 inch thick.
 3. Size: 48 by 96 inches for vertical installation.
- B. Cementitious Backer Units: ASTM C 1325, Type A.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. James Hardie Industries: Hardy Board
 - b. USG Corporation; DUROCK Cement Board.
 2. Thickness: 5/8 inch.
- 2.8 FASTENERS
- A. General: Provide fasteners of size and type indicated that comply with requirements specified in this article for material and manufacture.
1. Where carpentry is exposed to weather, in ground contact, pressure-preservative treated, or in area of high relative humidity, provide fasteners with hot-dip zinc coating complying with ASTM A 153/A 153M.
 2. For wall sheathing, provide fasteners **with hot-dip zinc coating complying with ASTM A 153/A 153M.**
- B. Nails, Brads, and Staples: ASTM F 1667.
- C. Screws for Fastening Gypsum Sheathing to Cold-Formed Metal Framing: Steel drill screws, in length recommended by sheathing manufacturer for thickness of sheathing to be attached, with organic-polymer or other corrosion-protective coating having a salt-spray resistance of more than 800 hours according to ASTM B 117.
1. For steel framing less than 0.0329 inch thick, use steel drill screws that comply with ASTM C 1002.
- D. Power-Driven Fasteners: NES NER-272.
- E. Wood Screws: ASME B18.6.1.
- F. Screws for Fastening to Metal Framing: ASTM C 1002, length as recommended by screw manufacturer for material being fastened.
- G. Lag Bolts: ASME B18.2.1 (ASME B18.2.3.8M).
- H. Bolts: Steel bolts complying with ASTM A 307, Grade A (ASTM F 568M, Property Class 4.6); with ASTM A 563 (ASTM A 563M) hex nuts and, where indicated, flat washers.
- I. Expansion Anchors: Anchor bolt and sleeve assembly of material indicated below with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to 6 times the load imposed when installed in

unit masonry assemblies and equal to 4 times the load imposed when installed in concrete as determined by testing per ASTM E 488 conducted by a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency.

1. Material: Carbon-steel components, zinc plated to comply with ASTM B 633, Class Fe/Zn 5.

2.9 SHEATHING JOINT-AND-PENETRATION TREATMENT MATERIALS

A. Sealant for Glass-Mat Gypsum Sheathing:

1. Silicone emulsion sealant complying with ASTM C 834, compatible with sheathing tape and sheathing and recommended by tape and sheathing manufacturers for use with glass-fiber sheathing tape and for covering exposed fasteners.
2. Sheathing Tape: Self-adhering glass-fiber tape, minimum 2 inches wide, 10 by 10 or 10 by 20 threads/inch, of type recommended by sheathing and tape manufacturers for use with silicone emulsion sealant in sealing joints in glass-mat gypsum sheathing and with a history of successful in-service use.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Set carpentry to required levels and lines, with members plumb, true to line, cut, and fitted. Fit carpentry to other construction; scribe and cope as needed for accurate fit. Locate nailers, blocking, and similar supports to comply with requirements for attaching other construction.
- B. Where wood-preserved-treated lumber is installed adjacent to metal decking, install continuous flexible flashing separator between wood and metal decking.
- C. Install plywood backing panels by fastening to studs; coordinate locations with utilities requiring backing panels.
- D. Install plywood blocking by fastening to studs or other blocking where shown, or in place of lumber blocking where appropriate; coordinate locations with other items. Install fire-retardant treated plywood with classification marking of testing agency on outermost surface of the assembly where possible.
- E. Provide blocking and framing as indicated and as required to support facing materials, fixtures, specialty items, and trim.
- F. Sort and select lumber so that natural characteristics will not interfere with installation or with fastening other materials to lumber. Do not use materials with defects that interfere with function of member or pieces that are too small to use with minimum number of joints or optimum joint arrangement.
- G. Comply with AWP M4 for applying field treatment to cut surfaces of preservative-treated lumber.
 1. Use inorganic boron for items that are continuously protected from liquid water.
 2. Use copper naphthenate for items not continuously protected from liquid water.

- H. Securely attach to substrate by anchoring and fastening as indicated, complying with the following:
 - 1. NES NER-272 for power-driven fasteners.
 - 2. Table 2304.9.1, "Fastening Schedule," in ICC's International Building Code.
- I. Use steel common nails unless otherwise indicated. Select fasteners of size that will not fully penetrate members where opposite side will be exposed to view or will receive finish materials. Make tight connections between members. Install fasteners without splitting wood. Drive nails snug but do not countersink nail heads unless otherwise indicated.
- J. Cut panels at penetrations, edges, and other obstructions of work; fit tightly against abutting construction unless otherwise indicated.
- K. Coordinate wall sheathing installation with flashing and joint-sealant installation so these materials are installed in sequence and manner that prevent exterior moisture from passing through completed assembly.
- L. Do not bridge building expansion joints; cut and space edges of panels to match spacing of structural support elements.
- M. Coordinate sheathing installation with installation of materials installed over sheathing so sheathing is not exposed to precipitation or left exposed at end of the workday when rain is forecast.

3.2 GYPSUM SHEATHING INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with GA-253 and with manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. Fasten gypsum sheathing to cold-formed metal framing with screws.
 - 2. Install boards with a 3/8-inch gap where non-load-bearing construction abuts structural elements.
 - 3. Install boards with a 1/4-inch gap where they abut masonry or similar materials that might retain moisture, to prevent wicking.
- B. Apply fasteners so heads bear tightly against face of sheathing, but do not cut into facing.
- C. Vertical Installation: Install board vertical edges centered over studs. Abut ends and edges of each board with those of adjacent boards. Attach boards at perimeter and within field of board to each stud.
 - 1. Space fasteners approximately 8 inches o.c. and set back a minimum of 3/8 inch from edges and ends of boards.
- D. Seal sheathing joints according to sheathing manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. Apply elastomeric sealant to joints and fasteners and trowel flat. Apply sufficient amount of sealant to completely cover joints and fasteners after troweling. Seal other penetrations and openings.
 - 2. Apply glass-fiber sheathing tape to glass-mat gypsum sheathing joints and apply and trowel silicone emulsion sealant to embed entire face of tape in sealant. Apply sealant to exposed fasteners with a trowel so fasteners are completely covered. Seal other penetrations and openings.

3.3 CEMENTITIOUS BACKER UNIT INSTALLATION

- A. Install panels and treat joints according to ANSI A108.11 and manufacturer's written instructions for type of application indicated.

3.4 WOOD BLOCKING, AND NAILER INSTALLATION

- A. Install where indicated and where required for attaching other work. Form to shapes indicated and cut as required for true line and level of attached work. Coordinate locations with other work involved.
- B. Attach items to substrates to support applied loading. Recess bolts and nuts flush with surfaces unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Provide permanent grounds of dressed, pressure-preservative-treated, key-beveled lumber not less than 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) wide and of thickness required to bring face of ground to exact thickness of finish material. Remove temporary grounds when no longer required.
- D. Attach items to substrates with fasteners to provide Class 1A-90 rated uplift and pullout resistance required by roofing system manufacturer.

3.5 PROTECTION

- A. Protect wood that has been treated with inorganic boron (SBX) from weather. If, despite protection, inorganic boron-treated wood becomes wet, apply EPA-registered borate treatment. Apply borate solution by spraying to comply with EPA-registered label.
- B. Protect miscellaneous rough carpentry from weather. If, despite protection, miscellaneous rough carpentry becomes wet, apply EPA-registered borate treatment. Apply borate solution by spraying to comply with EPA-registered label.

END OF SECTION 06 1053

SECTION 06 4023 - INTERIOR ARCHITECTURAL WOODWORK

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
 - 1. Plastic-laminate cabinets.
 - 2. Solid-surfacing-material countertops.
 - 3. Solid-surfacing-material window sills.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
 - 1. Division 05 Section "Metal Fabrications" for steel counter supports.
 - 2. Division 09 Section "Non-Structural Metal Framing" for steel stud framing.
 - 3. Division 06 Section "Miscellaneous Rough Carpentry" for wood furring, blocking, shims, and hanging strips required for installing woodwork and concealed within other construction before woodwork installation.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Interior architectural woodwork includes wood furring, blocking, shims, and hanging strips for installing woodwork items unless concealed within other construction before woodwork installation.
- B. Exposed surface of casework: Surfaces visible when doors and drawers are closed, including bottoms of cabinets more than 48 inches (1200 mm) above floor, and visible surfaces in open cabinets or behind glass doors.
 - 1. Ends of cabinets indicated to be installed directly against and completely concealed by wall or other cabinets are defines as "concealed".
- C. Semi-exposed surfaces of casework: Surfaces behind opaque doors, such as cabinet interiors, shelves and dividers; interiors and sides of drawers; and interior faces of doors. Tops of cabines 78 inches (1980 mm) or more above floor are defined as "semi-exposed".
- D. Concealed portions of casework included sleepers, we frames, dust panels and other surfaces not usually visible after installation.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated, including cabinet hardware and accessories.
- B. Product Data: For panel products high-pressure decorative laminate adhesive for bonding plastic laminate solid-surfacing material cabinet hardware and accessories.
- C. Shop Drawings: Show location of each item, dimensioned plans and elevations, large-scale details, attachment devices, and other components.

1. Show details full size.
2. Show locations and sizes of furring, blocking, and hanging strips, including concealed blocking and reinforcement specified in other Sections.
3. Show locations and sizes of cutouts and holes for plumbing fixtures faucets and other items installed in architectural woodwork.

D. Samples for Verification:

1. Plastic laminates, 8 by 10 inches (200 by 250 mm), for each type, color, pattern, and surface finish.
2. PVC edge material.
3. Solid-surfacing materials, 6 inches (150 mm) square.
4. Exposed cabinet hardware and accessories, one unit for each type.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- B. Product Certificates: For each type of product, signed by product manufacturer.
- C. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of manufactured wood casework that fail in materials or workmanship within specified period.
 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Delamination of components or other failures of glue bond.
 - b. Warping of components.
 - c. Failure of operating hardware.
 - d. Deterioration of finishes.
 2. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturers Qualifications
 1. Materials and systems shall be manufactured by a company continuously and regularly employed in the manufacture of specified materials for a period of at least five (5) consecutive years and which can show evidence of those materials being satisfactorily used on at least six (6) projects of similar size, scope and location. At least three (3) of the projects shall have been successful for use five (5) years or longer.
- B. Source Limitations: Engage a qualified woodworking firm to assume undivided responsibility for production of interior architectural woodwork, solid surface counters and sills, and other fabrications of millwork as a whole. Multiple trades will not be accepted.
- C. Pre-installation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 01 Section "Project Management and Coordination."

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Do not deliver woodwork until painting and similar operations that could damage woodwork have been completed in installation areas. If woodwork must be stored in other than installation

areas, store only in areas where environmental conditions comply with requirements specified in "Project Conditions" Article.

- B. Deliver Plastic Fabrications, systems and specified items in manufacturer's standard protective packaging.
- C. Do not deliver Plastic Fabrications, system, components and accessories to Project site until areas are ready for installation.
- D. Store materials in a flat orientation in a dry place that is not exposed to exterior elements.
- E. Store products in manufacturer's unopened packaging until ready for installation.
- F. Stack panels using protective dividers to avoid damage to decorative surface.
- G. For horizontal storage, store sheets on pallets of equal or greater size as the sheets with a protective layer between the pallet and sheet and on top of the uppermost sheet. Do not store sheets, or fabricated panels vertically.
- H. Handle materials to prevent damage to finished surfaces. Provide protective coverings to prevent damage or staining following installation for duration of project.
- I. Before installing Plastic Fabrications, permit them to reach room temperature.

1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install woodwork until building is enclosed, wet work is complete, and HVAC system is operating and maintaining temperature and relative humidity at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.
- B. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install woodwork until building is enclosed, wet work is complete, and HVAC system is operating and maintaining temperature between 60 and 90 deg F (16 and 32 deg C) and relative humidity between 25 and 55 percent during the remainder of the construction period.
- C. Field Measurements: Where woodwork is indicated to fit to other construction, verify dimensions of other construction by field measurements before fabrication, and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delaying the Work.
 - 1. Locate concealed framing, blocking, and reinforcements that support woodwork by field measurements before being enclosed, and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.
 - 2. Established Dimensions: Where field measurements cannot be made without delaying the Work, establish dimensions and proceed with fabricating woodwork without field measurements. Provide allowance for trimming at site, and coordinate construction to ensure that actual dimensions correspond to established dimensions.

1.9 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of framing, blocking, furring, reinforcements, and other related units of Work specified in other Sections to ensure that interior architectural woodwork can be supported and installed as indicated.

- B. Hardware Coordination: Distribute copies of approved hardware schedule specified in Division 08 Section "Door Hardware (Scheduled by Describing Products)" to fabricator of architectural woodwork; coordinate Shop Drawings and fabrication with hardware requirements.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide materials that comply with requirements of AWI's quality standard for each type of woodwork and quality grade specified, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Certified Wood: Interior architectural woodwork shall be produced from wood obtained from forests certified by an FSC accredited certification body to comply with FSC STD-01-001, "FSC Principles and Criteria for Forest Stewardship."
- C. Wood Products: Comply with the following:
1. Hardboard: AHA A135.4.
 2. Medium-Density Fiberboard: ANSI A208.2, Grade MD, made with binder containing no urea formaldehyde.
 3. Particleboard: ANSI A208.1, Grade M-2, made with binder containing no urea formaldehyde.
 4. Particleboard: Straw-based particleboard complying with requirements in ANSI A208.1, Grade M-2, except for density.
 5. Veneer-Faced Panel Products (Hardwood Plywood): HPVA HP-1, made with adhesive containing no urea formaldehyde.
- D. High-Pressure Decorative Laminate: NEMA LD 3, grades as indicated or, if not indicated, as required by woodwork quality standard.
1. Manufacturer: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide high-pressure decorative laminates by one of the following:
 - a. Formica Corporation.
 - b. Lamin-Art, Inc.
 - c. Pionite
 - d. Wilsonart International
- E. Solid-Surfacing Material: Homogeneous solid sheets of filled plastic resin complying with ISSFA-2.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Du Pont, Corian, Grades A, B, or C.
 - b. LG Chemical, Ltd., Classics
 - c. Samsung; Cheil Industries Inc.
 - d. Wilsonart International; Div. of Premark International, Inc.
 2. Edge: Eased edge
 3. Colors and Patterns: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full line of colors. Up to 4 colors may be used.
- F. Shelf Standards and Shelf Brackets

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Rakks
 - b. Marlite (Basis of Design)
 - c. Udizine
 2. Colors and Patterns: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
- G. Thermoplastic Panels:
1. Source Limitations: Obtain acrylic panel, including digital image produced on panel, and fasteners, from single source from single manufacturer. Provide secondary materials, including patching and fill material, joint sealant, and repair materials, of type and from source recommended by manufacturer of primary materials.
 2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Koroseal, Inc.(Basis of Design)
 - b. Knoll
 - c. Lumicor, Inc:

2.2 CABINET HARDWARE AND ACCESSORIES

- A. General: Provide cabinet hardware and accessory materials associated with architectural cabinets, except for items specified in Division 08 Section "Door Hardware (Scheduled by Describing Products)."
- B. Frameless Concealed Hinges (European Type): BHMA A156.9, B01602, 170 degrees of opening.
- C. Back-Mounted Pulls: BHMA A156.9, B02011.
 1. Basis of Design: Hafele 124.02.920 Drawer Pulls
- D. Door and Drawer Pulls: Back mounted, solid.
 1. Basis of Design: Hafele 115.20.002 Door Pulls
- E. Adjustable Shelf Standards and Supports: BHMA A156.9, B04102; with shelf brackets, B04112.
- F. Shelf Rests: BHMA A156.9, B04013; metal, two-pin type with shelf hold-down clip.
- G. Drawer Slides: BHMA A156.9, B05091.
 1. Heavy Duty (Grade 1HD-100 and Grade 1HD-200): Side mounted; full-extension type; zinc-plated steel ball-bearing slides.
 2. Box Drawer Slides: Grade 1HD-100; for drawers not more than 6 inches (150 mm) high and 24 inches (600 mm) wide.
 3. File Drawer Slides: Grade 1HD-100; for drawers more than 6 inches (150 mm) high or 24 inches (600 mm) wide.

4. Pencil Drawer Slides: Grade 2; for drawers not more than 3 inches (75 mm) high and 24 inches (600 mm) wide.
- H. Grommets for Cable Passage through Countertops: molded-plastic grommets and matching plastic caps with slot for wire passage.
 1. Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide "RG series" by Doug Mockett & Company, Inc.
 2. Color selected by Architect from Manufacturer's full range.
- I. Exposed Hardware Finishes: For exposed hardware, provide finish that complies with BHMA A156.18 for BHMA finish number indicated.
 1. Satin Stainless Steel: BHMA 630.
- J. For concealed hardware, provide manufacturer's standard finish that complies with product class requirements in BHMA A156.9.

2.3 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Furring, Blocking, Shims, and Hanging Strips: Softwood or hardwood lumber, kiln dried to less than 15 percent moisture content.
- B. Anchors: Select material, type, size, and finish required for each substrate for secure anchorage. Provide nonferrous-metal or hot-dip galvanized anchors and inserts on inside face of exterior walls and elsewhere as required for corrosion resistance. Provide toothed-steel or lead expansion sleeves for drilled-in-place anchors.
- C. Adhesives, General: Adhesives shall not contain urea formaldehyde.
- D. VOC Limits for Installation Adhesives: Installation adhesives shall comply with the following limits for VOC content when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24):
 1. Wood Glues: 30 g/L.
 2. Multipurpose Construction Adhesives: 70 g/L.
 3. Contact Adhesive: 250 g/L.
- E. Adhesive for Bonding Plastic Laminate: Unpigmented contact cement.
 1. Adhesive for Bonding Edges: Hot-melt adhesive.
- F. Materials for Acrylic / Resin Panel
 1. Cleaner: Type recommended by manufacturer.
 2. Fasteners: Use screws designed specifically for plastics. Self-threading screws are acceptable for permanent installations. Provide threaded metal inserts for applications requiring frequent disassembly such as light fixtures.
 3. Drilled Panel Wall Anchors: As provided by the manufacturer. Provide extensions to accommodate thicknesses scheduled or illustrated.

2.4 FABRICATION, GENERAL

- A. Wood Moisture Content: Comply with requirements of referenced quality standard for wood moisture content in relation to ambient relative humidity during fabrication and in installation areas.
- B. Complete fabrication, including assembly and hardware application, to maximum extent possible before shipment to Project site. Disassemble components only as necessary for shipment and installation. Where necessary for fitting at site, provide ample allowance for scribing, trimming, and fitting.
 - 1. Notify Architect seven days in advance of the dates and times woodwork fabrication will be complete.
 - 2. Trial fit assemblies at fabrication shop that cannot be shipped completely assembled. Install dowels, screws, bolted connectors, and other fastening devices that can be removed after trial fitting. Verify that various parts fit as intended and check measurements of assemblies against field measurements indicated on Shop Drawings before disassembling for shipment.
- C. Shop-cut openings to maximum extent possible to receive hardware, appliances, plumbing fixtures, electrical work, and similar items. Locate openings accurately and use templates or roughing-in diagrams to produce accurately sized and shaped openings. Sand edges of cutouts to remove splinters and burrs.
 - 1. Seal edges of openings in countertops with a coat of varnish.

2.5 PLASTIC-LAMINATE CABINETS

- A. AWI Type of Cabinet Construction: Flush overlay or As indicated.
- B. Laminate Cladding for Exposed Surfaces: High-pressure decorative laminate complying with the following requirements:
 - 1. Horizontal Surfaces Other Than Tops: Grade HGS.
 - 2. Postformed Surfaces: Grade HGP.
 - 3. Vertical Surfaces: Grade VGS.
 - 4. Edges: PVC edge banding, 0.12 inch (3 mm) thick, matching laminate in color, pattern, and finish].
- C. Materials for Semi exposed Surfaces:
 - 1. Surfaces Other Than Drawer Bodies: High-pressure decorative laminate, Grade VGS.
 - a. Edges of Plastic-Laminate Shelves: PVC tape, 0.018-inch (0.460-mm) minimum thickness, matching laminate in color, pattern, and finish.
 - b. For semi exposed backs of panels with exposed plastic-laminate surfaces, provide surface of high-pressure decorative laminate, Grade VGS.
 - 2. Drawer Sides and Backs: Solid-hardwood lumber.
 - 3. Drawer Bottoms: Hardwood plywood.
- D. Concealed Backs of Panels with Exposed Plastic Laminate Surfaces: High-pressure decorative laminate, Grade BKL.

- E. Colors, Patterns, and Finishes: Provide materials and products that result in colors and textures of exposed laminate surfaces complying with the following requirements:
 - 1. As selected by Architect from laminate manufacturer's full range in the following categories:
 - a. Solid colors, matte finish.
 - b. Wood grains, matte finish.
 - c. Patterns, matte finish.
- F. Provide dust panels of 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) plywood or tempered hardboard above compartments and drawers, unless located directly under tops.

2.6 SHOP FINISHING

- A. Preparation for Finishing: Comply with referenced quality standard for sanding, filling countersunk fasteners, sealing concealed surfaces, and similar preparation for finishing architectural woodwork, as applicable to each unit of work.
 - 1. Back priming: Apply one coat of sealer or primer, compatible with finish coats, to concealed surfaces of woodwork. Apply two coats to back of paneling and to end-grain surfaces. Concealed surfaces of plastic-laminate, backing paper, or thermoset decorative panels.

2.7 SOLID-SURFACING-MATERIAL COUNTERTOPS

- A. Solid-Surfacing-Material Millwork Countertop Thickness: 1/2 inch (13 mm). Knife Edge.
- B. Solid-Surfacing-Material Window Sill Thickness: 1/4 inch (7 mm). Square Edge.
- C. Solid-Surfacing-Material Restroom Countertop Thickness: 1/2 inch (13 mm). Rounded Edge.
- D. Colors, Patterns, and Finishes: Provide materials and products that result in colors of solid-surfacing material complying with the following requirements:
 - 1. As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
- E. Fabricate tops in one piece, unless otherwise indicated. Comply with solid-surfacing-material manufacturer's written recommendations for adhesives, sealers, fabrication, and finishing.
 - 1. Fabricate tops with shop-applied edges of materials and configuration indicated.
 - 2. Fabricate tops with loose backsplashes for field application.
- F. Drill holes in countertops for plumbing fittings and grommets in shop.
- G. Install under-mounted sink bowls in countertops in field, coordinate with plumbing requirements.
- H. Support Brackets: At lavatory counter locations, provide support brackets between each sink.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Before installation, condition woodwork to average prevailing humidity conditions in installation areas.
- B. Before installing architectural woodwork, examine shop-fabricated work for completion and complete work as required, including removal of packing and backpriming.
- C. Before installing architectural woodwork for display cases, verify that internal framing and blocking is provided to adequately support weight of glass doors and to anchor top and bottom pivots.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Grade: Install woodwork to comply with requirements for the same grade specified in Part 2 for fabrication of type of woodwork involved.
- B. Assemble woodwork and complete fabrication at Project site to comply with requirements for fabrication in Part 2, to extent that it was not completed in the shop.
- C. Install woodwork level, plumb, true, and straight. Shim as required with concealed shims. Install level and plumb (including tops) to a tolerance of 1/8 inch in 96 inches (3 mm in 2400 mm).
- D. Scribe and cut woodwork to fit adjoining work, refinish cut surfaces, and repair damaged finish at cuts.
- E. Anchor woodwork to anchors or blocking built in or directly attached to substrates. Secure with countersunk, concealed fasteners and blind nailing as required for complete installation. Use fine finishing nails or finishing screws for exposed fastening, countersunk and filled flush with woodwork and matching final finish if transparent finish is indicated.
- F. Cabinets: Install without distortion so doors and drawers fit openings properly and are accurately aligned. Adjust hardware to center doors and drawers in openings and to provide unencumbered operation. Complete installation of hardware and accessory items as indicated.
 - 1. Install cabinets with no more than 1/8 inch in 96-inch (3 mm in 2400-mm) sag, bow, or other variation from a straight line.
 - 2. Fasten wall cabinets through back, near top and bottom, at ends and not more than 16 inches (400 mm) o.c. with No. 10 wafer-head screws sized for 1-inch (25-mm) penetration into wood framing, blocking, or hanging strips No. 10 wafer-head sheet metal screws through metal backing or metal framing behind wall finish.
 - 3. Provide 1/2" metal reveals, vertically and horizontally, at locations indicated on drawings.
 - 4. Touch up finishing work specified in this Section after installation of woodwork. Fill nail holes with matching filler where exposed.
- G. Countertops & Sills: Anchor securely by screwing through corner blocks of base cabinets or other supports into underside of countertop.
 - 1. Align adjacent solid-surfacing-material countertops and form seams to comply with manufacturer's written recommendations using adhesive in color to match countertop. Carefully dress joints smooth, remove surface scratches, and clean entire surface.
 - 2. Install countertops with no more than 1/8 inch in 96-inch (3 mm in 2400-mm) sag, bow, or other variation from a straight line.

April 2015

A-012651
State of Kansas - Energy & Service Center

3. Secure backsplashes (where located) to tops with concealed metal brackets at 16 inches (400 mm) o.c. and to walls with adhesive.
4. Calk space between backsplash and wall with sealant specified in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants."

3.3 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Adjust final panel installation so that all joints are true and even throughout the installation. Panels out of plane shall be adjusted with the surrounding panels to minimize any imperfection.
- B. Repair damaged and defective woodwork, where possible, to eliminate functional and visual defects; where not possible to repair, replace woodwork. Adjust joinery for uniform appearance.
- C. Clean, lubricate, and adjust hardware.
- D. Clean woodwork on exposed and semi exposed surfaces. Touch up shop-applied finishes to restore damaged or soiled areas.
- E. Clean all glass doors and shelves. Protect during and after installation against stains and damage during construction.

END OF SECTION 06 4023

06 4023 - 10
INTERIOR ARCHITECTURAL WOODWORK

SECTION 07 1113 - BITUMINOUS DAMPPROOFING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Cold-applied, emulsified-asphalt damp-proofing.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for bituminous vapor retarders.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1.4 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Weather Limitations: Proceed with application only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit damp-proofing to be performed according to manufacturers' written instructions.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS, GENERAL

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain primary damp-proofing materials and primers from single source from single manufacturer. Provide protection course and auxiliary materials recommended in writing by manufacturer of primary materials.
- B. VOC Content: Products shall comply with VOC content limits of authorities having jurisdiction unless otherwise required.

2.2 COLD-APPLIED, EMULSIFIED-ASPHALT DAMPPROOFING

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1. BASF Construction Chemicals - Building Systems; Sonneborn Brand Products.

07 1113-1
BITUMINOUS DAMPPROOFING

2. Euclid Chemical Company (The); an RPM company
3. Gardner-Gibson, Inc.
4. Henry Company.
5. Koppers Inc.
6. Malarkey Roofing Products.
7. Meadows, W. R., Inc.
8. Sonneborn, Div. of ChemRex, Inc.
9. Tamms Industries.

B. Brush and Spray Coats: ASTM D 1227, Type III, Class 1.

C. VOC Content: 30 g/L or less.

2.3 AUXILIARY MATERIALS

- A. General: Furnish auxiliary materials recommended in writing by damp-proofing manufacturer for intended use and compatible with bituminous damp-proofing.
- B. Emulsified-Asphalt Primer: ASTM D 1227, Type III, Class 1, except diluted with water as recommended in writing by manufacturer.
- C. Patching Compound: Epoxy or latex-modified repair mortar of type recommended in writing by dampproofing manufacturer.
- D. Protection Course: Smooth-surfaced roll roofing complying with ASTM D 6380, Class S, Type III.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions with Applicator present, for compliance with requirements for surface smoothness, surface moisture, and other conditions affecting performance of bituminous damp-proofing work.
- B. Proceed with application only after substrate construction and penetrating work have been completed and unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Mask or otherwise protect adjoining exposed surfaces from being stained, spotted, or coated with damp-proofing. Prevent damp-proofing materials from entering and clogging weep holes and drains.
- B. Clean substrates of projections and substances detrimental to the damp-proofing work; fill voids, seal joints, and remove bond breakers if any, as recommended in writing by prime material manufacturer.

3.3 APPLICATION, GENERAL

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for damp-proofing application, cure time between coats, and drying time before backfilling unless more stringent requirements are indicated.
 - 1. Apply damp-proofing to provide continuous plane of protection.
 - 2. Apply additional coats if recommended in writing by manufacturer or to achieve a smooth surface and uninterrupted coverage.
- B. Where damp-proofing footings and foundation walls, apply from finished-grade line to top of footing; extend over top of footing and down a minimum of 6 inches (150 mm) over outside face of footing.
 - 1. Extend damp-proofing 12 inches (300 mm) onto intersecting walls and footings, but do not extend onto surfaces exposed to view when Project is completed.
- C. Where damp-proofing exterior face of inner wythe of exterior masonry cavity walls, lap damp-proofing at least 1/4 inch (6 mm) onto flashing, masonry reinforcement, veneer ties, and other items that penetrate inner wythe.
 - 1. Extend damp-proofing over outer face of structural members and concrete slabs that interrupt inner wythe.
 - 2. Lap damp-proofing at least 1/4 inch (6 mm) onto shelf angles supporting veneer.
- D. Where damp-proofing interior face of above-grade, exterior concrete walls, continue damp-proofing through intersecting walls by keeping vertical mortar joints at intersection temporarily open or by damp-proofing wall before constructing intersecting walls.

3.4 COLD-APPLIED, EMULSIFIED-ASPHALT DAMPPROOFING

- A. Concrete Foundations: Apply two brush or spray coats at not less than 1.5 gal./100 sq. ft. (0.6 L/sq. m) for first coat and 1 gal./100 sq. ft. (0.4 L/sq. m) for second coat.

3.5 INSTALLATION OF PROTECTION COURSE

- A. Where indicated, install protection course over completed-and-cured damp-proofing. Comply with damp-proofing-material and protection-course manufacturers' written instructions for attaching protection course.

3.6 CLEANING

- A. Clean spillage and soiling from adjacent construction using cleaning agents and procedures recommended in writing by manufacturer of affected construction.

END OF SECTION 07 1113

SECTION 071326 - SELF-ADHERING SHEET WATERPROOFING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
 - 1. Modified bituminous sheet waterproofing, fabric reinforced.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
 - 1. Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" for joint-sealant materials and installation.
 - 2. Division 07 Section "Thermal Insulation" for subgrade wall insulation.
 - 3. Division 33 Section "Subdrainage" for wall drainage mats.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Include manufacturer's written instructions for evaluating, preparing, and treating substrate, technical data, and tested physical and performance properties of waterproofing.
- B. Samples: For the following products:
 - 1. 12-by-12-inch square of waterproofing and flashing sheet.
- C. Installer Certificates: Signed by manufacturers certifying that installers comply with requirements.
- D. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- E. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency, for waterproofing.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: A firm that is approved or licensed by waterproofing manufacturer for installation of waterproofing required for this Project.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain waterproofing materials through one source from a single manufacturer.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver liquid materials to Project site in original packages with seals unbroken, labeled with manufacturer's name, product brand name and type, date of manufacture, and directions for storing and mixing with other components.
- B. Store liquid materials in their original undamaged packages in a clean, dry, protected location and within temperature range required by waterproofing manufacturer.

07 1326-1
SELF-ADHERING SHEET WATERPROOFING

- C. Remove and replace liquid materials that cannot be applied within their stated shelf life.
- D. Store rolls according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- E. Protect stored materials from direct sunlight.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Apply waterproofing within the range of ambient and substrate temperatures recommended by waterproofing manufacturer. Do not apply waterproofing to a damp or wet substrate.
 - 1. Do not apply waterproofing in snow, rain, fog, or mist.
- B. Maintain adequate ventilation during preparation and application of waterproofing materials.

1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Special Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to replace waterproofing material that does not comply with requirements or that fails to remain watertight within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Warranty does not include failure of waterproofing due to failure of substrate prepared and treated according to requirements or formation of new joints and cracks in substrate exceeding 1/16 inch in width.
 - 2. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Special Installer's Warranty: Written Waterproofing Installer's warranty signed by Installer, covering Work of this Section, for warranty period of two years.
 - 1. Warranty includes removing and reinstalling protection board, drainage panels, and insulation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 RUBBERIZED-ASPHALT SHEET WATERPROOFING (for subgrade foundation walls)

- A. Rubberized-Asphalt Sheet: 60-mil- (1.5-mm-) thick, self-adhering sheet consisting of 56 mils (1.4 mm) of rubberized asphalt laminated to a 4-mil- (0.10-mm-) thick, polyethylene film with release liner on adhesive side, and formulated for application with primer or surface conditioner that complies with VOC limits of authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 1. Physical Properties: As follows, measured per standard test methods referenced:
 - a. Tensile Strength: 325 psi minimum; ASTM D 412, Die C, modified.
 - b. Ultimate Elongation: 300 percent minimum; ASTM D 412, Die C, modified.
 - c. Low-Temperature Flexibility: Pass at minus 20 deg F (minus 29 deg C); ASTM D 1970.
 - d. Crack Cycling: Unaffected after 100 cycles of 1/8-inch (3-mm) movement; ASTM C 836.
 - e. Puncture Resistance: 50 lbf minimum; ASTM E 154.
 - f. Hydrostatic-Head Resistance: 200 feet minimum; ASTM D 5385.
 - g. Water Absorption: 0.1 percent weight-gain maximum after 48-hour immersion at 70 deg F (21 deg C); ASTM D 570.
 - h. Vapor Permeance: 0.05 perms (2.9 ng/Pa x s x sq. m); ASTM E 96, Water Method.
 - 2. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following; or approved equal:
 - a. Grace Construction Products; Bituthene 3000

2.2 AUXILIARY MATERIALS

- A. General: Furnish auxiliary materials recommended by waterproofing manufacturer for intended use and compatible with sheet waterproofing.
 - 1. Furnish liquid-type auxiliary materials that comply with VOC limits of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Primer: Liquid waterborne primer recommended for substrate by manufacturer of sheet waterproofing material.
- C. Surface Conditioner: Liquid, waterborne surface conditioner recommended for substrate by manufacturer of sheet waterproofing material.
- D. Liquid Membrane: Elastomeric, two-component liquid, cold fluid applied, trowel grade or low viscosity.
- E. Substrate Patching Membrane: Low-viscosity, two-component, asphalt-modified coating.
- F. Sheet Strips: Self-adhering, rubberized-asphalt sheet strips of same material and thickness as sheet waterproofing.
- G. Mastic, Adhesives, and Tape: Liquid mastic and adhesives, and adhesive tapes recommended by waterproofing manufacturer.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting performance.
 - 1. Verify that concrete has cured and aged for minimum time period recommended by waterproofing manufacturer.
 - 2. Verify that concrete is visibly dry and free of moisture. Test for capillary moisture by plastic sheet method according to ASTM D 4263.
 - 3. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 SURFACE PREPARATION

- A. Clean, prepare, and treat substrates according to manufacturer's written instructions. Provide clean, dust-free, and dry substrates for waterproofing application.
- B. Mask off adjoining surfaces not receiving waterproofing to prevent spillage and overspray affecting other construction.
- C. Remove grease, oil, bitumen, form-release agents, paints, curing compounds, and other penetrating contaminants or film-forming coatings from concrete.
- D. Remove fins, ridges, mortar, and other projections and fill honeycomb, aggregate pockets, holes, and other voids.

3.3 RUBBERIZED-ASPHALT SHEET APPLICATION

- A. Install self-adhering sheets according to waterproofing manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations in ASTM D 6135.
- B. Apply primer to substrates at required rate and allow to dry. Limit priming to areas that will be covered by sheet waterproofing in same day. Reprime areas exposed for more than 24 hours.
- C. Apply and firmly adhere sheets over area to receive waterproofing. Accurately align sheets and maintain uniform 2-1/2-inch- (64-mm-) minimum lap widths and end laps. Overlap and seal seams and stagger end laps to ensure watertight installation.
 - 1. When ambient and substrate temperatures range between 25 and 40 deg F (minus 4 and plus 5 deg C), install self-adhering, rubberized-asphalt sheets produced for low-temperature application. Do not use low-temperature sheets if ambient or substrate temperature is higher than 60 deg F (16 deg C).
- D. Horizontal Application: Apply sheets from low point to high point of decks to ensure that side laps shed water.
- E. Apply continuous sheets over sheet strips bridging substrate cracks, construction, and contraction joints.
- F. Seal exposed edges of sheets at terminations not concealed by metal counterflashings or ending in reglets with mastic or sealant.
- G. Install sheet waterproofing and auxiliary materials to tie into adjacent waterproofing.
- H. Repair tears, voids, and lapped seams in waterproofing not complying with requirements. Slit and flatten fishmouths and blisters. Patch with sheets extending 6 inches (150 mm) beyond repaired areas in all directions.
- I. Correct deficiencies in or remove sheet waterproofing that does not comply with requirements, repair substrates, reapply waterproofing, and repair sheet flashings.

3.4 INSULATION INSTALLATION

- A. Install insulation drainage panels over waterproofed surfaces. Cut and fit to within 3/4 inch of projections and penetrations.
- B. On vertical surfaces, set insulation units in adhesive or tape applied according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. On horizontal surfaces, loosely lay insulation units according to manufacturer's written instructions. Stagger end joints and tightly abut insulation units.

3.5 PROTECTION AND CLEANING

- A. Do not permit foot or vehicular traffic on unprotected membrane.
- B. Protect waterproofing from damage and wear during remainder of construction period.
- C. Protect installed insulation drainage panels from damage due to UV light, harmful weather exposures, physical abuse, and other causes. Provide temporary coverings where insulation will be subject to abuse and cannot be concealed and protected by permanent construction immediately after installation.

April 2015

A-012651
State of Kansas - Energy & Service Center

- D. Clean spillage and soiling from adjacent construction using cleaning agents and procedures recommended by manufacturer of affected construction.

END OF SECTION 071326

07 1326-5
SELF-ADHERING SHEET WATERPROOFING

SECTION 07 2100 - THERMAL INSULATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Perimeter foundation wall insulation (supporting backfill).
 - 2. Cavity-wall insulation.
 - 3. Concealed building insulation.
 - 4. Safing insulation
- B. Related Sections: Division 07 Section(s) "Polyvinyl-Chloride (PVC) Roofing" for insulation specified as part of roofing construction.
 - 1. Division 09 Section(s) for installation in wood and metal-framed assemblies of insulation specified by referencing this Section.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Mineral-Fiber Insulation: Insulation composed of rock-wool fibers, slag-wool fibers, or glass fibers; produced in boards and blanket with latter formed into batts (flat-cut lengths) or rolls.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency, for each product.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of building insulation through one source from a single manufacturer.
- B. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Provide insulation and related materials with the fire-test-response characteristics indicated, as determined by testing identical products per test method indicated below by UL or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having

07 2100 - 1
THERMAL INSULATION

jurisdiction. Identify materials with appropriate markings of applicable testing and inspecting agency.

1. Surface-Burning Characteristics: ASTM E 84.
2. Fire-Resistance Ratings: ASTM E 119.
3. Combustion Characteristics: ASTM E 136.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect insulation materials from physical damage and from deterioration due to moisture, soiling, and other sources. Store inside and in a dry location. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for handling, storing, and protecting during installation.
- B. Protect foam-plastic board insulation as follows:
 1. Do not expose to sunlight except to necessary extent for period of installation and concealment.
 2. Protect against ignition at all times. Do not deliver foam-plastic board materials to Project site before installation time.
 3. Quickly complete installation and concealment of foam-plastic board insulation in each area of construction.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 FOAM-PLASTIC BOARD INSULATION

- A. Extruded-Polystyrene Board Insulation: ASTM C 578, of type and minimum compressive strength indicated below, with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 75 and 450, respectively, per ASTM E 84.
 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. DiversiFoam Products.
 - b. Dow Chemical Company (The).
 - c. Owens Corning.
 - d. Tenneco Building Products.
 2. Exterior Foundation Walls and Heated Interior Slab Edges: Type IV, 25 psi (173 kPa).
- B. Foil-Faced, Polyisocyanurate Board Insulation: ASTM C 1289, Type I, Class 1, with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 75 and 450, respectively, per ASTM E 84.
 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, [provide products by one of the following] [available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following]:
 - a. Atlas Roofing Corporation.
 - b. Dow Chemical Company (The).
 - c. Rmax, Inc.
 - d. Celotex Corporation.
 - e. GAF Materials Corporation.

2. Cavity Walls.
 3. Exterior Framed Walls.
- C. Adhesive for Bonding Insulation: Product with demonstrated capability to bond insulation securely to substrates without damaging insulation and substrates.

2.2 GLASS-FIBER BLANKET INSULATION

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. CertainTeed Corporation.
 2. Guardian Building Products, Inc.
 3. Johns Manville.
 4. Owens Corning.
 5. Knauf Fiber Glass.
 6. John Manville Corporation.
- B. Unfaced, Glass-Fiber Blanket Insulation: ASTM C 665, Type I; with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 25 and 50, respectively, per ASTM E 84; passing ASTM E 136 for combustion characteristics.
- C. Sustainability Requirements: Provide glass-fiber blanket insulation as follows:
1. Free of Formaldehyde: Insulation manufactured with 100 percent acrylic binders and no formaldehyde.
 2. Low Emitting: Insulation tested according to ASTM D 5116 and shown to emit less than 0.05-ppm formaldehyde.

2.3 SAFING INSULATION

- A. Conform to ASTM C612, Class 1 and 2, (melt point of over 2,000 o F.).
- B. Manufacturers:
1. Provide USG "Thermafiber Safing Insulation", or equal, thickness as required.

2.4 INSULATION FASTENERS

- A. Adhesively Attached, Spindle-Type Anchors: Plate welded to projecting spindle; capable of holding insulation of specified thickness securely in position indicated with self-locking washer in place.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. AGM Industries, Inc.; Series T TACTOO Insul-Hangers.
 - b. Gemco; Spindle Type.
 2. Plate: Perforated, galvanized carbon-steel sheet, 0.030 inch (0.762 mm) thick by 2 inches (50 mm) square.

3. Spindle: Copper-coated, low-carbon steel; fully annealed; 0.105 inch (2.67 mm) in diameter; length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
- B. Anchor Adhesive: Product with demonstrated capability to bond insulation anchors securely to substrates indicated without damaging insulation, fasteners, and substrates.
 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. AGM Industries, Inc.; TACTOO Adhesive.
 - b. Gemco; Tuff Bond Hanger Adhesive.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Comply with insulation manufacturer's written instructions applicable to products and applications indicated.
- B. Install insulation that is undamaged, dry, and unsoiled and that has not been left exposed to ice, rain, or snow at any time.
- C. Extend insulation to envelop entire area to be insulated. Cut and fit tightly around obstructions and fill voids with insulation. Remove projections that interfere with placement.
- D. Provide sizes to fit applications indicated and selected from manufacturer's standard thicknesses, widths, and lengths. Apply single layer of insulation units to produce thickness indicated unless multiple layers are otherwise shown or required to make up total thickness.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF BELOW-GRADE INSULATION

- A. On vertical footing and foundation wall surfaces, set insulation units using manufacturer's recommended adhesive according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 1. If not otherwise indicated, extend insulation a minimum of 36 inches (915 mm) below exterior grade line.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF CAVITY-WALL INSULATION

- A. Foam-Plastic Board Insulation: Install pads of adhesive spaced approximately 24 inches (610 mm) o.c. both ways on inside face, and as recommended by manufacturer. Fit courses of insulation between wall ties and other obstructions, with edges butted tightly in both directions. Press units firmly against inside substrates.
 1. Supplement adhesive attachment of insulation by securing boards with two-piece wall ties designed for this purpose and specified in Division 04 Section "Unit Masonry."
- B. Coordinate installation of cavity wall insulation with Division 07 section titled "Metal Wall and Soffit Panels".
 1. Coordinate installation of cavity wall insulation with Division 7 Section "Metal Wall Panels".

3.4 INSTALLATION OF INSULATION FOR FRAMED CONSTRUCTION

- A. Apply insulation units to substrates by method indicated, complying with manufacturer's written instructions. If no specific method is indicated, bond units to substrate with adhesive or use mechanical anchorage to provide permanent placement and support of units.
- B. Foam-Plastic Board Insulation: Seal joints between units by applying adhesive, mastic, or sealant to edges of each unit to form a tight seal as units are shoved into place. Fill voids in completed installation with adhesive, mastic, or sealant as recommended by insulation manufacturer.
 - 1. Coordinate installation of cavity wall insulation with Division 7 Section "Metal Wall Panels".
- C. Glass-Fiber or Mineral-Wool Blanket Insulation: Install in cavities formed by framing members according to the following requirements:
 - 1. Use insulation widths and lengths that fill the cavities formed by framing members. If more than one length is required to fill the cavities, provide lengths that will produce a snug fit between ends.
 - 2. Place insulation in cavities formed by framing members to produce a friction fit between edges of insulation and adjoining framing members.
 - 3. Maintain 3-inch (76-mm) clearance of insulation around recessed lighting fixtures not rated for or protected from contact with insulation.
 - 4. For metal-framed wall cavities where cavity heights exceed 96 inches (2438 mm), support unfaced blankets mechanically and support faced blankets by taping flanges of insulation to flanges of metal studs.

3.5 PROTECTION

- A. Protect installed insulation from damage due to harmful weather exposures, physical abuse, and other causes. Provide temporary coverings or enclosures where insulation is subject to abuse and cannot be concealed and protected by permanent construction immediately after installation.

END OF SECTION 07 2100

SECTION 07 2726 - FLUID-APPLIED MEMBRANE AIR BARRIERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
 - 1. Fluid-applied membrane air barrier, vapor retarding.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
 - 1. Division 04 Section "Unit Masonry" for embedded flashings.
 - 2. Division 06 Section "Sheathing" for wall sheathings, wall sheathing joint-and-penetration treatments, building paper, and building wraps.
 - 3. Division 07 Section "Thermal Insulation" for foam-plastic board insulation.
 - 4. Division 07 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim" for sheet metal flashings.
 - 5. Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" for joint-sealant materials and installation.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Air Barrier Assembly: The collection of air barrier materials and auxiliary materials applied to an opaque wall, including joints and junctions to abutting construction, to control air movement through the wall.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General: Air barrier shall be capable of performing as a continuous vapor-retarding air barrier and as a liquid-water drainage plane flashed to discharge to the exterior incidental condensation or water penetration. Air barrier assemblies shall be capable of accommodating substrate movement and of sealing substrate expansion and control joints, construction material changes, and transitions at perimeter conditions without deterioration and air leakage exceeding specified limits.
- B. Air-Barrier Assembly Air Leakage at office areas: Maximum 0.25 cfm/sq. ft. of surface area at a pressure differential of 0.3 in. wag (75 Pa), as tested in accordance with ASTM E-779, Standard Test Method for Determining Air Leakage Rate by Fan Pressurization..
- C. Air-Barrier Assembly Air Leakage at work bay and warehouse areas: Maximum 0.75 cfm/sq. ft. of surface area at a pressure differential of 0.3 in. wag (75 Pa), as tested in accordance with ASTM E-779, Standard Test Method for Determining Air Leakage Rate by Fan Pressurization..

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

07 2726 - 1
FLUID-APPLIED MEMBRANE AIR BARRIERS

- A. Product Data: Include manufacturer's written instructions for evaluating, preparing, and treating substrate; technical data; and tested physical and performance properties of air barrier.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show locations and extent of air barrier. Include details for substrate joints and cracks, counterflashing strip, penetrations, inside and outside corners, terminations, and tie-ins with adjoining construction.
 - 1. Include details of interfaces with other materials that form part of air barrier.
 - 2. Include details of mockups.
- C. Product Certificates: For air barriers, certifying compatibility of air barrier and accessory materials with Project materials that connect to or that come in contact with the barrier; signed by product manufacturer.
- D. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency, for air barriers.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Mockups: Before beginning installation of air barrier, build mockups of exterior wall assembly, incorporating backup wall construction, external cladding, window, door frame and sill, insulation, and flashing to demonstrate surface preparation, crack and joint treatment, and sealing of gaps, terminations, and penetrations of air barrier membrane.
 - 1. Coordinate construction of mockup to permit inspection by Contractor's testing agency of air barrier before external insulation and cladding is installed.
 - 2. If Architect determines mockups do not comply with requirements, reconstruct mockups and apply air barrier until mockups are approved.
 - 3. Approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.
- B. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
 - 1. Include installers of other construction connecting to air barrier, including roofing, waterproofing, architectural precast concrete, masonry, sealants, windows, glazed curtain walls, and door frames.
 - 2. Review air barrier requirements including surface preparation, substrate condition and pretreatment, minimum substrate curing period, forecasted weather conditions, special details and sheet flashings, mockups, installation procedures, sequence of installation, testing and inspecting procedures, and protection and repairs.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store liquid materials in their original undamaged packages in a clean, dry, protected location and within temperature range required by air barrier manufacturer.
- B. Remove and replace liquid materials that cannot be applied within their stated shelf life.
- C. Store rolls according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- D. Protect stored materials from direct sunlight.

1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Apply air barrier within the range of ambient and substrate temperatures recommended by air barrier manufacturer. Protect substrates from environmental conditions that affect performance of air barrier. Do not apply air barrier to a damp or wet substrate or during snow, rain, fog, or mist.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 FLUID-APPLIED MEMBRANE AIR BARRIER

- A. Fluid-Applied, Vapor-Retarding Membrane Air Barrier: synthetic polymer membrane.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Synthetic Polymer Membrane:
 - 1) Grace, W. R. & Co.; Perm-A-Barrier Liquid.
 - 2) Henry Company; Air-Bloc 32.
 - 3) Rubber Polymer Corporation; Rub-R-Wall Airtight.
 2. Physical and Performance Properties:
 - a. Membrane Air Permeance: Not to exceed 0.004 cfm x sq. ft. of surface area at 1.57-lbf/sq. ft. (0.02 L/s x sq. m of surface area at 75-Pa) pressure difference; ASTM E 2178.
 - b. Membrane Vapor Permeance: Not to exceed 0.1 perm (5.8 ng/Pa x s x sq. m); ASTM E 96.

2.2 AUXILIARY MATERIALS

- A. General: Auxiliary materials recommended by air barrier manufacturer for intended use and compatible with air barrier membrane. Liquid-type auxiliary materials shall comply with VOC limits of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Primer: Liquid waterborne primer recommended for substrate by manufacturer of air barrier material.
- C. Modified Bituminous Strip: Vapor-retarding, 40-mil- (1.0-mm-) thick, smooth-surfaced, self-adhering; consisting of 36 mils (0.9 mm) of rubberized asphalt laminated to a 4-mil- (0.1-mm-) thick polyethylene film with release liner backing.
- D. Joint Reinforcing Strip: Air barrier manufacturer's glass-fiber-mesh tape.
- E. Substrate Patching Membrane: Manufacturer's standard trowel-grade substrate filler.
- F. Adhesive and Tape: Air barrier manufacturer's standard adhesive and pressure-sensitive adhesive tape.
- G. Sprayed Polyurethane Foam Sealant: 1- or 2-component, foamed-in-place, polyurethane foam sealant, 1.5 to 2.0 lb/cu. ft (24 to 32 kg/cu. m) density; Class-A rating flame spread index of 25 or less according to ASTM E 162 and NFPA 286 tested for exposed use in non-fire-resistant

rated roof/wall junctures; with primer and noncorrosive substrate cleaner recommended by foam sealant manufacturer.

- H. Modified Bituminous Transition Strip: Vapor-retarding, 40-mil- (1.0-mm-) thick, smooth-surfaced, self-adhering; consisting of 36 mils (0.9 mm) of rubberized asphalt laminated to a 4-mil- (0.1-mm-) thick polyethylene film with release liner backing.
- I. Joint Sealant: ASTM C 920, single-component, neutral-curing silicone; Class 100/50 (low-modulus), Grade NS, Use NT related to exposure, and, as applicable to joint substrates indicated, Use O. Comply with Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting performance.
 - 1. Verify that substrates are sound and free of oil, grease, dirt, excess mortar, or other contaminants.
 - 2. Verify that concrete has cured and aged for minimum time period recommended by air barrier manufacturer.
 - 3. Verify that concrete is visibly dry and free of moisture. Test for capillary moisture by plastic sheet method according to ASTM D 4263.
 - 4. Verify that masonry joints are flush and completely filled with mortar.
 - 5. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 SURFACE PREPARATION

- A. Clean, prepare, treat, and seal substrate according to manufacturer's written instructions. Provide clean, dust-free, and dry substrate for air barrier application.
- B. Mask off adjoining surfaces not covered by air barrier to prevent spillage and overspray affecting other construction.
- C. Remove grease, oil, bitumen, form-release agents, paints, curing compounds, and other penetrating contaminants or film-forming coatings from concrete.
- D. Remove fins, ridges, mortar, and other projections and fill honeycomb, aggregate pockets, holes, and other voids in concrete with substrate patching membrane.
- E. Remove excess mortar from masonry ties, shelf angles, and other obstructions.
- F. At changes in substrate plane, apply sealant or termination mastic beads at sharp corners and edges to form a smooth transition from one plane to another.

3.3 JOINT TREATMENT

- A. Concrete and Masonry: Prepare, treat, rout, and fill joints and cracks in substrate according to ASTM C 1193 and air barrier manufacturer's written instructions. Remove dust and dirt from joints and cracks complying with ASTM D 4258 before coating surfaces.

1. Prime substrate and apply a single thickness of preparation coat strip extending a minimum of 3 inches (75 mm) along each side of joints and cracks. Apply a double thickness of air barrier membrane and embed a joint reinforcing strip in preparation coat.
- B. Wall Sheathing: Fill joints greater than 1/4 inch (6 mm) with sealant according to ASTM C 1193 and with air barrier manufacturer's written instructions. Apply first layer of fluid air barrier membrane at joints. Tape joints with joint reinforcing strip after first layer is dry. Apply a second layer of fluid air barrier membrane over joint reinforcing strip.

3.4 TRANSITION STRIP INSTALLATION

- A. Install strips, transition strips, and auxiliary materials according to air barrier manufacturer's written instructions to form a seal with adjacent construction and maintain a continuous air barrier.
 1. Coordinate the installation of air barrier with installation of roofing membrane and base flashing to ensure continuity of air barrier with roofing membrane.
 2. Install modified bituminous strip on roofing membrane or base flashing so that a minimum of 3 inches (75 mm) of coverage is achieved over both substrates.
- B. Apply primer to substrates at required rate and allow to dry. Limit priming to areas that will be covered by air barrier sheet in same day. Reprime areas exposed for more than 24 hours.
 1. Prime glass-fiber-surfaced gypsum sheathing with number of prime coats needed to achieve required bond, with adequate drying time between coats.
- C. Connect and seal exterior wall air barrier membrane continuously to roofing membrane air barrier, concrete below-grade structures, floor-to floor construction, exterior glazing and window systems, glazed curtain-wall systems, storefront systems, exterior louvers, exterior door framing, and other construction used in exterior wall openings, using accessory materials as indicated.
- D. At end of each working day, seal top edge of strips and transition strips to substrate with termination mastic.
- E. Apply joint sealants forming part of air barrier assembly within manufacturer's recommended application temperature ranges. Consult manufacturer when sealant cannot be applied within these temperature ranges.
- F. Wall Openings: Prime concealed perimeter frame surfaces of windows, curtain walls, storefronts, and doors. Apply modified bituminous transition strip so that a minimum of 3 inches (75 mm) of coverage is achieved over both substrates. Maintain 3 inches (75 mm) of full contact over firm bearing to perimeter frames with not less than 1 inch (25 mm) of full contact.
 1. Modified Bituminous Transition Strip: Roll firmly to enhance adhesion.
- G. Fill gaps in perimeter frame surfaces of windows, curtain walls, storefronts, and doors, and miscellaneous penetrations of air barrier membrane with foam sealant. Fill gaps between steel roof deck and top of CMU masonry or steel framed exterior walls with foam sealant. Trim excess foam sealant where extruded beyond gap infills.
- H. Seal strips and transition strips around masonry reinforcing or ties and penetrations with termination mastic.

- I. Seal top of through-wall flashings to air barrier with an additional 6-inch- (150-mm-) wide, modified bituminous strip.
- J. Seal exposed edges of strips at seams, cuts, penetrations, and terminations not concealed by metal counterflashings or ending in reglets with termination mastic.
- K. Repair punctures, voids, and deficient lapped seams in strips and transition strips. Slit and flatten fishmouths and blisters. Patch with transition strips extending 6 inches (150 mm) beyond repaired areas in strip direction.

3.5 AIR BARRIER MEMBRANE INSTALLATION

- A. Apply air barrier membrane to form a seal with strips and transition strips and to achieve a continuous air barrier according to air barrier manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Apply air barrier membrane within manufacturer's recommended application temperature ranges.
- C. Apply primer to substrates at required rate and allow to dry. Limit priming to areas that will be covered by air barrier sheet in same day. Reprime areas exposed for more than 24 hours.
 - 1. Prime glass-fiber-surfaced gypsum sheathing with number of prime coats needed to achieve required bond, with adequate drying time between coats.
- D. Apply a continuous unbroken air barrier to substrates according to the following minimum thickness. Apply membrane in full contact around protrusions such as masonry ties.
 - 1. Vapor-Retarding Membrane Air Barrier: 60-mil (1.5-mm)] dry film thickness.
- E. Apply strip and transition strip over cured air membrane overlapping 3 inches (75 mm) onto each surface according to air barrier manufacturer's written instructions.
- F. Do not cover air barrier until it has been tested and inspected by the Contractor's testing agency.
- G. Correct deficiencies in or remove air barrier that does not comply with requirements; repair substrates and reapply air barrier components.

3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Contractor will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
- B. Inspections: Air barrier materials and installation are subject to inspection for compliance with requirements. Inspections may include the following:
 - 1. Continuity of air barrier system has been achieved throughout the building envelope with no gaps or holes.
 - 2. Continuous structural support of air barrier system has been provided.
 - 3. Masonry and concrete surfaces are smooth, clean and free of cavities, protrusions, and mortar droppings.
 - 4. Site conditions for application temperature and dryness of substrates have been maintained.

5. Maximum exposure time of materials to UV deterioration has not been exceeded.
 6. Surfaces have been primed, if applicable.
 7. Laps in strips and transition strips have complied with minimum requirements and have been shingled in the correct direction (or mastic has been applied on exposed edges), with no fishmouths.
 8. Termination mastic has been applied on cut edges.
 9. Strips and transition strips have been firmly adhered to substrate.
 10. Compatible materials have been used.
 11. Transitions at changes in direction and structural support at gaps have been provided.
 12. Connections between assemblies (membrane and sealants) have complied with requirements for cleanliness, preparation and priming of surfaces, structural support, integrity, and continuity of seal.
 13. All penetrations have been sealed.
- C. Tests: Testing to be performed include but are not limited to the following tests:
1. Qualitative Testing: Air barrier assemblies will be tested for evidence of air leakage according to ASTM E 1186, smoke pencil with pressurization or depressurization.
 2. Comply with the U.S. Army Corps of Engineer's "Air leakage Test Protocol for Measuring Air Leakage in Buildings".
- D. Remove and replace deficient air barrier components and retest as specified above.

3.7 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Protect air barrier system from damage during application and remainder of construction period, according to manufacturer's written instructions.
1. Protect air barrier from exposure to UV light and harmful weather exposure as required by manufacturer. Remove and replace air barrier exposed for more than 30 days.
 2. Protect air barrier from contact with creosote, uncured coal-tar products, TPO, EPDM, flexible PVC membranes, and sealants not approved by air barrier manufacturer.
- B. Clean spills, stains, and soiling from construction that would be exposed in the completed work using cleaning agents and procedures recommended by manufacturer of affected construction.
- C. Remove masking materials after installation.
- D. END OF SECTION 07 2726

SECTION 07 4213 - METAL WALL AND SOFFIT PANELS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Concealed-Fastener Lap-Seam Metal Wall Panel System.
 - 2. Concealed-fastener, lap-seam metal soffit panel system.
- B. Related Sections:
 - 1. Division 05 Section "Cold-Formed Metal Framing" for support framing, including studs, and bracing.
 - 2. Division 07 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim" for flashing and other sheet metal work that is not part of metal wall panel assemblies.

1.3 DEFINITION

- A. Metal Wall Panel Assembly: Metal wall panels, attachment system components, miscellaneous metal framing, thermal insulation, and accessories necessary for a complete weathertight wall
- B. Metal Soffit Panel Assembly: Metal soffit panels, attachment system components, miscellaneous metal framing, and accessories necessary for a complete weathertight soffit.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General Performance: Metal wall and soffit panel assemblies shall comply with performance requirements without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction.
- B. Delegated Design: Design metal wall and soffit panel assemblies, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
- C. Air Infiltration: Air leakage through assembly of not more than 0.06 cfm/sq. ft. (0.3 L/s per sq. m) of wall area when tested according to ASTM E 283 at the following test-pressure difference:
 - 1. Test-Pressure Difference: 1.57 lbf/sq. ft. (75 Pa).
- D. Water Penetration under Static Pressure: No water penetration when tested according to ASTM E 331 at the following test-pressure difference:

1. Test-Pressure Difference: 6.24 lbf/sq. ft. (300 Pa)]
 - E. Water Penetration under Dynamic Pressure: No evidence of water leakage when tested according to AAMA 501.1 under dynamic pressure equal to 20 percent of inward-acting, wind-load design pressure of not less than 6.24 lbf/sq. ft. (300 Pa) and not more than 12 lbf/sq. ft. (575 Pa).
 1. Water Leakage: Uncontrolled water infiltrating the system or appearing on system's normally exposed interior surfaces from sources other than condensation. Water controlled by flashing and gutters that is drained back to the exterior and cannot damage adjacent materials or finishes is not water leakage.
 - F. Structural Performance: Provide metal wall panel assemblies capable of withstanding the effects the following loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated, based on testing according to ASTM E 1592:
 1. Wind Loads: Determine loads based on the following minimum design wind pressures:
 - a. Uniform pressure as indicated on Drawings.
 2. Deflection Limits: Metal wall panel assemblies shall withstand wind loads with horizontal deflections no greater than 1/240 of the span.
 - G. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes by preventing buckling, opening of joints, overstressing of components, failure of joint sealants, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects. Base calculations on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.
 1. Temperature Change (Range): 120 deg F (67 deg C), ambient; 180 deg F (100 deg C), material surfaces.
- 1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS
- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for each type of wall panel and accessory.
 - B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation layouts of metal wall panels; details of edge conditions, joints, panel profiles, corners, anchorages, attachment system, trim, flashings, closures, and accessories; and special details. Distinguish between factory-, shop- and field-assembled work.
 1. Accessories: Include details of the following items, at a scale of not less than 1-1/2 inches per 12 inches (1:10):
 - a. Flashing, trim, and extrusions needed for a complete installation.
 - b. All conditions of installation and anchorage. Details to include connection to backup supports and framing including metal studs, sheathing, z-furring, insulation and masonry.
 - C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of metal wall panel indicated with factory-applied color finishes.
 1. Include similar Samples of trim and accessories involving color selection.

- D. Delegated-Design Submittal: For metal wall and soffit panel assemblies indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings:
 - 1. Exterior elevations drawn to scale and coordinating penetrations and wall-mounted items. Show the following:
 - a. Wall panels and referenced end and side joint details adjacent to other materials.
 - b. Location of end of panel reveal joints.
 - c. Wall-mounted items including doors, windows, louvers, and lighting fixtures.
 - d. Openings and Penetrations of wall by pipes and utilities.
 - 2. Exterior soffit reflected plans drawn to scale and coordinating penetrations. Show the following:
 - a. Soffit panels and attachments.
 - b. Soffit panel orientation.
 - c. Suspension system framing.
 - d. Referenced panel end and side joint details adjacent to other materials.
- B. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- C. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency, for each product.
- D. Warranties: Sample of special warranties.

1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For metal wall panels to include in maintenance manuals.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Experience installer with minimum 10 years experience with successfully complete projects of a similar nature and scope.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of metal wall panel from single source from single manufacturer.
- C. Pre-installation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
 - 1. Meet with Owner, Architect, Owner's insurer if applicable, testing and inspecting agency representative, metal wall panel Installer, metal wall panel manufacturer's representative, structural-support Installer, and installers whose work interfaces with or affects metal wall panels, including installers of doors, windows, and louvers.
 - 2. Review and finalize construction schedule and verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.

3. Review methods and procedures related to metal wall panel installation, including manufacturer's written instructions.
4. Examine support conditions for compliance with requirements, including alignment between and attachment to structural members.
5. Review flashings, special siding details, wall penetrations, openings, and condition of other construction that will affect metal wall panels.
6. Review governing regulations and requirements for insurance, certificates, and tests and inspections if applicable.
7. Review temporary protection requirements for metal wall panel assembly during and after installation.
8. Review wall panel observation and repair procedures after metal wall panel installation.

1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver components, sheets, metal wall panels, and other manufactured items so as not to be damaged or deformed. Package metal wall panels for protection during transportation and handling.
- B. Unload, store, and erect metal wall panels in a manner to prevent bending, warping, twisting, and surface damage.
- C. Stack metal wall panels horizontally on platforms or pallets, covered with suitable weather-tight and ventilated covering. Store metal wall panels to ensure dryness, with positive slope for drainage of water. Do not store metal wall panels in contact with other materials that might cause staining, denting, or other surface damage.
- D. Retain strippable protective covering on metal wall panel for period of metal wall panel installation.

1.10 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit assembly of metal wall panels to be performed according to manufacturers' written instructions and warranty requirements.
- B. Field Measurements: Verify locations of structural members and wall opening dimensions by field measurements before metal wall panel fabrication, and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.

1.11 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate metal wall panel assemblies with rain drainage work, flashing, trim, and construction of studs, soffits, and other adjoining work to provide a leak-proof, secure, and noncorrosive installation.

1.12 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of metal wall panel assemblies that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Structural failures including rupturing, cracking, or puncturing.
 - b. Deterioration of metals and other materials beyond normal weathering.
 2. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Final Completion.
- B. Special Warranty on Panel Finishes: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair finish or replace metal wall panels that show evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.
1. Exposed Panel Finish: Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:
 - a. Color fading more than 5 Hunter units when tested according to ASTM D 2244.
 - b. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested according to ASTM D 4214.
 - c. Cracking, checking, peeling, or failure of paint to adhere to bare metal.
 2. Finish Warranty Period: 20 years from date of Final Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PANEL MATERIALS

- A. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet: Restricted flatness steel sheet metallic coated by the hot-dip process and pre-painted by the coil-coating process to comply with ASTM A 755/A 755M.
1. Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, G90 (Z275) coating designation; structural quality.
 2. Face Sheet: Minimum 0.030 inch/22 gage (0.76 mm) nominal uncoated thickness.
 3. Surface: Smooth, flat finish.
 4. Exposed Coil-Coated Finish:
 - a. Mica Fluoropolymer: AAMA 621. 2-coat fluoropolymer finish with suspended mica flakes containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
 - b. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of colors.
 5. Concealed Finish: Apply pretreatment and manufacturer's standard white or light-colored acrylic or polyester backer finish consisting of prime coat and wash coat with a minimum total dry film thickness of 0.5 mil (0.013 mm).

B. Panel Sealants:

1. Sealant Tape: Pressure-sensitive, 100 percent solids, gray polyisobutylene compound sealant tape with release-paper backing. Provide permanently elastic, nonsag, nontoxic, nonstaining tape 1/2 inch (13 mm) wide and 1/8 inch (3 mm) thick.
2. Joint Sealant: ASTM C 920; elastomeric polyurethane, polysulfide, or silicone sealant; of type, grade, class, and use classifications required to seal joints in metal wall panels and remain weathertight; and as recommended in writing by metal wall panel manufacturer.
3. Butyl-Rubber-Based, Solvent-Release Sealant: ASTM C 1311.

2.2 FIELD-INSTALLED THERMAL INSULATION

- A. Refer to Division 07 Section "Thermal Insulation."

2.3 MISCELLANEOUS METAL FRAMING

- A. Miscellaneous Metal Framing, General: ASTM C 645, cold-formed metallic-coated steel sheet, ASTM A 653/A 653M, G90 (Z275) hot-dip galvanized or coating with equivalent corrosion resistance unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Base or Sill Angles or Channels: 0.079-inch (2.01-mm) nominal thickness.
- C. Z-Shaped Furring: With slotted or nonslotted web, face flange of 1-1/4 inches (32 mm), wall attachment flange of 7/8 inch (22 mm), and depth required to fit insulation and cavity thickness indicated.
 1. Nominal Thickness: As required to meet performance requirements.
- D. Fasteners for Miscellaneous Metal Framing: Of type, material, size, corrosion resistance, holding power, and other properties required to fasten miscellaneous metal framing members to substrates.

2.4 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Exposed Fasteners: Where concealed fasteners cannot be avoided, provide self-tapping screws, bolts, nuts, self-locking rivets and bolts, end-welded studs, and other suitable fasteners designed to withstand design loads. Provide exposed fasteners with heads matching color of metal wall panels by means of plastic caps or factory-applied coating. Provide EPDM, PVC, or neoprene sealing washers.

2.5 CONCEALED-FASTENER, METAL WALL PANELS

- A. General: Provide factory-formed metal wall panels designed to be field assembled by interconnecting side edges of adjacent panels and mechanically attaching through panel to supports using concealed fasteners and factory-applied sealant in side laps. Include accessories required for weathertight installation.
- B. Type 1: Horizontal Wall Panel.

C. Listed Wall Panel information:

1. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. AEP-Span.
 - b. Berridge Manufacturing Company.
 - c. CENTRIA Architectural Systems. (Basis of Design)
 - d. Metecno-Morin.
 - e. Petersen Aluminum Corporation.
2. Panel Types:
 - a. Type I: CENTRIA IW Series, IW40A
3. Material: Zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet, 0.034-inch (0.86-mm) nominal thickness.
 - a. Exterior Finish: 2-coat Mica fluoropolymer / Kynar 500
 - b. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
4. Panel Coverage:
 - a. Type 1: 12 inches (305 mm).
5. Panel Heights: per detail.

2.6 METAL SOFFIT PANELS

- A. General: Provide factory-formed metal soffit panels designed to be installed by lapping and interconnecting side edges of adjacent panels and mechanically attaching through panel to supports using concealed fasteners and factory-applied sealant in side laps. Include accessories required for weathertight installation.
- B. Flush-Profile Metal Soffit Panels: Solid panels formed with vertical panel edges and flat pan between panel edges; with flush joint between panels.
 1. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. AEP-Span.
 - b. ATAS International, Inc.
 - c. Berridge
 - d. CENTRIA. (Basis of Design)
 - e. Petersen Aluminum Corporation.
 2. Panel: CENTRIA IW-10A.
 - a. Material: Same material, finish, and color as metal wall panels.
 - b. Face Sheet: Minimum 22 gage (0.76 mm) nominal uncoated thickness.
 - c. Panel Coverage: 12 inches (305 mm).
 - d. Panel Height: 1.5 inch (25 mm).
 - e. Sealant: Where indicated on approved shop drawings.
 - f. Surface: Smooth, flat finish.

2.7 ACCESSORIES

- A. Wall Panel Accessories: Provide components required for a complete metal wall panel assembly including trim, copings, fasciae, mullions, sills, corner units, clips, flashings, sealants, gaskets, fillers, closure strips, and similar items. Match material and finish of metal wall panels, unless otherwise indicated.
1. Closures: Provide closures at eaves and rakes, fabricated of same metal as metal wall panels.
 2. Backing Plates: Provide metal backing plates at panel end splices, fabricated from material recommended by manufacturer.
 3. Closure Strips: Closed-cell, expanded, cellular, rubber or cross-linked, polyolefin-foam or closed-cell laminated polyethylene; minimum 1-inch- (25-mm-) thick, flexible closure strips; cut or pre-molded to match metal wall panel profile. Provide closure strips where indicated or necessary to ensure weather-tight construction.
- B. Formed Flashing: Formed from 0.018-inch (0.46-mm) minimum thickness, zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet or aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet pre-painted with coil coating finish matching wall panels. Provide flashing as required to seal against weather.
- C. Extruded Trim and Reveal Joints: Aluminum extrusions to provide finished appearance. Locations include, but are not limited to, bases, drips, sills, jambs, corners, end-walls, framed openings, rakes, fasciae, parapet caps, soffits, reveals, and fillers. Finish flashing and trim with same finish system as adjacent metal wall panels.
1. CENTRIA Architectural Systems; MicroLine Extrusions or comparable product by other panel manufacturers specified.

FABRICATION

- D. General: Fabricate and finish metal wall panels and accessories at the factory to greatest extent possible, by manufacturer's standard procedures and processes, as necessary to fulfill indicated performance requirements demonstrated by laboratory testing. Comply with indicated profiles and with dimensional and structural requirements.
- E. Fabricate metal wall panels in a manner that eliminates condensation on interior side of panel and with joints between panels designed to form weather-tight seals.
- F. Provide panel profile, including major ribs and intermediate stiffening ribs, if any, for full length of panel.
- G. Fabricate metal wall panel joints with factory-installed captive gaskets or separator strips that provide a tight seal and prevent metal-to-metal contact, and that will minimize noise from movements within panel assembly.
- H. Sheet Metal Accessories: Fabricate flashing and trim to comply with recommendations in SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" that apply to the design, dimensions, metal, and other characteristics of item indicated.
1. Form exposed sheet metal accessories that are without excessive oil canning, buckling, and tool marks and that are true to line and levels indicated, with exposed edges folded back to form hems.

2. Seams for Aluminum: Fabricate nonmoving seams with flat-lock seams. Form seams and seal with epoxy seam sealer. Rivet joints for additional strength.
3. Seams for Other Than Aluminum: Fabricate nonmoving seams in accessories with flat-lock seams. Tin edges to be seamed, form seams, and solder.
4. Sealed Joints: Form nonexpansion but movable joints in metal to accommodate elastomeric sealant to comply with SMACNA standards.
5. Conceal fasteners and expansion provisions where possible. Exposed fasteners are not allowed on faces of accessories exposed to view.
6. Fabricate cleats and attachment devices from same material as accessory being anchored or from compatible, noncorrosive metal recommended by metal wall panel manufacturer.
 - a. Size: As recommended by SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" or metal wall panel manufacturer for application but not less than thickness of metal being secured.

2.8 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- B. Protect mechanical and painted finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- C. Appearance of Finished Work: Variations in appearance of abutting or adjacent pieces are acceptable if they are within one-half of the range of approved Samples. Noticeable variations in the same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of other components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, metal wall panel supports, and other conditions affecting performance of work.
 1. Examine wall framing to verify that z-furring, angles, channels, studs, and other structural panel support members and anchorage have been installed within alignment tolerances required by metal wall panel manufacturer.
 2. Examine wall sheathing to verify that sheathing joints are supported by framing or blocking and that installation is within flatness tolerances required by metal wall panel manufacturer.
 3. For the record, prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of work.
- B. Examine roughing-in for components and systems penetrating metal wall panels to verify actual locations of penetrations relative to seam locations of metal wall panels before metal wall panel installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Miscellaneous Framing: Install subgirts, base angles, sills, furring, and other miscellaneous wall panel support members and anchorages according to ASTM C 754 and metal wall panel manufacturer's written recommendations.

3.3 THERMAL INSULATION INSTALLATION

- A. Board Insulation: Extend insulation in thickness indicated to cover entire wall. Comply with installation requirements in Division 07 Section "Thermal Insulation."
 - 1. Erect insulation and hold in place with Z-shaped furring members spaced at maximum 16 inches (610 mm) o.c. Attach furring members to substrate with screws spaced 24 inches (610 mm) o.c.

3.4 METAL WALL PANEL INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install metal wall panels according to manufacturer's written instructions in orientation, sizes, and locations indicated on Drawings. Install panels perpendicular to girts and subgirts unless otherwise indicated. Anchor metal wall panels and other components of the Work securely in place, with provisions for thermal and structural movement.
 - 1. Commence metal wall panel installation and install minimum of 300 sq. ft. (27.8 sq. m.) in presence of factory-authorized representative.
 - 2. Shim or otherwise plumb substrates receiving metal wall panels.
 - 3. Flash and seal metal wall panels at perimeter of all openings. Fasten with self-tapping screws. Do not begin installation until weather barrier and flashings that will be concealed by metal wall panels are installed.
 - 4. Install screw fasteners in predrilled holes.
 - 5. Locate and space fastenings in uniform vertical and horizontal alignment.
 - 6. Install flashing and trim as metal wall panel work proceeds.
 - 7. Fasten metal wall panels to supports with concealed clips at each joint at location, spacing and with fasteners recommended by manufacturer. Install clips with self-taping screws.
 - 8. Apply elastomeric sealant continuously between metal base channel (sill angle) and concrete and elsewhere as indicated or, if not indicated, as necessary for waterproofing.
 - 9. Align bottom of metal wall panels and fasten with blind rivets, bolts, or self-tapping screws. Fasten flashings around openings and similar elements with self-tapping screws.
 - 10. Install extruded aluminum trims per manufacturer's instructions.
 - 11. Provide weather-tight escutcheons for pipe and conduit penetrating exterior walls.
- B. Fasteners:
 - 1. Steel Wall Panel Concealed Anchorages: Use stainless-steel fasteners for all surfaces.
- C. Metal Protection: Where dissimilar metals will contact each other or corrosive substrates, protect against galvanic action as recommended by metal wall panel manufacturer.
- D. Joint Sealers: Install gaskets, joint fillers, and sealants where indicated and where required for weathertight performance of metal wall panel assemblies. Provide types of gaskets, fillers, and sealants indicated or, if not indicated, types recommended by metal wall panel manufacturer.

1. Seal metal wall panel end laps with double beads of tape or sealant, full width of panel. Seal side joints where recommended by metal wall panel manufacturer.
 2. Prepare joints and apply sealants to comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants."
- E. Lap-Seam Metal Wall Panels: Fasten metal wall panels to supports with fasteners at each lapped joint at location and spacing recommended by manufacturer.
1. Lap ribbed or fluted sheets one full rib corrugation. Apply panels and associated items for neat and weathertight enclosure. Avoid "panel creep" or application not true to line.
 2. Provide metal-backed washers under heads of exposed fasteners bearing on weather side of metal wall panels.
 3. Locate and space exposed fasteners in uniform vertical and horizontal alignment. Use proper tools to obtain controlled uniform compression for positive seal without rupture of washer.
 4. Install screw fasteners with power tools having controlled torque adjusted to compress washer tightly without damage to washer, screw threads, or panels. Install screws in predrilled holes.
 5. Provide sealant tape at lapped joints of metal wall panels and between panels and protruding equipment, vents, and accessories.
 6. Apply a continuous ribbon of sealant tape to weather-side surface of fastenings on end laps; on side laps of nesting-type panels; on side laps of corrugated nesting-type, ribbed, or fluted panels; and elsewhere as needed to make panels weather-tight.
 7. Provide full length panels without end laps, extending between edge and reveal trims.

3.5 METAL SOFFIT PANEL INSTALLATION

- A. In addition to complying with requirements in "Metal Wall Panel Installation, General" Article, install metal soffit panels to comply with requirements in this article.
- B. Metal Soffit Panels: Provide metal soffit panels full width of soffits. Install panels perpendicular to support framing.
1. Flash and seal panels with weather closures where metal soffit panels meet walls and at perimeter of all openings.

3.6 ACCESSORY INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install accessories with positive anchorage to building and weather-tight mounting, and provide for thermal expansion. Coordinate installation with flashings and other components.
1. Install components required for a complete metal wall panel assembly including trim, copings, corners, seam covers, flashings, sealants, gaskets, fillers, closure strips, and similar items.
- B. Flashing and Trim: Comply with performance requirements, manufacturer's written installation instructions, and SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual." Provide concealed fasteners where possible, and set units true to line and level as indicated. Install work with laps, joints, and seams that will be permanently watertight and weather resistant.
1. Install exposed flashing and trim that is without excessive oil canning, buckling, and tool marks and that is true to line and levels indicated, with exposed edges folded back to

form hems. Provide concealed Install sheet metal flashing and trim to fit substrates and to result in waterproof and weather-resistant performance.

2. Install extruded aluminum trims with concealed fasteners per manufacturer's instructions.
3. Expansion Provisions: Provide for thermal expansion of exposed flashing and trim. Space movement joints at a maximum of 10 feet (3 m) with no joints allowed within 24 inches (605 mm) of corner or intersection. Where lapped expansion provisions cannot be used or would not be sufficiently weather resistant and waterproof, form expansion joints of intermeshing hooked flanges, not less than 1 inch (25 mm) deep, filled with mastic sealant (concealed within joints).

3.7 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films, if any, as metal wall panels are installed, unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written installation instructions. On completion of metal wall panel installation, clean finished surfaces as recommended by metal wall panel manufacturer. Maintain in a clean condition during construction.
- B. After metal wall panel installation, clear weep holes and drainage channels of obstructions, dirt, and sealant.
- C. Replace metal wall panels that have been damaged or have deteriorated beyond successful repair by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

END OF SECTION 07 4213

SECTION 074213.23 - METAL COMPOSITE MATERIAL WALL PANELS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes metal composite material wall panels.

1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Pre-installation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
 - 1. Meet with Owner, Architect, Owner's insurer if applicable, metal composite material panel Installer, metal composite material panel manufacturer's representative, structural-support Installer, and installers whose work interfaces with or affects metal composite material panels, including installers of doors, windows, and louvers.
 - 2. Review methods and procedures related to metal composite material panel installation, including manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 3. Examine support conditions for compliance with requirements, including alignment between and attachment to structural members.
 - 4. Review flashings, special siding details, wall penetrations, openings, and condition of other construction that affect metal composite material panels.
 - 5. Review temporary protection requirements for metal composite material panel assembly during and after installation.
 - 6. Review procedures for repair of panels damaged after installation.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for each type of panel and accessory.
- B. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Include fabrication and installation layouts of metal composite material panels; details of edge conditions, joints, panel profiles, corners, anchorages, attachment assembly, trim, flashings, closures, and accessories; and special details.
 - 2. Accessories: Include details of the flashing, trim and anchorage, at a scale of not less than 1-1/2 inches per 12 inches 1:10.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of metal composite material panel indicated with factory-applied color finishes.
 - 1. Include similar Samples of trim and accessories involving color selection.

- D. Samples for Verification: For each type of exposed finish required, prepared on Samples of size indicated below.
 - 1. Metal Composite Material Panels: 12 inches305 mm long by actual panel width. Include fasteners, closures, and other metal composite material panel accessories.
- 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS
 - A. Qualification Data: For Installer.
 - B. Product Test Reports: For each product, tests performed by a qualified testing agency.
 - C. Sample Warranties: For special warranties.
- 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS
 - A. Maintenance Data: For metal composite material panels to include in maintenance manuals.
- 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE
 - A. Installer Qualifications: An entity that employs installers and supervisors who are trained and approved by manufacturer.
 - B. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under Sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for fabrication and installation.
 - 1. Build mockup of typical metal composite material panel assembly , including corner, supports, attachments, and accessories.
 - 2. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
- 1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING
 - A. Deliver components, metal composite material panels, and other manufactured items so as not to be damaged or deformed. Package metal composite material panels for protection during transportation and handling.
 - B. Unload, store, and erect metal composite material panels in a manner to prevent bending, warping, twisting, and surface damage.
 - C. Stack metal composite material panels horizontally on platforms or pallets, covered with suitable weathertight and ventilated covering. Store metal composite material panels to ensure dryness, with positive slope for drainage of water. Do not store metal composite material panels in contact with other materials that might cause staining, denting, or other surface damage.
 - D. Retain strippable protective covering on metal composite material panels during installation.

1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit assembly of metal composite material panels to be performed according to manufacturers' written instructions and warranty requirements.

1.10 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate metal composite material panel installation with rain drainage work, flashing, trim, construction of soffits, and other adjoining work to provide a leakproof, secure, and noncorrosive installation.

1.11 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of metal composite material panel systems that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Structural failures including rupturing, cracking, or puncturing.
 - b. Deterioration of metals and other materials beyond normal weathering.

2. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.

- B. Special Warranty on Panel Finishes: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair finish or replace metal composite material panels that show evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.

1. Exposed Panel Finish: Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:
 - a. Color fading more than 5 Hunter units when tested according to ASTM D 2244.
 - b. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested according to ASTM D 4214.
 - c. Cracking, checking, peeling, or failure of paint to adhere to bare metal.

2. Finish Warranty Period: 20 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Structural Performance: Provide metal composite material panel systems capable of withstanding the effects of the following loads, based on testing according to ASTM E 330:

1. Wind Loads: As indicated on Drawings.
2. Deflection Limits: For wind loads, no greater than 1/180 of the span.

- B. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes by preventing buckling, opening of joints, overstressing of components, failure of joint sealants, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects. Base calculations on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.

1. Temperature Change (Range): 120 deg F67 deg C, ambient; 180 deg F100 deg C, material surfaces.

2.2 METAL COMPOSITE MATERIAL WALL PANELS - TYPE 2

- A. Metal Composite Material Wall Panel Systems: Provide metal composite material wall panels fabricated from two metal facings that are bonded to a solid, extruded thermoplastic core; formed into profile for installation method indicated. Include attachment assembly components, fasteners, and accessories required for weathertight system.
- B. Basis-of-Design Manufacturer: Citadel Architectural Products, Inc., Envelope 2000 RV- Battan, aluminum-faced composite wall panels: Formed with 0.024-inch- (0.50-mm-) thick, coil-coated aluminum sheet facings.
 1. Panel Thickness: 0.125 inch.3 mm4 mm5 mm6 mm
 2. Core: 0.105" thermoset phenolic resin.
 3. Exterior Finishes: Two-coat MICA fluoropolymer
 4. Base Panel Color: Crystal Finishing Systems, Inc. as selected by architect from full series of colors.
- C. Attachment Assembly Trim Components: Formed from extruded aluminum material compatible with panel facing.

2.3 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Miscellaneous Metal Subframing and Furring: ASTM C 645, cold-formed, metallic-coated steel sheet ASTM A 653/A 653M, G90Z275 hot-dip galvanized coating designation or ASTM A 792/A 792M, Class AZ50Class AZM150 aluminum-zinc-alloy coating designation unless otherwise indicated. Provide manufacturer's standard sections as required for support and alignment of metal composite material panel system.
- B. Panel Accessories: Provide components required for a complete, weathertight panel system including trim, copings, fasciae, mullions, sills, corner units, clips, flashings, sealants, gaskets, fillers, closure strips, and similar items. Match material and finish of metal composite material panels unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Flashing: Provide flashing formed from same material as metal composite material panels as required to seal against weather and to provide finished appearance. Locations include, but are not limited to, bases, drips, parapet caps, and fillers. Finish flashing with same finish system as adjacent metal composite material panels.
- D. Panel Fasteners: Self-tapping screws designed to withstand design loads. Provide exposed fasteners with heads matching color of metal composite material panels by means of plastic caps or factory-applied coating. Provide EPDM or PVC sealing washers for exposed fasteners. Fasteners shall be coated or stainless steel.
- E. Panel Sealants: ASTM C 920; elastomeric polyurethane or silicone sealant; of type, grade, class, and use classifications required to seal joints in metal composite material panels and remain weathertight; and as recommended in writing by metal composite material panel manufacturer.

2.4 FABRICATION

- A. General: Fabricate and finish metal composite material panels and accessories at the factory, by manufacturer's standard procedures and processes, as necessary to fulfill indicated performance requirements demonstrated by laboratory testing. Comply with indicated profiles and with dimensional and structural requirements.
- B. Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim: Fabricate flashing and trim to comply with manufacturer's recommendations and recommendations in SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" that apply to design, dimensions, metal, and other characteristics of item indicated.
 - 1. Form exposed sheet metal accessories that are without excessive oil canning, buckling, and tool marks and that are true to line and levels indicated, with exposed edges folded back to form hems.
 - 2. Seams for Aluminum: Fabricate nonmoving seams with flat-lock seams. Form seams and seal with epoxy seam sealer. Rivet joints for additional strength.
 - 3. Seams for Other Than Aluminum: Fabricate nonmoving seams in accessories with flat-lock seams. Tin edges to be seamed, form seams, and solder.
 - 4. Sealed Joints: Form non-expansion, but movable, joints in metal to accommodate sealant and to comply with SMACNA standards.
 - 5. Conceal fasteners and expansion provisions where possible. Exposed fasteners are not allowed on faces of accessories exposed to view.
 - 6. Fabricate cleats and attachment devices from same material as accessory being anchored or from compatible, noncorrosive metal recommended in writing by metal panel manufacturer.
 - a. Size: As recommended by SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" or metal wall panel manufacturer for application but not less than thickness of metal being secured.

2.5 FINISHES

- A. Protect mechanical and painted finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strip-pable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- B. Appearance of Finished Work: Variations in appearance of abutting or adjacent pieces are acceptable if they are within one-half of the range of approved Samples. Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of other components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.
- C. Aluminum Panels and Accessories:
 - 1. Two-Coat MICA Fluoropolymer: AAMA 2605. Fluoropolymer finish containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, metal composite material panel supports, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
 - 1. Examine wall framing to verify that girts, angles, channels, studs, and other structural panel support members and anchorage have been installed within alignment tolerances required by metal composite material wall panel manufacturer.
 - 2. Examine wall sheathing to verify that sheathing joints are supported by framing or blocking and that installation is within flatness tolerances required by metal composite material wall panel manufacturer.
 - a. Verify that air-or water-resistive barriers have been installed over sheathing or backing substrate to prevent air infiltration or water penetration.
- B. Examine roughing-in for components and assemblies penetrating metal composite material panels to verify actual locations of penetrations relative to seam locations of metal composite material panels before installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Miscellaneous Supports: Install subframing, furring, and other miscellaneous panel support members and anchorages according to ASTM C 754 and metal composite material panel manufacturer's written recommendations.

3.3 METAL COMPOSITE MATERIAL PANEL INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install metal composite material panels according to manufacturer's written instructions in orientation, sizes, and locations indicated on Drawings. Install panels perpendicular to supports unless otherwise indicated. Anchor metal composite material panels and other components of the Work securely in place, with provisions for thermal and structural movement.
 - 1. Shim or otherwise plumb substrates receiving metal composite material panels.
 - 2. Flash and seal metal composite material panels at perimeter of all openings. Fasten with self-tapping screws. Do not begin installation until air- or water-resistive barriers and flashings that will be concealed by metal composite material panels are installed.
 - 3. Install flashing and trim as metal composite material panel work proceeds.
 - 4. Provide weathertight escutcheons for pipe- and conduit-penetrating panels.
- B. Attachment Assembly, General: Install attachment assembly required to support metal composite material wall panels and to provide a complete weathertight wall system, including subgirts, perimeter extrusions, tracks, drainage channels, panel clips, and anchor channels.
 - 1. Include attachment to supports, panel-to-panel joinery, panel-to-dissimilar-material joinery, and panel-system joint seals.

- C. Installation: Attach metal composite material wall panels to supports at locations, spacings, and with fasteners recommended by manufacturer to achieve performance requirements specified.
 - 1. Wet Seal Systems: Seal horizontal and vertical joints between adjacent metal composite material wall panels with sealant backing and sealant. Install sealant backing and sealant according to manufacturer's standard installation method.
- D. Accessory Installation: Install accessories with positive anchorage to building and weathertight mounting, and provide for thermal expansion. Coordinate installation with flashings and other components.
 - 1. Install components required for a complete metal composite material panel assembly including trim, copings, corners, seam covers, flashings, sealants, gaskets, fillers, closure strips, and similar items. Provide types indicated by metal composite material panel manufacturer; or, if not indicated, provide types recommended in writing by metal composite material panel manufacturer.
- E. Flashing and Trim: Comply with performance requirements, manufacturer's written installation instructions, and SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual." Provide concealed fasteners where possible, and set units true to line and level as indicated. Install flashing with joints, and seams that are permanently watertight. Install extruded aluminum trims with mitered or butt joints per manufacturer's instructions.
- F. Expansion Provisions: Provide for thermal expansion of exposed flashing and trim. Space movement joints at a maximum of 10 feet with no joints allowed within 24 inches of corner or intersection. Where lapped expansion provisions cannot be used or would not be sufficiently watertight, form expansion joints of intermeshing hooked flanges, not less than 1 inch deep, filled with mastic sealant (concealed within joints).

3.4 ERECTION TOLERANCES

- A. Installation Tolerances: Shim and align metal composite material wall panel units within installed tolerance of 1/4 inch in 20 feet 6 mm in 6 m, non-accumulative, on level, plumb, and location lines as indicated, and within 1/8-inch 3-mm offset of adjoining faces and of alignment of matching profiles.

3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films, if any, as metal composite material panels are installed, unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written installation instructions. On completion of metal composite material panel installation, clean finished surfaces as recommended by metal composite material panel manufacturer. Maintain in a clean condition during construction.
- B. After metal composite material panel installation, clear weep holes and drainage channels of obstructions, dirt, and sealant.
- C. Replace metal composite material panels that have been damaged or have deteriorated beyond successful repair by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

END OF SECTION 074213.23

SECTION 075423 - THERMOPLASTIC POLYOLEFIN (TPO) ROOFING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Adhered TPO membrane roofing system.
 - 2. Roof insulation.
- B. Related Sections:
 - 1. Division 06 Section "Rough Carpentry " for wood nailers, curbs, and blocking.
 - 2. Division 07 Section "Preparation for Re-Roofing" for recover board beneath new membrane roofing.
 - 3. Division 07 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim" for metal roof penetration flashings, flashings, and counterflashings.
 - 4. Division 07 Section "Manufactured Roof Expansion Joints" for proprietary manufactured roof expansion-joint assemblies.
 - 5. Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" for joint sealants, joint fillers, and joint preparation.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. TPO: Thermoplastic polyolefin.
- B. Roofing Terminology: See ASTM D 1079 and glossary in NRCA's "The NRCA Roofing and Waterproofing Manual" for definitions of terms related to roofing work in this Section.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General Performance: Installed membrane roofing and base flashings shall withstand specified uplift pressures, thermally induced movement, and exposure to weather without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction. Membrane roofing and base flashings shall remain watertight.
- B. Material Compatibility: Provide roofing materials that are compatible with one another under conditions of service and application required, as demonstrated by membrane roofing manufacturer based on testing and field experience.
- C. Roofing System Design: Provide membrane roofing system that is identical to systems that have been successfully tested by a qualified testing and inspecting agency to resist uplift pressure calculated according to ASCE/SEI 7.

1. Corner Uplift Pressure: 25psf.
 2. Perimeter Uplift Pressure: 20psf.
 3. Field-of-Roof Uplift Pressure: 15psf.
- D. FM Approvals Listing: Provide membrane roofing, base flashings, and component materials that comply with requirements in FM Approvals 4450 and FM Approvals 4470 as part of a membrane roofing system, and that are listed in FM Approvals' "RoofNav" for Class 1 or non-combustible construction, as applicable. Identify materials with FM Approvals markings.
1. Fire/Windstorm Classification: Class 1A-120.
 2. Hail Resistance: SH.
- E. Solar Reflectance Index: Not less than 78 when calculated according to ASTM E 1980, based on testing identical products by a qualified testing agency.
- F. Energy Performance: Provide roofing system that is listed on the DOE's ENERGY STAR "Roof Products Qualified Product List" for low -slope roof products.
- 1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS
- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: For roofing system. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
1. Base flashings and membrane terminations.
 2. Tapered insulation, including slopes.
 3. Insulation fastening patterns for corner, perimeter, and field-of-roof locations.
- 1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS
- A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer and manufacturer.
- B. Manufacturer Certificates: Signed by roofing manufacturer certifying that roofing system complies with requirements specified in "Performance Requirements" Article.
1. Submit evidence of compliance with performance requirements.
- C. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency, for components of membrane roofing system.
- D. Warranties: Sample of special warranties.
- 1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS
- A. Maintenance Data: For roofing system to include in maintenance manuals.
- 1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE
- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: A qualified manufacturer that is UL listed FM Approvals approved for membrane roofing system identical to that used for this Project.

- B. Installer Qualifications: A qualified firm that is approved, authorized, or licensed by membrane roofing system manufacturer to install manufacturer's product and that is eligible to receive manufacturer's special warranty.
- C. Source Limitations: Obtain components including roof insulation fasteners for membrane roofing system from same manufacturer as membrane roofing or approved by membrane roofing manufacturer.
- D. Exterior Fire-Test Exposure: ASTM E 108, Class A; for application and roof slopes indicated, as determined by testing identical membrane roofing materials by a qualified testing agency. Materials shall be identified with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
- E. Preinstallation Roofing Conference: Conduct conference at [Project site] <Insert location>.
 - 1. Meet with Owner, Architect, Owner's insurer if applicable, testing and inspecting agency representative, roofing Installer, roofing system manufacturer's representative, deck Installer, and installers whose work interfaces with or affects roofing, including installers of roof accessories and roof-mounted equipment.
 - 2. Review methods and procedures related to roofing installation, including manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 3. Review and finalize construction schedule and verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
 - 4. Examine deck substrate conditions and finishes for compliance with requirements, including flatness and fastening.
 - 5. Review structural loading limitations of roof deck during and after roofing.
 - 6. Review base flashings, special roofing details, roof drainage, roof penetrations, equipment curbs, and condition of other construction that will affect roofing system.
 - 7. Review governing regulations and requirements for insurance and certificates if applicable.
 - 8. Review temporary protection requirements for roofing system during and after installation.
 - 9. Review roof observation and repair procedures after roofing installation.

1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver roofing materials to Project site in original containers with seals unbroken and labeled with manufacturer's name, product brand name and type, date of manufacture, approval or listing agency markings, and directions for storing and mixing with other components.
- B. Store liquid materials in their original undamaged containers in a clean, dry, protected location and within the temperature range required by roofing system manufacturer. Protect stored liquid material from direct sunlight.
 - 1. Discard and legally dispose of liquid material that cannot be applied within its stated shelf life.
- C. Protect roof insulation materials from physical damage and from deterioration by sunlight, moisture, soiling, and other sources. Store in a dry location. Comply with insulation manufacturer's written instructions for handling, storing, and protecting during installation.
- D. Handle and store roofing materials and place equipment in a manner to avoid permanent deflection of deck.

1.10 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit roofing system to be installed according to manufacturer's written instructions and warranty requirements.

1.11 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard or customized form, without monetary limitation, in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of membrane roofing system that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
1. Special warranty includes membrane roofing, base flashings, roof insulation, cover boards, and other components of membrane roofing system.
 2. Warranty Period: 20r years from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Special Project Warranty: Submit roofing Installer's warranty, , signed by Installer, covering the Work of this Section, including all components of membrane roofing system such as membrane roofing, base flashing, roof insulation, fasteners, cover boards,, and walkway products, for the following warranty period:
1. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 TPO MEMBRANE ROOFING

- A. Fabric-Reinforced Thermoplastic Polyolefin Sheet: ASTM D 6878, internally fabric or scrim reinforced, uniform, flexible fabric backed TPO sheet.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Carlisle SynTec Incorporated.
 - b. Firestone Building Products Company.
 - c. GAF Materials Corporation.
 - d. GenFlex Roofing Systems.
 2. Thickness: 60 mils1.5 mm, nominal.
 3. Exposed Face Color: White.

2.2 AUXILIARY MEMBRANE ROOFING MATERIALS

- A. General: Auxiliary membrane roofing materials recommended by roofing system manufacturer for intended use, and compatible with membrane roofing.
1. Liquid-type auxiliary materials shall comply with VOC limits of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Miscellaneous Accessories: Provide pourable sealers, preformed cone and vent sheet flash-

ings, preformed inside and outside corner sheet flashings, T-joint covers, lap sealants, termination reglets, and other accessories.

2.3 ROOF INSULATION

- A. General: Preformed roof insulation boards manufactured or approved by TPO membrane roofing manufacturer, selected from manufacturer's standard sizes suitable for application, of thicknesses indicated and that produce FM Approvals-approved roof insulation.
- B. Polyisocyanurate Board Insulation: ASTM C 1289, Type II, Class 1, Grade 2, felt or glass-fiber mat facer on both major surfaces.
- C. Tapered Insulation: Provide factory-tapered insulation boards fabricated to slope of 1/4 inch per 12 inches (1:48) unless otherwise indicated.

2.4 INSULATION ACCESSORIES

- A. Cover Board: ASTM C 1177/C 1177M, glass-mat, water-resistant gypsum substrate, 1/2 inch (13 mm) thick, factory primed.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Georgia-Pacific Corporation; Dens Deck Prime.

2.5 WALKWAYS

- A. Flexible Walkways: Factory-formed, nonporous, heavy-duty, slip-resisting, surface-textured walkway pads or rolls, approximately 3/16 inch 5 mm thick, and acceptable to membrane roofing system manufacturer.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with the following requirements and other conditions affecting performance of roofing system:
 - 1. Verify that roof openings and penetrations are in place and curbs are set and braced and that roof drain bodies are securely clamped in place.
 - 2. Verify that wood blocking, curbs, and nailers are securely anchored to roof deck at penetrations and terminations and that nailers match thicknesses of insulation.
 - 3. Verify that surface plane flatness and fastening of steel roof deck complies with requirements in Division 05 Section "Steel Decking."
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Clean substrate of dust, debris, moisture, and other substances detrimental to roofing installa-

tion according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions. Remove sharp projections.

- B. Prevent materials from entering and clogging roof drains and conductors and from spilling or migrating onto surfaces of other construction. Remove roof-drain plugs when no work is taking place or when rain is forecast.
- C. Complete terminations and base flashings and provide temporary seals to prevent water from entering completed sections of roofing system at the end of the workday or when rain is forecast. Remove and discard temporary seals before beginning work on adjoining roofing.

3.3 INSULATION INSTALLATION

- A. Coordinate installing membrane roofing system components so insulation is not exposed to precipitation or left exposed at the end of the workday.
- B. Comply with membrane roofing system and insulation manufacturer's written instructions for installing roof insulation.
- C. Install tapered insulation under area of roofing to conform to slopes indicated.
- D. Install insulation under area of roofing to achieve required thickness. Where overall insulation thickness is 2.7 inches 68 mm or greater, install two or more layers with joints of each succeeding layer staggered from joints of previous layer a minimum of 6 inches (150 mm) in each direction.
- E. Mechanically Fastened Insulation: Install each layer of insulation and secure to deck using mechanical fasteners specifically designed and sized for fastening specified board-type roof insulation to deck type.
 - 1. Fasten insulation according to requirements in FM Approvals' "RoofNav" for specified Windstorm Resistance Classification.
- F. Mechanically Fastened and Adhered Insulation: Install each layer of insulation and secure first layer of insulation to deck using mechanical fasteners specifically designed and sized for fastening specified board-type roof insulation to deck type.
 - 1. Fasten first layer of insulation according to requirements in FM Approvals' "RoofNav" for specified Windstorm Resistance Classification.
 - 2. Set each subsequent layer of insulation in ribbons of bead-applied insulation adhesive, firmly pressing and maintaining insulation in place.

3.4 ADHERED MEMBRANE ROOFING INSTALLATION

- A. Adhere membrane roofing over area to receive roofing and install according to membrane roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Start installation of membrane roofing in presence of membrane roofing system manufacturer's technical personnel.
- C. Accurately align membrane roofing and maintain uniform side and end laps of minimum dimensions required by manufacturer. Stagger end laps.
- D. Bonding Adhesive: Apply to substrate and underside of membrane roofing at rate required by

manufacturer and allow to partially dry before installing membrane roofing. Do not apply to splice area of membrane roofing.

- E. In addition to adhering, mechanically fasten membrane roofing securely at terminations, penetrations, and perimeter of roofing.
- F. Apply membrane roofing with side laps shingled with slope of roof deck where possible.
- G. Seams: Clean seam areas, overlap membrane roofing, and hot-air weld side and end laps of membrane roofing and sheet flashings according to manufacturer's written instructions to ensure a watertight seam installation.
 - 1. Test lap edges with probe to verify seam weld continuity. Apply lap sealant to seal cut edges of sheet membrane.
 - 2. Verify field strength of seams a minimum of twice daily and repair seam sample areas.
 - 3. Repair tears, voids, and lapped seams in roofing that does not comply with requirements.
- H. Spread sealant bed over deck drain flange at roof drains and securely seal membrane roofing in place with clamping ring.

3.5 BASE FLASHING INSTALLATION

- A. Install sheet flashings and preformed flashing accessories and adhere to substrates according to membrane roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Apply bonding adhesive to substrate and underside of sheet flashing at required rate and allow to partially dry. Do not apply to seam area of flashing.
- C. Flash penetrations and field-formed inside and outside corners with cured or uncured sheet flashing.
- D. Clean seam areas, overlap, and firmly roll sheet flashings into the adhesive. Hot-air weld side and end laps to ensure a watertight seam installation.
- E. Terminate and seal top of sheet flashings and mechanically anchor to substrate through termination bars.

3.6 WALKWAY INSTALLATION

- A. Flexible Walkways: Install walkway products in locations indicated. Heat weld to substrate or adhere walkway products to substrate with compatible adhesive according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.

3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Final Roof Inspection: Arrange for roofing system manufacturer's technical personnel to inspect roofing installation on completion.
- B. Repair or remove and replace components of membrane roofing system where inspections indicate that they do not comply with specified requirements.
- C. Additional inspections, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of

replaced or additional work with specified requirements.

3.8 PROTECTING AND CLEANING

- A. Protect membrane roofing system from damage and wear during remainder of construction period. When remaining construction will not affect or endanger roofing, inspect roofing for deterioration and damage, describing its nature and extent in a written report, with copies to Architect and Owner.
- B. Correct deficiencies in or remove membrane roofing system that does not comply with requirements; repair substrates; and repair or reinstall membrane roofing system to a condition free of damage and deterioration at time of Substantial Completion and according to warranty requirements.

3.9 ROOFING INSTALLER'S WARRANTY

- A. WHEREAS <Insert name> of <Insert address>, herein called the "Roofing Installer," has performed roofing and associated work ("work") on the following project:
 - 1. Owner: <Insert name of Owner>.
 - 2. Address: <Insert address>.
 - 3. Building Name/Type: <Insert information>.
 - 4. Address: <Insert address>.
 - 5. Area of Work: <Insert information>.
 - 6. Acceptance Date: <Insert date>.
 - 7. Warranty Period: <Insert time>.
 - 8. Expiration Date: <Insert date>.
- B. AND WHEREAS Roofing Installer has contracted (either directly with Owner or indirectly as a subcontractor) to warrant said work against leaks and faulty or defective materials and workmanship for designated Warranty Period,
- C. NOW THEREFORE Roofing Installer hereby warrants, subject to terms and conditions herein set forth, that during Warranty Period he will, at his own cost and expense, make or cause to be made such repairs to or replacements of said work as are necessary to correct faulty and defective work and as are necessary to maintain said work in a watertight condition.
- D. This Warranty is made subject to the following terms and conditions:
 - 1. Specifically excluded from this Warranty are damages to work and other parts of the building, and to building contents, caused by:
 - a. Lightning;
 - b. Peak gust wind speed exceeding 120 mph;
 - c. Fire;
 - d. Failure of roofing system substrate, including cracking, settlement, excessive deflection, deterioration, and decomposition;
 - e. Faulty construction of parapet walls, copings, chimneys, skylights, vents, equipment supports, and other edge conditions and penetrations of the work;
 - f. Vapor condensation on bottom of roofing; and
 - g. Activity on roofing by others, including construction contractors, maintenance personnel, other persons, and animals, whether authorized or unauthorized by Owner.

2. When work has been damaged by any of foregoing causes, Warranty shall be null and void until such damage has been repaired by Roofing Installer and until cost and expense thereof have been paid by Owner or by another responsible party so designated.
3. Roofing Installer is responsible for damage to work covered by this Warranty but is not liable for consequential damages to building or building contents resulting from leaks or faults or defects of work.
4. During Warranty Period, if Owner allows alteration of work by anyone other than Roofing Installer, including cutting, patching, and maintenance in connection with penetrations, attachment of other work, and positioning of anything on roof, this Warranty shall become null and void on date of said alterations, but only to the extent said alterations affect work covered by this Warranty. If Owner engages Roofing Installer to perform said alterations, Warranty shall not become null and void unless Roofing Installer, before starting said work, shall have notified Owner in writing, showing reasonable cause for claim, that said alterations would likely damage or deteriorate work, thereby reasonably justifying a limitation or termination of this Warranty.
5. During Warranty Period, if original use of roof is changed and it becomes used for, but was not originally specified for, a promenade, work deck, spray-cooled surface, flooded basin, or other use or service more severe than originally specified, this Warranty shall become null and void on date of said change, but only to the extent said change affects work covered by this Warranty.
6. Owner shall promptly notify Roofing Installer of observed, known, or suspected leaks, defects, or deterioration and shall afford reasonable opportunity for Roofing Installer to inspect work and to examine evidence of such leaks, defects, or deterioration.
7. This Warranty is recognized to be the only warranty of Roofing Installer on said work and shall not operate to restrict or cut off Owner from other remedies and resources lawfully available to Owner in cases of roofing failure. Specifically, this Warranty shall not operate to relieve Roofing Installer of responsibility for performance of original work according to requirements of the Contract Documents, regardless of whether Contract was a contract directly with Owner or a subcontract with Owner's General Contractor.

E. IN WITNESS THEREOF, this instrument has been duly executed this <Insert day> day of <Insert month>, <Insert year>.

1. Authorized Signature: <Insert signature>.
2. Name: <Insert name>.
3. Title: <Insert title>.

END OF SECTION 075423

SECTION 07 6200 - SHEET METAL FLASHING AND TRIM

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Formed Products:

- a. Formed roof drainage sheet metal fabrications.
- b. Formed low-slope roof sheet metal fabrications.
- c. Formed equipment support flashing.

B. Related Sections:

1. Division 06 Section "Miscellaneous Rough Carpentry" for wood nailers, curbs, and blocking.
2. Division 07 Section "Polyvinyl-Chloride (PVC) Roofing" for installing sheet metal flashing and trim integral with membrane roofing.
3. Division 07 Section "Metal Wall Panels" for sheet metal flashing and trim integral with metal wall panels.
4. Division 07 Section "Roof Accessories" roof hatches.
5. Division 07 Section "Expansion Control" for manufactured sheet metal expansion-joint covers.

1.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General: Sheet metal flashing and trim assemblies as indicated shall withstand wind loads, structural movement, thermally induced movement, and exposure to weather without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction. Completed sheet metal flashing and trim shall not rattle, leak, or loosen, and shall remain watertight.

- B. Fabricate and install roof edge flashing and copings capable of resisting the following forces according to recommendations in FMG Loss Prevention Data Sheet 1-49:

1. Wind Zone 2: For velocity pressures of 31 to 45 lbf/sq. ft. (1.48 to 2.15 kPa): 90-lbf/sq. ft. (4.31-kPa) perimeter uplift force, 120-lbf/sq. ft. (5.74-kPa) corner uplift force, and 45-lbf/sq. ft. (2.15-kPa) outward force.

- C. Thermal Movements: Provide sheet metal flashing and trim that allows for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes.

1. Temperature Change (Range): 120 deg F (67 deg C), ambient; 180 deg F (100 deg C), material surfaces.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

07 6200 - 1
SHEET METAL FLASHING AND TRIM

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for each manufactured product and accessory.
 - B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation layouts of sheet metal flashing and trim, including plans, elevations, expansion-joint locations, and keyed details. Distinguish between shop- and field-assembled work. Include the following:
 - 1. Identification of material, thickness, weight, and finish for each item and location in Project.
 - 2. Details for forming sheet metal flashing and trim, including profiles, shapes, seams, and dimensions.
 - 3. Details for joining, supporting, and securing sheet metal flashing and trim, including layout of fasteners, cleats, clips, and other attachments. Include pattern of seams.
 - 4. Details of termination points and assemblies, including fixed points.
 - 5. Details of expansion joints and expansion-joint covers, including showing direction of expansion and contraction.
 - 6. Details of edge conditions, including eaves, ridges, valleys, rakes, crickets, and counterflashings as applicable.
 - 7. Details of special conditions.
 - 8. Details of connections to adjoining work.
 - 9. Detail formed flashing and trim at a scale of not less than 1-1/2 inches per 12 inches (1:10).
 - C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of sheet metal flashing, trim, and accessory indicated with factory-applied color finishes involving color selection.
- 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS
- A. Qualification Data: For qualified fabricator.
 - B. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.
- 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS
- A. Maintenance Data: For sheet metal flashing, trim, and accessories to include in maintenance manuals.
- 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE
- A. Fabricator Qualifications: Shop that employs skilled workers who custom fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim similar to that required for this Project and whose products have a record of successful in-service performance.
 - B. Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim Standard: Comply with SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" unless more stringent requirements are specified or shown on Drawings.
 - C. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
 - 1. Meet with Owner, Architect, Owner's insurer if applicable, Installer, and installers whose work interfaces with or affects sheet metal flashing and trim including installers of roofing materials, roof accessories, unit skylights, and roof-mounted equipment.

2. Review methods and procedures related to sheet metal flashing and trim.
3. Examine substrate conditions for compliance with requirements, including flatness and attachment to structural members.
4. Review special roof details, roof drainage, roof penetrations, equipment curbs, and condition of other construction that will affect sheet metal flashing.
5. Document proceedings, including corrective measures and actions required, and furnish copy of record to each participant.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Do not store sheet metal flashing and trim materials in contact with other materials that might cause staining, denting, or other surface damage. Store sheet metal flashing and trim materials away from uncured concrete and masonry.
- B. Protect strippable protective covering on sheet metal flashing and trim from exposure to sunlight and high humidity, except to the extent necessary for the period of sheet metal flashing and trim installation.

1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty on Finishes: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair finish or replace sheet metal flashing and trim that shows evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.
 1. Exposed Panel Finish: Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:
 - a. Color fading more than 5 Hunter units when tested according to ASTM D 2244.
 - b. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested according to ASTM D 4214.
 - c. Cracking, checking, peeling, or failure of paint to adhere to bare metal.
 2. Finish Warranty Period: 20 years from date of Final Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SHEET METALS

- A. General: Protect mechanical and other finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective film before shipping.
- B. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet: Restricted flatness steel sheet, metallic coated by the hot-dip process and prepainted by the coil-coating process to comply with ASTM A 755/A 755M.
 1. Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, G90 (Z275) coating designation; structural quality.
 2. Surface: Smooth, flat.
 3. Exposed Coil-Coated Finish:
 - a. Mica Fluoropolymer: AAMA 621. Two-coat fluoropolymer finish with suspended mica flakes containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat.

Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.

4. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
 5. Concealed Finish: Pretreat with manufacturer's standard white or light-colored acrylic or polyester backer finish, consisting of prime coat and wash coat with a minimum total dry film thickness of 0.5 mil (0.013 mm).
- C. Stainless-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 240/A 240M or ASTM A 666, Type 304, dead soft, fully annealed.
1. Finish: 4 (polished directional satin).
 2. Surface: [Smooth, flat.

2.2 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide materials and types of fasteners, solder, welding rods, protective coatings, separators, sealants, and other miscellaneous items as required for complete sheet metal flashing and trim installation and recommended by manufacturer of primary sheet metal or manufactured item unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Fasteners: Wood screws, annular threaded nails, self-tapping screws, self-locking rivets and bolts, and other suitable fasteners designed to withstand design loads and recommended by manufacturer of primary sheet metal or manufactured item.
1. General: Blind fasteners or self-drilling screws, gasketed, with hex-washer head.
 - a. Exposed Fasteners: Heads matching color of sheet metal using plastic caps or factory-applied coating.
 - b. Blind Fasteners: High-strength aluminum or stainless-steel rivets suitable for metal being fastened.
 - c. Spikes and Ferrules: Same material as gutter; with spike with ferrule matching internal gutter width.
 2. Fasteners for Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Steel Sheet: Hot-dip galvanized steel according to ASTM A 153/A 153M or ASTM F 2329 or Series 300 stainless steel.
- C. Sealant Tape: Pressure-sensitive, 100 percent solids, gray polyisobutylene compound sealant tape with release-paper backing. Provide permanently elastic, nonsag, nontoxic, nonstaining tape 1/2 inch (13 mm) wide and 1/8 inch (3 mm) thick.
- D. Elastomeric Sealant: ASTM C 920, elastomeric polyurethane, polysulfide or silicone polymer sealant; low modulus; of type, grade, class, and use classifications required to seal joints in sheet metal flashing and trim and remain watertight.
- E. Butyl Sealant: ASTM C 1311, single-component, solvent-release butyl rubber sealant; polyisobutylene plasticized; heavy bodied for hooked-type expansion joints with limited movement.
- F. Bituminous Coating: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D 1187.
- G. Asphalt Roofing Cement: ASTM D 4586, asbestos free, of consistency required for application.

2.3 FABRICATION, GENERAL

- A. General: Custom fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim to comply with recommendations in SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" that apply to design, dimensions, geometry, metal thickness, and other characteristics of item indicated. Fabricate items at the shop to greatest extent possible.
 - 1. Fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim in thickness or weight needed to comply with performance requirements, but not less than that specified for each application and metal.
 - 2. Obtain field measurements for accurate fit before shop fabrication.
 - 3. Form sheet metal flashing and trim without excessive oil canning, buckling, and tool marks and true to line and levels indicated, with exposed edges folded back to form hems.
 - 4. Conceal fasteners and expansion provisions where possible. Exposed fasteners are not allowed on faces exposed to view.
- B. Fabrication Tolerances: Fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim that is capable of installation to a tolerance of 1/4 inch in 20 feet (6 mm in 6 m) on slope and location lines as indicated and within 1/8-inch (3-mm) offset of adjoining faces and of alignment of matching profiles.
- C. Sealed Joints: Form nonexpansion but movable joints in metal to accommodate elastomeric sealant.
- D. Expansion Provisions: Where lapped expansion provisions cannot be used, form expansion joints of intermeshing hooked flanges, not less than 1 inch (25 mm) deep, filled with butyl sealant concealed within joints.
- E. Fabricate cleats and attachment devices from same material as accessory being anchored or from compatible, noncorrosive metal.
- F. Fabricate cleats and attachment devices of sizes as recommended by SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" and by FMG Loss Prevention Data Sheet 1-49 for application, but not less than thickness of metal being secured.
- G. Seams: Fabricate nonmoving seams with flat-lock seams. Form seams and seal with elastomeric sealant unless otherwise recommended by sealant manufacturer for intended use. Rivet joints where necessary for strength.
- H. Do not use graphite pencils to mark metal surfaces.

2.4 ROOF DRAINAGE SHEET METAL FABRICATIONS

- A. Hanging Gutters: Fabricate to cross section indicated, complete with end pieces, outlet tubes, and other accessories as required. Fabricate in minimum 96-inch- (2400-mm-) long sections. Furnish flat-stock gutter spacers and gutter brackets fabricated from same metal as gutters, of size recommended by SMACNA but not less than twice the gutter thickness. Fabricate expansion joints, expansion-joint covers, gutter bead reinforcing bars, and gutter accessories from same metal as gutters.
 - 1. Gutter Style: SMACNA designation A.
 - 2. Expansion Joints: Built in.
 - 3. Gutters with Girth up to 15 Inches (380 mm): Fabricate from the following materials:

- a. Galvanized Steel: 0.028 inch (0.56 mm)] thick.
- B. Downspouts: Fabricate rectangular downspouts complete with mitered elbows. Furnish with metal hangers, from same material as downspouts, and anchors.
 - 1. Fabricated Hanger Style: SMACNA figure designation 1-35A.
 - 2. Fabricate from the following materials:
 - a. Galvanized Steel: 0.022 inch (0.56 mm) thick.
- C. Parapet Scuppers: Fabricate scuppers of dimensions indicated on drawings. Fabricate from the following materials:
 - a. Stainless Steel: 0.019 inch (0.48 mm).
- D. Conductor Heads: Fabricate conductor heads with flanged back and stiffened top edge and of dimensions and shape indicated complete with outlet tubes and built-in overflows. Fabricate from the following materials:
 - 1. Galvanized Steel: 0.028 inch (0.71 mm) thick.
- E. Splash Pans: Fabricate from the following materials:
 - a. Stainless Steel: 0.019 inch (0.48 mm).

2.5 LOW-SLOPE ROOF SHEET METAL FABRICATIONS

- A. Copings: Fabricate in minimum 96-inch- (2400-mm-) long, but not exceeding 10-foot- (3-m-) long, sections. Fabricate joint plates of same thickness as copings. Furnish with continuous cleats to support edge of external leg and drill elongated holes for fasteners on interior leg. Miter corners, seal, and solder or weld watertight.
 - 1. Coping Profile: SMACNA figure designation 3-4A.
 - 2. Joint Style: Butt, with 12-inch- (300-mm-) wide, concealed backup plate.
 - 3. Fabricate from the following materials:
 - a. Galvanized Steel: 0.040 inch (1.02 mm)] thick.
- B. Base Flashing: Fabricate from the following materials:
 - 1. Galvanized Steel: 0.028 inch (0.71 mm) thick.
- C. Counter-flashing: Fabricate from the following materials:
 - 1. Galvanized Steel: 0.0238inch (0.60 mm) thick.
- D. Flashing Receivers: Fabricate from the following materials:
 - 1. Galvanized Steel: 0.022 inch (0.56 mm) thick.
- E. Apron, : Fabricate from the following materials:
 - 1. Galvanized Steel: 0.022 inch (0.56 mm) thick.

- F. Drip Edges: Fabricate from the following materials:
 - 1. Galvanized Steel: 0.022 inch (0.56 mm) thick.
- G. Eave, Rake-Flashing: Fabricate from the following materials:
 - 1. Galvanized Steel: 0.022 inch (0.56 mm) thick.

2.6 MISCELLANEOUS SHEET METAL FABRICATIONS

- A. Equipment Support Flashing: Fabricate from the following materials:
 - 1. Galvanized Steel: 0.028 inch (0.71 mm) thick.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, to verify actual locations, dimensions and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
 - 1. Verify compliance with requirements for installation tolerances of substrates.
 - 2. Verify that substrate is sound, dry, smooth, clean, sloped for drainage, and securely anchored.
- B. For the record, prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. General: Anchor sheet metal flashing and trim and other components of the Work securely in place, with provisions for thermal and structural movement. Use fasteners, solder, welding rods, protective coatings, separators, sealants, and other miscellaneous items as required to complete sheet metal flashing and trim system.
 - 1. Install sheet metal flashing and trim true to line and levels indicated. Provide uniform, neat seams with minimum exposure of solder, welds, and sealant.
 - 2. Install sheet metal flashing and trim to fit substrates and to result in watertight performance. Verify shapes and dimensions of surfaces to be covered before fabricating sheet metal.
 - 3. Space cleats not more than 12 inches (300 mm) apart. Anchor each cleat with two fasteners. Bend tabs over fasteners.
 - 4. Install exposed sheet metal flashing and trim without excessive oil canning, buckling, and tool marks.
 - 5. Install sealant tape where indicated.
 - 6. Torch cutting of sheet metal flashing and trim is not permitted.
 - 7. Do not use graphite pencils to mark metal surfaces.

- B. Metal Protection: Where dissimilar metals will contact each other or corrosive substrates, protect against galvanic action by painting contact surfaces with bituminous coating or by other permanent separation as recommended by SMACNA.
- C. Expansion Provisions: Provide for thermal expansion of exposed flashing and trim. Space movement joints at a maximum of 10 feet (3 m) with no joints allowed within 24 inches (600 mm) of corner or intersection. Where lapped expansion provisions cannot be used or would not be sufficiently watertight, form expansion joints of intermeshing hooked flanges, not less than 1 inch (25 mm) deep, filled with sealant concealed within joints.
- D. Fastener Sizes: Use fasteners of sizes that will penetrate wood sheathing not less than 1-1/4 inches (32 mm) for nails and not less than 3/4 inch (19 mm) for wood screws and metal decking not less than recommended by fastener manufacturer to achieve maximum pull-out resistance.
- E. Seal joints as shown and as required for watertight construction.
 - 1. Where sealant-filled joints are used, embed hooked flanges of joint members not less than 1 inch (25 mm) into sealant. Form joints to completely conceal sealant. When ambient temperature at time of installation is moderate, between 40 and 70 deg F (4 and 21 deg C), set joint members for 50 percent movement each way. Adjust setting proportionately for installation at higher ambient temperatures. Do not install sealant-type joints at temperatures below 40 deg F (4 deg C).
 - 2. Prepare joints and apply sealants to comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants."

3.3 ROOF DRAINAGE SYSTEM INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install sheet metal roof drainage items to produce complete roof drainage system according to SMACNA recommendations and as indicated. Coordinate installation of roof perimeter flashing with installation of roof drainage system.
- B. Hanging Gutters: Join sections with riveted and soldered joints or with lapped joints sealed with sealant. Provide for thermal expansion. Attach gutters at eave or fascia to firmly anchored gutter brackets spaced not more than 36 inches (900 mm) apart. Provide end closures and seal watertight with sealant. Slope to downspouts.
 - 1. Fasten gutter spacers to front and back of gutter.
 - 2. Anchor back of gutter that extends onto roof deck with cleats spaced not more than 24 inches (600 mm) apart.
 - 3. Install gutter with expansion joints at locations indicated, but not exceeding, 50 feet (15.24 m) apart. Install expansion-joint caps.
- C. Downspouts: Join sections with 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) telescoping joints.
 - 1. Provide hangers with fasteners designed to hold downspouts securely to walls. Locate hangers at top and bottom and at approximately 60 inches (1500 mm) o.c. in between.
 - 2. Provide elbows at base of downspout to direct water away from building.
- D. Splash Pans: Install where downspouts discharge on low-slope roofs. Set in elastomeric sealant compatible with roofing membrane.
- E. Parapet Scuppers: Install scuppers where indicated through parapet. Continuously support scupper, set to correct elevation, and seal flanges to interior wall face, over cants or tapered edge strips, and under roofing membrane.

3.4 ROOF FLASHING INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install sheet metal flashing and trim to comply with performance requirements, sheet metal manufacturer's written installation instructions, and SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual." Provide concealed fasteners where possible, set units true to line, and level as indicated. Install work with laps, joints, and seams that will be permanently watertight and weather resistant.
- B. Roof Edge Flashing: Anchor to resist uplift and outward forces according to recommendations in FMG Loss Prevention Data Sheet 1-49 for specified wind zone and as indicated. Interlock bottom edge of roof edge flashing with continuous cleat anchored to substrate at 16-inch (400-mm) centers.
- C. Copings: Anchor to resist uplift and outward forces according to recommendations in FMG Loss Prevention Data Sheet 1-49 for specified wind zone and as indicated.
 - 1. Interlock exterior bottom edge of coping with continuous cleat anchored to substrate at 16-inch (400-mm) centers.
 - 2. Anchor interior leg of coping with screw fasteners and washers at 20-inch (500-mm) centers.
- D. Counter-flashing: Coordinate installation of counter-flashing with installation of base flashing. Insert counter-flashing in reglets or receivers and fit tightly to base flashing. Extend counter-flashing 4 inches (100 mm) over base flashing. Lap counter-flashing joints a minimum of 4 inches (100 mm) and bed with sealant. Secure in a waterproof manner by means of interlocking folded seam or blind rivets and sealant.
- E. Roof-Penetration Flashing: Coordinate installation of roof-penetration flashing with installation of roofing and other items penetrating roof. Seal with elastomeric sealant and clamp flashing to pipes that penetrate roof.

3.5 WALL FLASHING INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install sheet metal wall flashing to intercept and exclude penetrating moisture according to SMACNA recommendations and as indicated. Coordinate installation of wall flashing with installation of wall-opening components such as windows, doors, and louvers.

3.6 MISCELLANEOUS FLASHING INSTALLATION

- A. Equipment Support Flashing: Coordinate installation of equipment support flashing with installation of roofing and equipment. Weld or seal flashing with elastomeric sealant to equipment support member.

3.7 ERECTION TOLERANCES

- A. Installation Tolerances: Shim and align sheet metal flashing and trim within installed tolerance of 1/4 inch in 20 feet (6 mm in 6 m) on slope and location lines as indicated and within 1/8-inch (3-mm) offset of adjoining faces and of alignment of matching profiles.

3.8 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

April 2015

A-012651
State of Kansas - Energy & Service Center

- A. Clean exposed metal surfaces of substances that interfere with uniform oxidation and weathering.
- B. Clean off excess sealants.
- C. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films as sheet metal flashing and trim are installed unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written installation instructions. On completion of installation, remove unused materials and clean finished surfaces. Maintain in a clean condition during construction.
- D. Replace sheet metal flashing and trim that have been damaged or that have deteriorated beyond successful repair by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

END OF SECTION 07 6200

07 6200 - 10
SHEET METAL FLASHING AND TRIM

SECTION 07 7200 - ROOF ACCESSORIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Roof hatches.
- B. Related Sections:
 - 1. Division 05 Section "Metal Fabrications" for metal vertical ladders, and stairs for access to roof hatches.
 - 2. Division 07 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim" for shop- and field-formed metal flashing, roof-drainage systems, roof expansion-joint covers, and miscellaneous sheet metal trim and accessories.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General Performance: Roof accessories shall withstand exposure to weather and resist thermally induced movement without failure, rattling, leaking, or fastener disengagement due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of roof accessory indicated. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
- B. Shop Drawings: For roof accessories. Include plans, elevations, keyed details, and attachments to other work. Indicate dimensions, loadings, and special conditions. Distinguish between plant- and field-assembled work.
- C. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified, prepared on Samples of size to adequately show color.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Roof plans, drawn to scale, and coordinating penetrations and roof-mounted items. Show the following:
 - 1. Size and location of roof accessories specified in this Section.
 - 2. Method of attaching roof accessories to roof or building structure.

07 7200 - 1
ROOF ACCESSORIES

3. Other roof-mounted items including mechanical and electrical equipment, ductwork, piping, and conduit.
4. Required clearances.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For roof accessories to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of roof accessories with roofing membrane and base flashing and interfacing and adjoining construction to provide a leak-proof, weather-tight, secure, and noncorrosive installation.
- B. Coordinate dimensions with rough-in information or Shop Drawings of equipment to be supported.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 METAL MATERIALS

- A. Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, G90 (Z275) coating designation.
 1. Baked-Enamel or Powder-Coat Finish: Immediately after cleaning and pretreating, apply manufacturer's standard two-coat, baked-on finish consisting of prime coat and thermosetting topcoat, with a minimum dry film thickness of 1 mil (0.025 mm) for topcoat. Comply with coating manufacturer's written instructions for applying and baking to achieve a minimum dry film thickness of 2 mils (0.05 mm).
- B. Steel Shapes: ASTM A 36/A 36M, hot-dip galvanized according to ASTM A 123/A 123M unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Steel Tube: ASTM A 500, round tube.
- D. Galvanized-Steel Tube: ASTM A 500, round tube, hot-dip galvanized according to ASTM A 123/A 123M.
- E. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, galvanized.

2.2 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide materials and types of fasteners, protective coatings, sealants, and other miscellaneous items required by manufacturer for a complete installation.
- B. Polyisocyanurate Board Insulation: ASTM C 1289, thickness as indicated.
- C. Bituminous Coating: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D 1187.

- D. Fasteners: Roof accessory manufacturer's recommended fasteners suitable for application and metals being fastened. Match finish of exposed fasteners with finish of material being fastened. Provide nonremovable fastener heads to exterior exposed fasteners. Furnish the following unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. Fasteners for Zinc-Coated or Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel: Series 300 stainless steel or hot-dip zinc-coated steel according to ASTM A 153/A 153M or ASTM F 2329.
- E. Gaskets: Manufacturer's standard tubular or fingered design of neoprene, EPDM, PVC, or silicone or a flat design of foam rubber, sponge neoprene, or cork.
- F. Elastomeric Sealant: ASTM C 920, elastomeric polyurethane or silicone polymer sealant as recommended by roof accessory manufacturer for installation indicated; low modulus; of type, grade, class, and use classifications required to seal joints and remain watertight.
- G. Butyl Sealant: ASTM C 1311, single-component, solvent-release butyl rubber sealant; polyisobutylene plasticized; heavy bodied for expansion joints with limited movement.
- H. Asphalt Roofing Cement: ASTM D 4586, asbestos free, of consistency required for application.

2.3 ROOF HATCH

- A. Roof Hatches: Fabricate roof hatches with insulated double-wall lids and insulated double-wall curb frame with integral deck mounting flange and lid frame counter-flashing. Fabricate with welded or mechanically fastened and sealed corner joints. Provide continuous weather-tight perimeter gasketing and equip with corrosion-resistant or hot-dip galvanized hardware.
 - 1. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Babcock-Davis.
 - b. **Bilco Company** (The).
 - c. Dur-Red Products.
 - d. O'Keeffe's Inc.
 - e. Nystrom (Basis of Design)
- B. Type and Size: Single-leaf lid, 30 by 36 inches (750 by 900 mm).
- C. Loads: Fabricate roof hatches to withstand 40-lbf/sq. ft. (1.9-kPa) external and 20-lbf/sq. ft. (0.95-kPa) internal loads.
- D. Hatch Material: Zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet, [0.079 inch (2.01 mm) thick].
 - 1. Finish: Baked enamel or powder coat.
 - 2. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
- E. Construction:
 - 1. Insulation: Cellulosic-fiber and Glass-fiber board.
 - 2. Hatch Lid: Opaque, insulated, and double walled, with manufacturer's standard metal liner of same material and finish as outer metal lid.
 - 3. Curb Liner: Manufacturer's standard, of same material and finish as metal curb.
 - 4. Fabricate curbs to minimum height of 12 inches (300 mm) unless otherwise indicated.

- F. Hardware: Galvanized steel spring latch with turn handles, butt- or pintle-type hinge system, and padlock hasps inside and outside.
- G. Safety Railing System: Roof-hatch manufacturer's standard system including rails, clamps, fasteners, and accessories required for a complete installation; attached to each leaf in a position that will place rails at an approximate 45 degree angle when leafs are in the open position.
 - 1. Test Load: same as guardrails in section 055213.
 - 2. Height: 42 inches (1060 mm) above finished roof deck.
 - 3. Pipe or Tube: 1-1/4-inch (31-mm) ID galvanized pipe or 1-5/8-inch (41-mm) OD galvanized tube.
 - 4. Flat Bar: 2-inch- (50-mm-) high by 3/8-inch- (9-mm-) thick galvanized steel.
 - 5. Chain Passway Enclosure: Galvanized proof coil chain with quick link on fixed end.
 - 6. Pipe Ends and Tops: Covered or plugged with weather-resistant material.
 - 7. Provide weep holes or another means to drain entrapped water in hollow sections of handrail and railing members that are exposed to exterior or to moisture from condensation or other sources.
 - 8. Fabricate joints that will be exposed to weather in a watertight manner.
 - 9. Close exposed ends of handrail and railing members with prefabricated end fittings.
 - 10. Fasteners: Manufacturer's standard.

2.4 FLOOR ACCESS DOOR

A.

2.5 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- B. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, to verify actual locations, dimensions, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Verify that substrate is sound, dry, smooth, clean, sloped for drainage, and securely anchored.
- C. Verify dimensions of roof openings for roof accessories. Coordinate installation with access stairway and stairway railings.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install roof accessories according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. Install roof accessories level, plumb, true to line and elevation, and without warping, jogs in alignment, excessive oil canning, buckling, or tool marks.
 - 2. Anchor roof accessories securely in place so they are capable of resisting indicated loads.
 - 3. Use fasteners, separators, sealants, and other miscellaneous items as required to complete installation of roof accessories and fit them to substrates.
 - 4. Install roof accessories to resist exposure to weather without failing, rattling, leaking, or loosening of fasteners and seals.
- B. Metal Protection: Protect metals against galvanic action by separating dissimilar metals from contact with each other or with corrosive substrates by painting contact surfaces with bituminous coating or by other permanent separation as recommended by manufacturer.
- C. Roof-Hatch Installation:
 - 1. Install roof hatch so top surface of hatch curb is level.
 - 2. Verify that roof hatch operates properly. Clean, lubricate, and adjust operating mechanism and hardware.
- D. Seal joints with elastomeric or butyl sealant as required by roof accessory manufacturer.

3.3 REPAIR AND CLEANING

- A. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and repair galvanizing according to ASTM A 780.
- B. Clean exposed surfaces according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. Clean off excess sealants.
- D. Replace roof accessories that have been damaged or that cannot be successfully repaired by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

END OF SECTION 07 7200

SECTION 07 8413 - PENETRATION FIRESTOPPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Penetrations in fire-resistance-rated walls.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Product Schedule and Assembly Shop Drawings: For each penetration firestopping system assembly. Include location and design designation of qualified testing and inspecting agency.
 - 1. Each application submitted shall be accurately marked to show the actual test/listed assembly to be provided, including the construction surrounding the penetration, sleeves, firestopping products and associated materials, and any options allowed and selected under the tested/listed assembly. The marking shall not use color highlighting and the data shall be marked to indicate materials and assembly options not applicable, by marking out such non-applicable (non-proposed) requirements, while still having the marked out item readable through the strike-out. If the submitted application is copied directly from a UL directory illustration or similar publication with small format lettering, enlarge the copy to be readable from a distance of 12 inches without magnification to the Architect's satisfaction.
 - 2. Where Project conditions require modification to a qualified testing and inspecting agency's illustration for a particular penetration firestopping condition, submit illustration, with modifications marked, approved by penetration firestopping manufacturer's fire-protection engineer as an engineering judgment or equivalent fire-resistance-rated assembly.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.
- B. Installer Certificates: From Installer indicating penetration firestopping has been installed in compliance with requirements and manufacturer's written recommendations.
- C. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency, for penetration firestopping.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: A firm that has been approved by FM Global according to FM Global 4991, "Approval of Firestop Contractors," or been evaluated by UL and found to comply with its "Qualified Firestop Contractor Program Requirements."
- B. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Penetration firestopping shall comply with the following requirements:
 - 1. Penetration firestopping tests are performed by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 2. Penetration firestopping is identical to those tested per testing standard referenced in "Penetration Firestopping" Article. Provide rated systems complying with the following requirements:
 - a. Penetration firestopping products bear classification marking of qualified testing and inspecting agency.
 - b. Classification markings on penetration firestopping correspond to designations listed by the following:
 - 1) UL in its "Fire Resistance Directory."

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install penetration firestopping when ambient or substrate temperatures are outside limits permitted by penetration firestopping manufacturers or when substrates are wet because of rain, frost, condensation, or other causes.
- B. Install and cure penetration firestopping per manufacturer's written instructions using natural means of ventilations or, where this is inadequate, forced-air circulation.

1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate construction of openings and penetrating items to ensure that penetration firestopping is installed according to specified requirements.
- B. Coordinate sizing of sleeves, openings, core-drilled holes, or cut openings to accommodate penetration firestopping.
- C. Notify contractor's testing agency at least seven days in advance of penetration firestopping installations; confirm dates and times on day preceding each series of installations.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. A/D Fire Protection Systems Inc.
2. Grace Construction Products.
3. Hilti, Inc.
4. Johns Manville.
5. Nelson Firestop Products.
6. NUCO Inc.
7. Passive Fire Protection Partners.
8. RectorSeal Corporation.
9. Specified Technologies Inc.
10. 3M Fire Protection Products.
11. Tremco, Inc.; Tremco Fire Protection Systems Group.
12. USG Corporation.

2.2 PENETRATION FIRESTOPPING

- A. Provide penetration firestopping that is produced and installed to resist spread of fire according to requirements indicated, resist passage of smoke and other gases, and maintain original fire-resistance rating of construction penetrated. Penetration firestopping systems shall be compatible with one another, with the substrates forming openings, and with penetrating items if any.
- B. Penetrations in Fire-Resistance-Rated Walls: Provide penetration firestopping with ratings determined per ASTM E 814 or UL 1479, based on testing at a positive pressure differential of 0.01-inch wg (2.49 Pa).
 1. Fire-resistance-rated walls include fire-barrier walls.
 2. F-Rating: Not less than the fire-resistance rating of constructions penetrated.
- C. Penetrations in Horizontal Assemblies: Provide penetration firestopping with ratings determined per ASTM E 814 or UL 1479, based on testing at a positive pressure differential of 0.01-inch wg.
 1. Horizontal assemblies include [floors] [floor/ceiling assemblies] [and] [ceiling membranes of roof/ceiling assemblies].
 2. F-Rating: At least 1 hour, but not less than the fire-resistance rating of constructions penetrated.
- D. Penetrations in Smoke Barriers: Provide penetration firestopping with ratings determined per UL 1479.
 1. L-Rating: Not exceeding 5.0 cfm/sq. ft. of penetration opening at 0.30-inch wg at both ambient and elevated temperatures.
- E. W-Rating: Provide penetration firestopping showing no evidence of water leakage when tested according to UL 1479.
- F. Exposed Penetration Firestopping: Provide products with flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of less than 25 and 450, respectively, as determined per ASTM E 84.
- G. VOC Content: Penetration firestopping sealants and sealant primers shall comply with the following limits for VOC content when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24):
 1. Sealants: 250 g/L.
 2. Sealant Primers for Nonporous Substrates: 250 g/L.

3. Sealant Primers for Porous Substrates: 775 g/L.
- H. Low-Emitting Materials: Penetration firestopping sealants and sealant primers shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- I. Accessories: Provide components for each penetration firestopping system that are needed to install fill materials and to maintain ratings required. Use only those components specified by penetration firestopping manufacturer and approved by qualified testing and inspecting agency for firestopping indicated.
 1. Permanent forming/damming/backing materials, including the following:
 - a. Slag-wool-fiber or rock-wool-fiber insulation.
 - b. Sealants used in combination with other forming/damming/backing materials to prevent leakage of fill materials in liquid state.
 - c. Fire-rated form board.
 - d. Fillers for sealants.
 2. Temporary forming materials.
 3. Substrate primers.
 4. Collars.
 5. Steel sleeves.

2.3 FILL MATERIALS

- A. Latex Sealants: Single-component latex formulations that do not re-emulsify after cure during exposure to moisture.
- B. Firestop Devices: Factory-assembled collars formed from galvanized steel and lined with intumescent material sized to fit specific diameter of penetrant.
- C. Intumescent Composite Sheets: Rigid panels consisting of aluminum-foil-faced elastomeric sheet bonded to galvanized-steel sheet.
- D. Intumescent Putties: Nonhardening dielectric, water-resistant putties containing no solvents, inorganic fibers, or silicone compounds.
- E. Intumescent Wrap Strips: Single-component intumescent elastomeric sheets with aluminum foil on one side.
- F. Mortars: Prepackaged dry mixes consisting of a blend of inorganic binders, hydraulic cement, fillers, and lightweight aggregate formulated for mixing with water at Project site to form a nonshrinking, homogeneous mortar.
- G. Pillows/Bags: Reusable heat-expanding pillows/bags consisting of glass-fiber cloth cases filled with a combination of mineral-fiber, water-insoluble expansion agents, and fire-retardant additives. Where exposed, cover openings with steel-reinforcing wire mesh to protect pillows/bags from being easily removed.
- H. Silicone Foams: Multicomponent, silicone-based liquid elastomers that, when mixed, expand and cure in place to produce a flexible, nonshrinking foam.

- I. Silicone Sealants: Single-component, silicone-based, neutral-curing elastomeric sealants of grade indicated below:
 1. Grade: Pourable (self-leveling) formulation for openings in floors and other horizontal surfaces, and nonsag formulation for openings in vertical and sloped surfaces, unless indicated firestopping limits use of nonsag grade for both opening conditions.

2.4 MIXING

- A. For those products requiring mixing before application, comply with penetration firestopping manufacturer's written instructions for accurate proportioning of materials, water (if required), type of mixing equipment, selection of mixer speeds, mixing containers, mixing time, and other items or procedures needed to produce products of uniform quality with optimum performance characteristics for application indicated.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for opening configurations, penetrating items, substrates, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Cleaning: Clean out openings immediately before installing penetration firestopping to comply with manufacturer's written instructions and with the following requirements:
 1. Remove from surfaces of opening substrates and from penetrating items foreign materials that could interfere with adhesion of penetration firestopping.
 2. Clean opening substrates and penetrating items to produce clean, sound surfaces capable of developing optimum bond with penetration firestopping. Remove loose particles remaining from cleaning operation.
 3. Remove laitance and form-release agents from concrete.
- B. Priming: Prime substrates where recommended in writing by manufacturer using that manufacturer's recommended products and methods. Confine primers to areas of bond; do not allow spillage and migration onto exposed surfaces.
- C. Masking Tape: Use masking tape to prevent penetration firestopping from contacting adjoining surfaces that will remain exposed on completion of the Work and that would otherwise be permanently stained or damaged by such contact or by cleaning methods used to remove stains. Remove tape as soon as possible without disturbing firestopping's seal with substrates.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install penetration firestopping to comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions and published drawings for products and applications indicated.

- B. Install forming materials and other accessories of types required to support fill materials during their application and in the position needed to produce cross-sectional shapes and depths required to achieve fire ratings indicated.
 - 1. After installing fill materials and allowing them to fully cure, remove combustible forming materials and other accessories not indicated as permanent components of firestopping.
- C. Install fill materials for firestopping by proven techniques to produce the following results:
 - 1. Fill voids and cavities formed by openings, forming materials, accessories, and penetrating items as required to achieve fire-resistance ratings indicated.
 - 2. Apply materials so they contact and adhere to substrates formed by openings and penetrating items.
 - 3. For fill materials that will remain exposed after completing the Work, finish to produce smooth, uniform surfaces that are flush with adjoining finishes.

3.4 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify penetration firestopping with preprinted metal or plastic labels. Attach labels permanently to surfaces adjacent to and within 6 inches (150 mm) of firestopping edge so labels will be visible to anyone seeking to remove penetrating items or firestopping. Use mechanical fasteners or self-adhering-type labels with adhesives capable of permanently bonding labels to surfaces on which labels are placed. Include the following information on labels:
 - 1. The words "Warning - Penetration Firestopping - Do Not Disturb. Notify Building Management of Any Damage."
 - 2. Contractor's name, address, and phone number.
 - 3. Designation of applicable testing and inspecting agency.
 - 4. Date of installation.
 - 5. Manufacturer's name.
 - 6. Installer's name.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Where deficiencies are found or penetration firestopping is damaged or removed because of testing, repair or replace penetration firestopping to comply with requirements.
- C. Proceed with enclosing penetration firestopping with other construction only after inspection reports are issued and installations comply with requirements.

3.6 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean off excess fill materials adjacent to openings as the Work progresses by methods and with cleaning materials that are approved in writing by penetration firestopping manufacturers and that do not damage materials in which openings occur.
- B. Provide final protection and maintain conditions during and after installation that ensure that penetration firestopping is without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion. If, despite such protection, damage or deterioration occurs, immediately cut out and remove

April 2015

A-012651
State of Kansas - Energy & Service Center

damaged or deteriorated penetration firestopping and install new materials to produce systems complying with specified requirements.

END OF SECTION 07 8413

07 8413 - 7
PENETRATION FIRESTOPPING

SECTION 078443 - JOINT FIRESTOPPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes fire-resistive joint systems for the following:
 - 1. Joints in or between fire-resistance-rated constructions.
 - 2. Joints at exterior curtain-wall/floor intersections.
 - 3. Joints in smoke barriers.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
 - 1. Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for penetrations in fire-resistance-rated walls, horizontal assemblies, and smoke barriers[**and for wall identification**].
 - 2. Section 079500 "Expansion Control" for fire-resistive architectural joint systems.
 - 3. Section 092216 "Non-Structural Metal Framing" for firestop tracks for metal-framed partition heads.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General: Provide fire-resistive joint systems that are produced and installed to resist spread of fire according to requirements indicated, resist passage of smoke and other gases, and maintain original fire-resistance rating of assembly in which fire-resistive joint systems are installed.
- B. Joint Systems in and between Fire-Resistance-Rated Constructions: Provide systems with assembly ratings equaling or exceeding the fire-resistance ratings of construction that they join, and with movement capabilities and L-ratings indicated as determined by UL 2079.
 - 1. Load-bearing capabilities as determined by evaluation during the time of test.
- C. For fire-resistive systems exposed to view, provide products with flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of less than 25 and 450, respectively, as determined per ASTM E 84.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: For each fire-resistive joint system, show each kind of construction condition in which joints are installed; also show relationships to adjoining construction. Include fire-resistive joint system design designation of testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction that demonstrates compliance with requirements for each condition indicated.
 - 1. Submit documentation, including illustrations, from a qualified testing and inspecting agency that is applicable to each fire-resistive joint system configuration for construction and penetrating items.

07 8446 - 1
JOINT FIRESTOPPING

- C. Product Certificates: For each type of fire-resistive joint system, signed by product manufacturer.
 - D. Qualification Data: For Installer.
 - E. Evaluation Reports: Evidence of fire-resistive joint systems' compliance with ICBO ES AC30, from the ICBO Evaluation Service.
 - F. Research/Evaluation Reports: For each type of fire-resistive joint system.
- 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE
- A. Installer Qualifications: A firm that has been approved by FMG according to FMG 4991, "Approval of Firestop Contractors."
 - B. Installation Responsibility: Assign installation of through-penetration firestop systems and fire-resistive joint systems in Project to a single qualified installer.
 - C. Source Limitations: Obtain fire-resistive joint systems, for each kind of joint and construction condition indicated, through one source from a single manufacturer.
 - D. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Provide fire-resistive joint systems that comply with the following requirements and those specified in Part 1 "Performance Requirements" Article:
 - 1. Fire-resistance tests are performed by a qualified testing and inspecting agency. A qualified testing and inspecting agency is UL or another agency performing testing and follow-up inspection services for fire-resistive joint systems acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 2. Fire-resistive joint systems are identical to those tested per methods indicated in Part 1 "Performance Requirements" Article and comply with the following:
 - a. Fire-resistive joint system products bear classification marking of qualified testing and inspecting agency.
 - b. Fire-resistive joint systems correspond to those indicated by referencing system designations of the qualified testing and inspecting agency.
- 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING
- A. Deliver fire-resistive joint system products to Project site in original, unopened containers or packages with qualified testing and inspecting agency's classification marking applicable to Project and with intact and legible manufacturers' labels identifying product and manufacturer, date of manufacture, lot number, shelf life, curing time, and mixing instructions for multicomponent materials.
 - B. Store and handle materials for fire-resistive joint systems to prevent their deterioration or damage due to moisture, temperature changes, contaminants, or other causes.
- 1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS
- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install fire-resistive joint systems when ambient or substrate temperatures are outside limits permitted by fire-resistive joint system manufacturers or when substrates are wet due to rain, frost, condensation, or other causes.

- B. Ventilate fire-resistive joint systems per manufacturer's written instructions by natural means or, if this is inadequate, forced-air circulation.

1.8 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate construction of joints to ensure that fire-resistive joint systems are installed according to specified requirements.
- B. Coordinate sizing of joints to accommodate fire-resistive joint systems.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics:
 - 1. Perform joint firestopping system tests by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 2. Test per testing standards referenced in "Joint Firestopping Systems" Article. Provide rated systems complying with the following requirements:
 - a. Joint firestopping systems shall bear classification marking of a qualified testing agency.
 - 1) UL in its "Fire Resistance Directory."
 - 2) Intertek Group in its "Directory of Listed Building Products."

2.2 JOINT FIRESTOPPING

- A. Joint Firestopping Systems: Systems that resist spread of fire, passage of smoke and other gases, and maintain original fire-resistance rating of assemblies in or between which joint firestopping systems are installed. Joint firestopping systems shall accommodate building movements without impairing their ability to resist the passage of fire and hot gases.
- B. Joints in or between Fire-Resistance-Rated Construction: Provide joint firestopping systems with ratings determined per ASTM E 1966 or UL 2079.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, **provide products by one of the following:**
 - a. 3M Fire Protection Products.
 - b. A/D Fire Protection Systems Inc.
 - c. BlazeFrame Industries.
 - d. Grabber Construction Products.
 - e. Hilti, Inc.
 - f. Metal-Lite.
 - g. Nelson Firestop; a brand of Emerson Industrial Automation.
 - h. NUCO Inc.
 - i. Passive Fire Protection Partners.
 - j. RectorSeal.
 - k. Roxul Inc.
 - l. Specified Technologies, Inc.
 - m. Thermafiber, Inc.; an Owens Corning company.
 - n. Tremco, Inc.
 - 2. Fire-Resistance Rating: Equal to or exceeding the fire-resistance rating of the wall, floor, or roof in or between which it is installed.

- C. Joints in Smoke Barriers: Provide fire-resistive joint systems with ratings determined per UL 2079 based on testing at a positive pressure differential of 0.30-inch wg .
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, **provide products by one of the following:**
 - a. 3M Fire Protection Products.
 - b. A/D Fire Protection Systems Inc.
 - c. Hilti, Inc.
 - d. Nelson Firestop; a brand of Emerson Industrial Automation.
 - e. NUCO Inc.
 - f. Passive Fire Protection Partners.
 - g. RectorSeal.
 - h. Roxul Inc.
 - i. Specified Technologies, Inc.
 - j. Thermafiber, Inc.; an Owens Corning company.
 - k. Tremco, Inc.
 2. L-Rating: Not exceeding 5.0 cfm/ft. of joint at both ambient and elevated temperatures.
- D. Exposed Joint Firestopping Systems: Flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of less than 25 and 450, respectively, as determined per ASTM E 84.
1. Sealant shall have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less.
 2. Sealant shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers.
- E. Accessories: Provide components of fire-resistive joint systems, including primers and forming materials, that are needed to install elastomeric fill materials and to maintain ratings required. Use only components specified by joint firestopping system manufacturer and approved by the qualified testing agency for conditions indicated.

2.3 FIRE-RESISTIVE JOINT SYSTEMS

- A. Compatibility: Provide fire-resistive joint systems that are compatible with joint substrates, under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by fire-resistive joint system manufacturer based on testing and field experience.
- B. Accessories: Provide components of fire-resistive joint systems, including primers and forming materials, that are needed to install fill materials and to comply with Part 1 "Performance Requirements" Article. Use only components specified by fire-resistive joint system manufacturer and approved by the qualified testing and inspecting agency for systems indicated.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for joint configurations, substrates, and other conditions affecting performance of work.

1. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Cleaning: Clean joints immediately before installing fire-resistive joint systems to comply with fire-resistive joint system manufacturer's written instructions and the following requirements:
 1. Remove from surfaces of joint substrates foreign materials that could interfere with adhesion of fill materials.
 2. Clean joint substrates to produce clean, sound surfaces capable of developing optimum bond with fill materials. Remove loose particles remaining from cleaning operation.
 3. Remove laitance and form-release agents from concrete.
- B. Priming: Prime substrates where recommended in writing by fire-resistive joint system manufacturer using that manufacturer's recommended products and methods. Confine primers to areas of bond; do not allow spillage and migration onto exposed surfaces.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install fire-resistive joint systems to comply with Part 1 "Performance Requirements" Article and fire-resistive joint system manufacturer's written installation instructions for products and applications indicated.
- B. Install forming/packing/backing materials and other accessories of types required to support fill materials during their application and in position needed to produce cross-sectional shapes and depths required to achieve fire ratings indicated.
- C. Install fill materials for fire-resistive joint systems by proven techniques to produce the following results:
 1. Fill voids and cavities formed by openings and forming/packing/backing materials as required to achieve fire-resistance ratings indicated.
 2. Apply fill materials so they contact and adhere to substrates formed by joints.
 3. For fill materials that will remain exposed after completing Work, finish to produce smooth, uniform surfaces that are flush with adjoining finishes.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Inspecting Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections according to ASTM E 2393.
- B. Where deficiencies are found or joint firestopping systems are damaged or removed due to testing, repair or replace joint firestopping systems so they comply with requirements.
- C. Proceed with enclosing joint firestopping systems with other construction only after inspection reports are issued and installations comply with requirements.

3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTING

- A. Clean off excess fill materials adjacent to joints as Work progresses by methods and with cleaning materials that are approved in writing by fire-resistive joint system manufacturers and that do not damage materials in which openings occur.

- B. Provide final protection and maintain conditions during and after installation that ensure fire-resistive joint systems are without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion. If damage or deterioration occurs despite such protection, cut out and remove damaged or deteriorated fire-resistive joint systems immediately and install new materials to produce fire-resistive joint systems complying with specified requirements.

3.6 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Joint Identification: Identify joint firestopping systems with legible metal or plastic labels. Attach labels permanently to surfaces adjacent to and within 6 inches of joint edge so labels are visible to anyone seeking to remove or joint firestopping system. Use mechanical fasteners or self-adhering-type labels with adhesives capable of permanently bonding labels to surfaces on which labels are placed. Include the following information on labels:
 - 1. The words "Warning - Joint Firestopping - Do Not Disturb. Notify Building Management of Any Damage."
 - 2. Contractor's name, address, and phone number.
 - 3. Designation of applicable testing agency.
 - 4. Date of installation.
 - 5. Manufacturer's name.

3.7 FIRE-RESISTIVE JOINT SYSTEM SCHEDULE

- A. Designation System for Joints in or between Fire-Resistance-Rated Constructions: Provide alphanumeric systems listed in UL's "Fire Resistance Directory" under Product Category XHBN.
- B. Floor-to-Wall Fire-Resistive Joint Systems:
 - 1. UL-Classified Systems: As recommended by manufacturer for application indicated.
 - 2. Assembly Rating: 1 hour and 2 hours as indicated on Drawings.
 - 3. Nominal Joint Width: As indicated.
 - 4. Movement Capabilities: Class I - 100 percent.
- C. Head-of-Wall Fire-Resistive Joint Systems:
 - 1. UL-Classified Systems: As recommended by manufacturer for application indicated.
 - 2. Assembly Rating: 1 hour and 2 hours as indicated on Drawings.
 - 3. Nominal Joint Width: As indicated.
 - 4. Movement Capabilities: Class I - 100 percent.
- D. Wall-to-Wall Fire-Resistive Joint Systems:
 - 1. UL-Classified Systems: As recommended by manufacturer for application indicated.
 - 2. Assembly Rating: 1 hour and 2 hours as indicated on Drawings.
 - 3. Nominal Joint Width: As indicated.
 - 4. Movement Capabilities: Class I - 100 percent.

END OF SECTION 078446

SECTION 07 9200 - JOINT SEALANTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Silicone joint sealants.
 - 2. Latex joint sealants.
 - 3. Acoustical joint sealants.
- B. Related Sections:
 - 1. Division 04 Section "Unit Masonry" for masonry control and expansion joint fillers and gaskets.
 - 2. Division 07 Section "Expansion Control" for building expansion joints.
 - 3. Division 07 Section "Fire-Resistive Joint Systems" for sealing joints in fire-resistance-rated construction.
 - 4. Division 08 Section "Glazing" for glazing sealants.
 - 5. Division 09 Section "Gypsum Board" for sealing perimeter joints.
 - 6. Division 32 Section "Concrete Paving Joint Sealants" for sealing joints in pavements, walkways, and curbing.

1.3 PRECONSTRUCTION TESTING

- A. Preconstruction Compatibility and Adhesion Testing: Submit to joint-sealant manufacturers, for testing indicated below, samples of materials that will contact or affect joint sealants.
 - 1. Use ASTM C 1087 to determine whether priming and other specific joint preparation techniques are required to obtain rapid, optimum adhesion of joint sealants to joint substrates.
 - 2. Submit not fewer than eight pieces of each kind of material, including joint substrates, shims, joint-sealant backings, secondary seals, and miscellaneous materials.
 - 3. Schedule sufficient time for testing and analyzing results to prevent delaying the Work.
 - 4. For materials failing tests, obtain joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions for corrective measures including use of specially formulated primers.
 - 5. Testing will not be required if joint-sealant manufacturers submit joint preparation data that are based on previous testing, not older than 24 months, of sealant products for adhesion to, and compatibility with, joint substrates and other materials matching those submitted.
- B. Preconstruction Stain Testing, Silicone Sealants: Submit to joint sealant manufacturer for silicone sealants to be used in masonry, stone, and similar porous joints, the actual joint materials for testing in accordance with ASTM C124B, to determine whether the sealants to be

07 9200 - 1
JOINT SEALANTS

used will cause staining of the surrounding joint materials. Schedule sufficient time for testing and analyzing results to prevent delaying the Work. For sealant materials failing tests, obtain joint sealant manufacturer' written requirements for the products and procedures to be used to result in no staining.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each joint-sealant product indicated.
- B. Samples for Initial Selection: Manufacturer's color charts consisting of strips of cured sealants showing the full range of colors available for each product exposed to view.
- C. Joint-Sealant Schedule: Include the following information:
 - 1. Joint-sealant application, joint location, and designation.
 - 2. Joint-sealant manufacturer and product name.
 - 3. Joint-sealant formulation.
 - 4. Joint-sealant color.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.
- B. Product Certificates: For each kind of joint sealant and accessory, from manufacturer.
- C. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency, indicating that sealants comply with requirements.
- D. Preconstruction Compatibility and Adhesion Test Reports: From sealant manufacturer, indicating the following:
 - 1. Materials forming joint substrates and joint-sealant backings have been tested for compatibility and adhesion with joint sealants.
 - 2. Interpretation of test results and written recommendations for primers and substrate preparation needed for adhesion.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Manufacturer's authorized representative who is trained and approved for installation of units required for this Project.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain each kind of joint sealant from single source from single manufacturer.
- C. Product Testing: Test joint sealants using a qualified testing agency.
 - 1. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent testing agency qualified according to ASTM C 1021 to conduct the testing indicated.
 - 2. Test according to SWRI's Sealant Validation Program for compliance with requirements specified by reference to ASTM C 920 for adhesion and cohesion under cyclic movement, adhesion-in-peel, and indentation hardness.

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Do not proceed with installation of joint sealants under the following conditions:
1. When ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by joint-sealant manufacturer or are below 40 deg F (5 deg C).
 2. When joint substrates are wet.
 3. Where joint widths are less than those allowed by joint-sealant manufacturer for applications indicated.
 4. Where contaminants capable of interfering with adhesion have not yet been removed from joint substrates.

1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Special Installer's Warranty: Installer's standard form in which Installer agrees to repair or replace elastomeric joint sealants that do not comply with performance and other requirements specified in this Section within specified warranty period.
1. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Final Completion.
- B. Special Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which elastomeric sealant manufacturer agrees to furnish elastomeric joint sealants to repair or replace those that do not comply with performance, including non-staining of adjacent materials, and other requirements specified in this Section within specified warranty period.
- C. Special warranties specified in this Article exclude deterioration or failure of elastomeric joint sealants from the following:
1. Movement of the structure resulting in stresses on the sealant exceeding sealant manufacturer's written specifications for sealant elongation and compression caused by structural settlement or errors attributable to design or construction.
 2. Disintegration of joint substrates from natural causes exceeding design specifications.
 3. Mechanical damage caused by individuals, tools, or other outside agents.
 4. Changes in sealant appearance caused by accumulation of dirt or other atmospheric contaminants.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS, GENERAL

- A. Compatibility: Provide joint sealants, backings, and other related materials that are compatible with one another and with joint substrates under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by joint-sealant manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.
- B. VOC Content of Interior Sealants: Sealants and sealant primers used inside the weatherproofing system shall comply with the following limits for VOC content when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24):
1. Architectural Sealants: 250 g/L.
 2. Sealant Primers for Nonporous Substrates: 250 g/L.
 3. Sealant Primers for Porous Substrates: 775 g/L.

- C. Liquid-Applied Joint Sealants: Comply with ASTM C 920 and other requirements indicated for each liquid-applied joint sealant specified, including those referencing ASTM C 920 classifications for type, grade, class, and uses related to exposure and joint substrates.
- D. Stain-Test-Response Characteristics: Where sealants are specified to be nonstaining to porous substrates, provide products that have undergone testing according to ASTM C 1248 and have not stained porous joint substrates indicated for Project.
- E. Suitability for Contact with Food: Where sealants are indicated for joints that will come in repeated contact with food, provide products that comply with 21 CFR 177.2600.
- F. Colors of Exposed Joint Sealants: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

2.2 SILICONE JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Single-Component, Nonsag, Neutral-Curing Silicone Joint Sealant ES-1: ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 50, for Use NT.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Dow Corning Corporation; 791.
 - b. Pecora Corporation; 864.
 - c. Tremco Incorporated; Spectrem 3.
- B. Single-Component, Pourable, Traffic-Grade, Neutral-Curing Silicone Joint Sealant ES-2: ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade P, Class 100/50, for Use T.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Dow Corning Corporation; 890-SL.
 - b. Pecora Corporation; 300 SL.
 - c. Tremco Incorporated; Spectrem 900 SL.
- C. Mildew-Resistant, Single-Component, Nonsag, Neutral-Curing Silicone Joint Sealant ES-3: ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, for Use NT.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Pecora Corporation; 898.
 - b. Tremco; Tremsil 600 White.

2.3 LATEX JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Latex Joint Sealant LS-1: Acrylic latex or siliconized acrylic latex, ASTM C 834, Type OP, Grade NF.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Pecora Corporation; AC-20+.
 - b. Tremco Incorporated; Tremflex 834.

2.4 ACOUSTICAL JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Acoustical Joint Sealant AS-1: Manufacturer's standard nonsag, paintable, nonstaining latex sealant complying with ASTM C 834. Product effectively reduces airborne sound transmission through perimeter joints and openings in building construction as demonstrated by testing representative assemblies according to ASTM E 90.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Pecora Corporation; AC-20 FTR.
 - b. USG Corporation; SHEETROCK Acoustical Sealant.

2.5 JOINT SEALANT BACKING

- A. General: Provide sealant backings of material that are nonstaining; are compatible with joint substrates, sealants, primers, and other joint fillers; and are approved for applications indicated by sealant manufacturer based on field experience and laboratory testing.
- B. Cylindrical Sealant Backings: ASTM C 1330, Type C (closed-cell material with a surface skin) or Type B (bicellular material with a surface skin), and of size and density to control sealant depth and otherwise contribute to producing optimum sealant performance.
- C. Bond-Breaker Tape: Polyethylene tape or other plastic tape recommended by sealant manufacturer for preventing sealant from adhering to rigid, inflexible joint-filler materials or joint surfaces at back of joint. Provide self-adhesive tape where applicable.

2.6 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Primer: Material recommended by joint-sealant manufacturer where required for adhesion of sealant to joint substrates indicated, as determined from preconstruction joint-sealant-substrate tests and field tests.
- B. Cleaners for Nonporous Surfaces: Chemical cleaners acceptable to manufacturers of sealants and sealant backing materials, free of oily residues or other substances capable of staining or harming joint substrates and adjacent nonporous surfaces in any way, and formulated to promote optimum adhesion of sealants to joint substrates.
- C. Masking Tape: Nonstaining, nonabsorbent material compatible with joint sealants and surfaces adjacent to joints.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine joints indicated to receive joint sealants, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for joint configuration, installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting joint-sealant performance.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Cleaning of Joints: Clean out joints immediately before installing joint sealants to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions and the following requirements:
1. Remove all foreign material from joint substrates that could interfere with adhesion of joint sealant, including dust, paints (except for permanent, protective coatings tested and approved for sealant adhesion and compatibility by sealant manufacturer), old joint sealants, oil, grease, waterproofing, water repellents, water, surface dirt, and frost.
 2. Clean porous joint substrate surfaces by brushing, grinding, mechanical abrading, or a combination of these methods to produce a clean, sound substrate capable of developing optimum bond with joint sealants. Remove loose particles remaining after cleaning operations above by vacuuming or blowing out joints with oil-free compressed air. Porous joint substrates include the following:
 - a. Concrete.
 - b. Masonry.
 3. Remove laitance and form-release agents from concrete.
 4. Clean nonporous joint substrate surfaces with chemical cleaners or other means that do not stain, harm substrates, or leave residues capable of interfering with adhesion of joint sealants. Nonporous joint substrates include the following:
 - a. Metal.
 - b. Glass.
 - c. Porcelain enamel.
- B. Joint Priming: Prime joint substrates where recommended by joint-sealant manufacturer or as indicated by preconstruction joint-sealant-substrate tests or prior experience. Apply primer to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions. Confine primers to areas of joint-sealant bond; do not allow spillage or migration onto adjoining surfaces.
- C. Masking Tape: Use masking tape where required to prevent contact of sealant or primer with adjoining surfaces that otherwise would be permanently stained or damaged by such contact or by cleaning methods required to remove sealant smears. Remove tape immediately after tooling without disturbing joint seal.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF JOINT SEALANTS

- A. General: Comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written installation instructions for products and applications indicated, unless more stringent requirements apply.
- B. Sealant Installation Standard: Comply with recommendations in ASTM C 1193 for use of joint sealants as applicable to materials, applications, and conditions indicated.
- C. Install sealant backings of kind indicated to support sealants during application and at position required to produce cross-sectional shapes and depths of installed sealants relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.
1. Do not leave gaps between ends of sealant backings.
 2. Do not stretch, twist, puncture, or tear sealant backings.
 3. Remove absorbent sealant backings that have become wet before sealant application and replace them with dry materials.

- D. Install bond-breaker tape behind sealants where sealant backings are not used between sealants and backs of joints.
- E. Install sealants using proven techniques that comply with the following and at the same time backings are installed:
 - 1. Place sealants so they directly contact and fully wet joint substrates.
 - 2. Completely fill recesses in each joint configuration.
 - 3. Produce uniform, cross-sectional shapes and depths relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.
- F. Tooling of Nonsag Sealants: Immediately after sealant application and before skinning or curing begins, tool sealants according to requirements specified in subparagraphs below to form smooth, uniform beads of configuration indicated; to eliminate air pockets; and to ensure contact and adhesion of sealant with sides of joint.
 - 1. Remove excess sealant from surfaces adjacent to joints.
 - 2. Use tooling agents that are approved in writing by sealant manufacturer and that do not discolor sealants or adjacent surfaces.
 - 3. Provide concave joint profile per Figure 8A in ASTM C 1193, unless otherwise indicated.
 - 4. Provide flush joint profile where indicated per Figure 8B in ASTM C 1193.
 - 5. Provide recessed joint configuration of recess depth and at locations indicated per Figure 8C in ASTM C 1193.
 - a. Use masking tape to protect surfaces adjacent to recessed tooled joints.
- G. Acoustical Sealant Installation: At sound-rated assemblies and elsewhere as indicated, seal construction at perimeters, behind control joints, and at openings and penetrations with a continuous bead of acoustical sealant. Install acoustical sealant at both faces of partitions at perimeters and through penetrations. Comply with ASTM C 919 and with manufacturer's written recommendations.

3.4 CLEANING

- A. Clean off excess sealant or sealant smears adjacent to joints as the Work progresses by methods and with cleaning materials approved in writing by manufacturers of joint sealants and of products in which joints occur.

3.5 PROTECTION

- A. Protect joint sealants during and after curing period from contact with contaminating substances and from damage resulting from construction operations or other causes so sealants are without deterioration or damage at time of Substantial Completion. If, despite such protection, damage or deterioration occurs, cut out and remove damaged or deteriorated joint sealants immediately so installations with repaired areas are indistinguishable from original work.

3.6 JOINT-SEALANT SCHEDULE

- A. Joint-Sealant Application: Exterior joints in vertical surfaces and horizontal nontraffic surfaces (ES-1).
 - 1. Joint Locations:

- a. Control and expansion joints in unit masonry
 - b. Joints between metal panels.
 - c. Joints between different materials listed above
 - d. Perimeter joints between materials listed above and frames of doors, windows, and louvers
 2. Silicone Joint Sealant: Single component, nonsag, neutral curing, Class 50.
 3. Joint-Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of colors.
- B. Joint-Sealant Application: Interior joints in horizontal traffic surfaces (ES-2).
 1. Joint Locations:
 - a. Isolation joints in cast-in-place concrete slabs.
 - b. Control and expansion joints in tile flooring.
 2. Silicone Joint Sealant: Single component, pourable, traffic grade, neutral curing.
 3. Joint-Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of colors.
- C. Joint-Sealant Application: Interior joints in vertical surfaces and horizontal nontraffic surfaces (LS-1).
 1. Joint Locations:
 - a. Control and expansion joints on exposed interior surfaces of exterior walls.
 - b. Perimeter joints of exterior openings where indicated.
 - c. Vertical joints on exposed surfaces of interior unit masonry walls and partitions.
 - d. Perimeter joints between interior wall surfaces and frames of interior doors and windows.
 2. Joint Sealant: Latex.
 3. Joint-Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of colors.
- D. Joint-Sealant Application: Mildew-resistant interior joints in vertical surfaces and horizontal nontraffic surfaces (ES-3).
 1. Joint Sealant Location:
 - a. Joints between plumbing fixtures and adjoining walls, floors, and counters.
 2. Joint Sealant: Mildew resistant, single component, nonsag, neutral curing, Silicone or Single component, nonsag, mildew resistant, acid curing.
 3. Joint-Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of colors.
- E. Joint-Sealant Application: Interior acoustical joints in vertical surfaces and horizontal nontraffic surfaces (AS-1).
 1. Joint Location:
 - a. Acoustical joints where indicated.
 2. Joint Sealant: Acoustical.
 3. Joint-Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

April 2015

A-012651
State of Kansas - Energy & Service Center

END OF SECTION 07 9200

07 9200 - 9
JOINT SEALANTS

SECTION 07 9500 - EXPANSION CONTROL

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Interior expansion control systems.
 - 2. Exterior wall expansion control systems.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" for liquid-applied joint sealants and for elastomeric sealants without metal frames.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Shop Drawings: For each expansion control system specified. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, splices, blockout requirement, attachments to other work, and line diagrams showing entire route of each expansion control system. Where expansion control systems change planes, provide isometric or clearly detailed drawing depicting how components interconnect.
- B. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of expansion control system indicated.
 - 1. Include manufacturer's color charts showing the full range of colors and finishes available for each exposed metal and elastomeric seal material.
- C. Samples for Verification: For each type of expansion control system indicated, full width by 6 inches (150 mm) long in size.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Test Reports: For each fire barrier provided as part of an expansion control system, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. General: Provide expansion control systems of design, basic profile, materials, and operation indicated. Provide units with capability to accommodate variations in adjacent surfaces.
 - 1. Furnish units in longest practicable lengths to minimize field splicing. Install with hairline mitered corners where expansion control systems change direction or abut other materials.
 - 2. Include factory-fabricated closure materials and transition pieces, T-joints, corners, curbs, cross-connections, and other accessories as required to provide continuous expansion control systems.
- B. Coordination: Coordinate installation of exterior wall expansion control systems with roof expansion control systems to ensure that wall transitions are watertight. Roof expansion joint assemblies are specified in Division 07 Sections.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Where indicated, provide expansion control systems with fire barriers identical to those of systems tested for fire resistance per UL 2079 or ASTM E 1966 by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 1. Hose Stream Test: Wall-to-wall and wall-to-ceiling systems shall be subjected to hose stream testing.

2.3 INTERIOR EXPANSION CONTROL SYSTEMS

- A. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product by one of the following:
 - 1. Architectural Art Mfg., Inc.; Division of Pittcon Industries.
 - 2. Balco, Inc.
 - 3. Construction Specialties, Inc.
 - 4. JointMaster/InPro Corporation.
 - 5. MM Systems Corporation.
 - 6. Nystrom, Inc.
 - 7. Watson Bowman Acme Corp.; a BASF Construction Chemicals business.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain expansion control systems from single source from single manufacturer.
- C. Wall-to-Wall:
 - 1. Watson Bowman Acme; Model "CWWF/C". (Basis of Design).
 - 2. Design Criteria:
 - a. Nominal Joint Width: As indicated on Drawings.
 - b. Provide wall-to-wall expansion control systems at each face of interior walls where joints are exposed to view.
- D. Wall-to-Ceiling:
 - 1. Watson Bowman Acme; Model "CWCA" (Basis of Design)..
 - 2. Design Criteria:
 - a. Nominal Joint Width: As indicated on Drawings.

E. Ceiling-to-Ceiling:

1. Watson Bowman Acme; Model "CWCA". (Basis of Design).
2. Design Criteria:
 - a. Nominal Joint Width: As indicated on Drawings.

2.4 EXTERIOR WALL EXPANSION CONTROL SYSTEMS

A. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product by one of the following:

1. Architectural Art Mfg., Inc.; Division of Pittcon Industries.
2. Balco, Inc.
3. Construction Specialties, Inc.
4. JointMaster/InPro Corporation.
5. MM Systems Corporation.
6. Nystrom, Inc.
7. Watson Bowman Acme Corp.; a BASF Construction Chemicals business.

B. Source Limitations: Obtain expansion control systems from single source from single manufacturer.

C. Wall-to-Wall:

1. Watson Bowman Acme; Model "WSW-200". (Basis of Design).
2. Design Criteria:
 - a. Nominal Joint Width: As indicated on Drawings.
 - b. Fire-Resistance Rating: Provide expansion control system and Watson Bowman Acme ThermoShield Fire Barrier assembly with a rating not less than 1 hour.
 - c. Provide wall-to-wall interior expansion control systems at interior face of exterior walls at conditions where joints are exposed to view.

2.5 ACCESSORIES

A. Moisture Barriers: Manufacturer's standard moisture barrier consisting of a continuous, waterproof membrane within joint and attached to substrate on sides of joint below the primary cover.

2.6 MATERIALS

A. Aluminum: ASTM B 221 (ASTM B 221M), Alloy 6063-T5 for extrusions; ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M), Alloy 6061-T6 for sheet and plate.

1. Apply manufacturer's standard protective coating on aluminum surfaces to be placed in contact with cementitious materials.

B. Elastomeric Seals: ASTM E 1783; preformed elastomeric membranes or extrusions to be installed in metal frames.

- C. Compression Seals: ASTM E 1612; preformed elastomeric extrusions having an internal baffle system and designed to function under compression.
- D. Moisture Barrier: Flexible elastomeric material, PVC, minimum 30 mils thick, EPDM, minimum 45 mils thick or Santoprene.
- E. Accessories: Manufacturer's standard anchors, clips, fasteners, set screws, spacers, and other accessories compatible with material in contact, as indicated or required for complete installations.

2.7 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- B. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- C. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

2.8 ALUMINUM FINISHES

- A. Mill finish.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine surfaces where expansion control systems will be installed for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of work.
 - 1. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare substrates according to expansion control system manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Coordinate and furnish anchorages, setting drawings, and instructions for installing expansion control systems. Provide fasteners of metal, type, and size to suit type of construction indicated and to provide for secure attachment of expansion control systems.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for storing, handling, and installing expansion control systems and materials unless more stringent requirements are indicated.

- B. Metal Frames: Perform cutting, drilling, and fitting required to install expansion control systems.
1. Install in true alignment and proper relationship to joints and adjoining finished surfaces measured from established lines and levels.
 2. Adjust for differences between actual structural gap and nominal design gap due to ambient temperature at time of installation. Notify Architect where discrepancies occur that will affect proper expansion control system installation and performance.
 3. Cut and fit ends to accommodate thermal expansion and contraction of metal without buckling of frames.
 4. Repair or grout blockout as required for continuous frame support using nonmetallic, shrinkage-resistant grout.
 5. Install frames in continuous contact with adjacent surfaces.
 - a. Shimming is not permitted.
 6. Locate anchors at interval recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 3 inches (75 mm) from each end and not more than 24 inches (600 mm) o.c.
- C. Seals in Metal Frames: Install elastomeric seals and membranes in frames to comply with manufacturer's written instructions. Install with minimum number of end joints.
1. Provide in continuous lengths for straight sections.
 2. Seal transitions according to manufacturer's written instructions. Vulcanize or heat-weld field-spliced joints as recommended by manufacturer.
 3. Installation: Mechanically lock seals into frames or adhere to frames with adhesive or pressure-sensitive tape as recommended by manufacturer.
- D. Compression Seals: Apply adhesive or lubricant adhesive as recommended by manufacturer to both frame interfaces before installing compression seals.
- E. Terminate exposed ends of expansion control systems with field- or factory-fabricated termination devices.
- F. Fire-Resistance-Rated Assemblies: Coordinate installation of expansion control system materials and associated work so complete assemblies comply with assembly performance requirements.
1. Fire Barriers: Install fire barriers to provide continuous, uninterrupted fire resistance throughout length of joint, including transitions and field splices.
- G. Moisture Barrier: Provide at all exterior joints and where indicated on Drawings. Provide drainage fittings at a maximum of 50 feet (15.2 m) or where indicated on Drawings.

3.4 PROTECTION

- A. Do not remove protective covering until finish work in adjacent areas is complete. When protective covering is removed, clean exposed metal surfaces to comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Protect the installation from damage by work of other Sections. Where necessary due to heavy construction traffic, remove and properly store cover plates or seals and install temporary protection over expansion control systems. Reinstall cover plates or seals prior to Substantial Completion of the Work.

April 2015

A-012651
State of Kansas - Energy & Service Center

END OF SECTION 07 9500

07 9500 - 6
EXPANSION CONTROL

SECTION 08 1113 - HOLLOW METAL DOORS AND FRAMES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Standard hollow metal doors and frames.

- B. Related Sections:

- 1. Division 04 Section "Unit Masonry" for embedding anchors for hollow metal work into masonry construction.
 - 2. Division 08 Section "Door Hardware" for door hardware for hollow metal doors.
 - 3. Division 09 Sections "Exterior Painting" and "Interior Painting" for field painting hollow metal doors and frames.
 - 4. Division 26 Sections for electrical connections including conduit and wiring for door controls and operators.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Minimum Thickness: Minimum thickness of base metal without coatings.
- B. Standard Hollow Metal Work: Hollow metal work fabricated according to ANSI/SDI A250.8.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include construction details, material descriptions, core descriptions, fire-resistance rating, temperature-rise ratings, and finishes.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include the following:
 - 1. Elevations of each door design.
 - 2. Details of doors, including vertical and horizontal edge details and metal thicknesses.
 - 3. Frame details for each frame type, including dimensioned profiles and metal thicknesses.
 - 4. Locations of reinforcement and preparations for hardware.
 - 5. Details of each different wall opening condition.
 - 6. Details of anchorages, joints, field splices, and connections.
 - 7. Details of accessories.
 - 8. Details of moldings, removable stops, and glazing.
 - 9. Details of conduit and preparations for power, signal, and control systems.
 - 10. Fire rated doors and frames showing conformance with NFPA 80 and Underwriters Laboratory, Inc.

08 1113 - 1
HOLLOW METAL DOORS AND FRAMES

C. Other Action Submittals:

1. Schedule: Provide a schedule of hollow metal work prepared by or under the supervision of supplier, using same reference numbers for details and openings as those on Drawings. Coordinate with door hardware schedule.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Oversize Construction Certification: For assemblies required to be fire rated and exceeding limitations of labeled assemblies.
- B. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency, for each type of hollow metal door and frame assembly.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain hollow metal work from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. Fire-Rated Door Assemblies: Assemblies complying with NFPA 80 that are listed and labeled by a qualified testing agency, for fire-protection ratings indicated, based on testing at as close to neutral pressure as possible according to NFPA 252 or UL 10B.
 1. Oversize Fire-Rated Door Assemblies: For units exceeding sizes of tested assemblies, provide certification by a qualified testing agency that doors comply with standard construction requirements for tested and labeled fire-rated door assemblies except for size.
 2. Temperature-Rise Limit: At vertical exit enclosures and exit passageways, provide doors that have a maximum transmitted temperature end point of not more than 450 deg F (250 deg C) above ambient after 30 minutes of standard fire-test exposure.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver hollow metal work palletized, wrapped, or crated to provide protection during transit and Project-site storage. Do not use non-vented plastic.
 1. Provide additional protection to prevent damage to finish of factory-finished units.
- B. Deliver welded frames with two removable spreader bars across bottom of frames, tack welded to jambs and mullions.
- C. Store hollow metal work under cover at Project site. Place in stacks of five units maximum in a vertical position with heads up, spaced by blocking, on minimum 4-inch- (102-mm-) high wood blocking. Do not store in a manner that traps excess humidity.
 1. Provide minimum 1/4-inch (6-mm) space between each stacked door to permit air circulation.

1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify actual dimensions of openings by field measurements before fabrication.

1.9 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate installation of anchorages for hollow metal frames. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Amweld Building Products, LLC.
 - 2. Ceco Door Products; an Assa Abloy Group company.
 - 3. Curries Company; an Assa Abloy Group company.
 - 4. Fleming Door Products Ltd.; an Assa Abloy Group company.
 - 5. Steelcraft; an Ingersoll-Rand company.

2.2 MATERIALS

- A. Cold-Rolled Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B; suitable for exposed applications.
- B. Hot-Rolled Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1011/A 1011M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B; free of scale, pitting, or surface defects; pickled and oiled.
- C. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B; with minimum G60 (Z180) or A60 (ZF180) metallic coating.
- D. Frame Anchors: ASTM A 591/A 591M, Commercial Steel (CS), 40Z (12G) coating designation; mill phosphatized.
 - 1. For anchors built into exterior walls, steel sheet complying with ASTM A 1008/A 1008M or ASTM A 1011/A 1011M, hot-dip galvanized according to ASTM A 153/A 153M, Class B.
- E. Inserts, Bolts, and Fasteners: Hot-dip galvanized according to ASTM A 153/A 153M.
- F. Grout: ASTM C 476, except with a maximum slump of 4 inches (102 mm), as measured according to ASTM C 143/C 143M.
- G. Glazing: Comply with requirements in Division 08 Section "Glazing."
- H. Bituminous Coating: Cold-applied asphalt mastic, SSPC-Paint 12, compounded for 15-mil (0.4-mm) dry film thickness per coat. Provide inert-type noncorrosive compound free of asbestos fibers, sulfur components, and other deleterious impurities.

2.3 STANDARD HOLLOW METAL DOORS

- A. General: Provide doors of design indicated, not less than thickness indicated; fabricated with smooth surfaces, without visible joints or seams on exposed faces unless otherwise indicated. Comply with ANSI/SDI A250.8.
1. Design: Flush panel with seamless vertical edges.
 2. Core Construction: Manufacturer's standard vertical steel-stiffener core. Stiffeners to be welded to faces. Provide with voids filled with mineral wool insulation.
 - a. Fire Door Core: As required to provide fire-protection and temperature-rise ratings indicated.
 - b. Thermal-Rated (Insulated) Doors: Where indicated, provide doors fabricated with thermal-resistance value (R-value) of not less than 12.3 deg F x h x sq. ft./Btu (2.166 K x sq. m/W) when tested according to ASTM C 1363.
 - 1) Locations: Exterior doors and interior doors where indicated.
 3. Vertical Edges for Single-Acting Doors: Beveled edge.
 - a. Beveled Edge: 1/8 inch in 2 inches (3 mm in 50 mm).
 4. Vertical Edges for Double-Acting Doors: Round vertical edges with 2-1/8-inch (54-mm) radius.
 5. Top and Bottom Edges: Closed with flush or inverted 0.042-inch- (1.0-mm-) thick, end closures or channels of same material as face sheets. Top closures for outswing exterior wall doors shall be flush to eliminate possibility of catching water.
 6. Tolerances: Comply with SDI 117, "Manufacturing Tolerances for Standard Steel Doors and Frames."
- B. Exterior Doors: Face sheets fabricated from metallic-coated steel sheet. Provide doors complying with requirements indicated below by referencing ANSI/SDI A250.8 for level and model and ANSI/SDI A250.4 for physical performance level:
1. Level 3 and Physical Performance Level A (Extra Heavy Duty), Model 2 (Seamless). Exterior door faces minimum 16 gage (0.067 inch).
- C. Interior Doors: Face sheets fabricated from cold-rolled steel sheet unless metallic-coated sheet is indicated. Provide doors complying with requirements indicated below by referencing ANSI/SDI A250.8 for level and model and ANSI/SDI A250.4 for physical performance level:
1. Level 3 and Physical Performance Level A (Extra Heavy Duty), Model 2 (Seamless). Interior door faces minimum 16 gage (0.067 inch).
- D. Hardware Reinforcement: Fabricate according to ANSI/SDI A250.6 with reinforcing plates from same material as door face sheets.
- E. Fabricate concealed stiffeners and hardware reinforcement from either cold- or hot-rolled steel sheet.
1. When vertical steel stiffeners are used for core construction, fill spaces between stiffeners with mineral fiber insulation.
- F. Fire Rated Doors (labeled)

1. Conform to NFPA 80 when tested by Underwriters Laboratories, Inc., for the class of door or opening shown.
2. Fire rated labels of metal, with raised or incised markings of approving laboratory shall be permanently attached to doors.
3. Close top and vertical edges of doors flush. Vertical edges shall be seamless. Apply steel astragal to the meeting stile of the active leaf of pairs of fire rated doors, except where vertical rod exit devices are specified for both leaves swinging in the same direction.

2.4 STANDARD HOLLOW METAL FRAMES

- A. General: Comply with ANSI/SDI A250.8 and with details indicated for type and profile.
- B. Exterior Frames: Fabricated from metallic-coated steel sheet.
 1. Fabricate frames with mitered or coped corners.
 2. Fabricate frames as full profile welded unless otherwise indicated.
 3. Frames for Level 3 Steel Doors: 0.075-inch- (1.9-mm-) thick steel sheet.
- C. Interior Frames: Fabricated from cold-rolled steel sheet unless metallic-coated sheet is indicated.
 1. Fabricate frames with mitered or coped corners.
 2. Fabricate frames as full profile welded unless otherwise indicated.
 3. Frames for Level 3 Steel Doors: 0.067-inch- (1.7-mm-) thick steel sheet. 0.075-inch- (1.9-mm) for frames exceeding 48 inches in width.
 4. Frames for Wood Doors: 0.067-inch- (1.7-mm-) thick steel sheet. 0.075-inch- (1.9-mm) for frames exceeding 48 inches in width.
 5. Frames for Borrowed Lights: 0.067-inch- (1.7-mm-) thick steel sheet. 0.075-inch- (1.9-mm) for frames exceeding 48 inches in width.
- D. Frames for labeled fire rated doors.
 1. Comply with NFPA 80. Test by Underwriters Laboratories, Inc.
 2. Fire rated labels of approving laboratory permanently attached to frames as evidence of conformance with these requirements. Provide labels of metal or engraved stamp, with raised or incised markings.
- E. Knocked Down frames are not acceptable.
- F. Hardware Reinforcement: Fabricate according to ANSI/SDI A250.6 with reinforcement plates from same material as frames.

2.5 FRAME ANCHORS

- A. Jamb Anchors:
 1. Masonry Type: Adjustable strap-and-stirrup or T-shaped anchors to suit frame size, not less than 0.042 inch (1.0 mm) thick, with corrugated or perforated straps not less than 2 inches (50 mm) wide by 10 inches (250 mm) long; or wire anchors not less than 0.177 inch (4.5 mm) thick.
 2. Stud-Wall Type: Designed to engage stud, welded to back of frames; not less than 0.042 inch (1.0 mm) thick.

3. Post-installed Expansion Type for In-Place Concrete or Masonry: Minimum 3/8-inch- (9.5-mm-) diameter bolts with expansion shields or inserts. Provide pipe spacer from frame to wall, with throat reinforcement plate, welded to frame at each anchor location.
- B. Floor Anchors: Formed from same material as frames, not less than 0.042 inch (1.0 mm) thick, and as follows:
1. Monolithic Concrete Slabs: Clip-type anchors, with two holes to receive fasteners.
 2. Where floor fills occur, provide extension type floor anchors to compensate for depth of fill.
 3. At bottom of jamb use 1.3mm (0.053 inch) thick steel clip angles welded to jamb and drilled to receive two 6 mm (1/4 inch) floor bolts. Use 50 mm x 50 mm (2 inch by 2 inch) 9 mm by (3/8 inch) clip angle for lead lined frames, drilled for 9 mm (3/8 inch) floor bolts.
 4. Where mullions occur, provide 2.3 mm (0.093 inch) thick steel channel anchors, drilled for 6mm (1/4 inch) floor bolts and frame anchor screws.
 5. Where sill sections occur, provide continuous 1 mm (0.042 inch) thick steel rough bucks drilled for 6mm (1/4 inch) floor bolts and frame anchor screws. Space floor bolts at 50 mm (24 inches) on center.

2.6 STOPS AND MOLDINGS

- A. Moldings for Glazed Lites in Doors: Minimum 0.032 inch (0.8 mm) thick, fabricated from same material as door face sheet in which they are installed.
- B. Fixed Frame Moldings: Formed integral with hollow metal frames, a minimum of 5/8 inch (16 mm) high unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Loose Stops for Glazed Lites in Frames: Minimum 0.032 inch (0.8 mm) thick, fabricated from same material as frames in which they are installed.

2.7 ACCESSORIES

- A. Mullions and Transom Bars: Join to adjacent members by welding or rigid mechanical anchors.
- B. Ceiling Struts: Minimum 1/4-inch-thick by 1-inch- (6.4-mm-thick by 25.4-mm-) wide steel.
- C. Grout Guards: Formed from same material as frames, not less than 0.016 inch (0.4 mm) thick.
- D. Grout Boxes: Formed from same materials as frames at locations indicated to receive installation of electrical conduit for power or data wiring.

2.8 FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate hollow metal work to be rigid and free of defects, warp, or buckle. Accurately form metal to required sizes and profiles, with minimum radius for thickness of metal. Where practical, fit and assemble units in manufacturer's plant. To ensure proper assembly at Project site, clearly identify work that cannot be permanently factory assembled before shipment.
- B. Tolerances: Fabricate hollow metal work to tolerances indicated in SDI 117.

C. Hollow Metal Doors:

1. Exterior Doors: Provide weep-hole openings in bottom of exterior doors to permit moisture to escape. Seal joints in top edges of doors against water penetration.
2. Glazed Lites: Factory cut openings in doors.
3. Astragals: Provide overlapping astragal on one leaf of pairs of doors where required by NFPA 80 for fire-performance rating or where indicated. Extend minimum 3/4 inch (19 mm) beyond edge of door on which astragal is mounted.

D. Hollow Metal Frames: Where frames are fabricated in sections due to shipping or handling limitations, provide alignment plates or angles at each joint, fabricated of same thickness metal as frames.

1. Welded Frames: Weld flush face joints continuously; grind, fill, dress, and make smooth, flush, and invisible.
2. Sidelight and Transom Bar Frames: Provide closed tubular members with no visible face seams or joints, fabricated from same material as door frame. Fasten members at crossings and to jambs by butt welding.
3. Provide countersunk, flat- or oval-head exposed screws and bolts for exposed fasteners unless otherwise indicated.
4. Grout Guards: Weld guards to frame at back of hardware mortises in frames to be grouted.
5. Floor Anchors: Weld anchors to bottom of jambs and mullions with at least four spot welds per anchor.
6. Jamb Anchors: Provide number and spacing of anchors as follows:
 - a. Masonry Type: Locate anchors not more than 18 inches (457 mm) from top and bottom of frame. Space anchors not more than 32 inches (813 mm) o.c. and as follows:
 - 1) Two anchors per jamb up to 60 inches (1524 mm) high.
 - 2) Three anchors per jamb from 60 to 90 inches (1524 to 2286 mm) high.
 - 3) Four anchors per jamb from 90 to 120 inches (2286 to 3048 mm) high.
 - 4) Four anchors per jamb plus 1 additional anchor per jamb for each 24 inches (610 mm) or fraction thereof above 120 inches (3048 mm) high.
 - b. Stud-Wall Type: Locate anchors not more than 18 inches (457 mm) from top and bottom of frame. Space anchors not more than 32 inches (813 mm) o.c. and as follows:
 - 1) Three anchors per jamb up to 60 inches (1524 mm) high.
 - 2) Four anchors per jamb from 60 to 90 inches (1524 to 2286 mm) high.
 - 3) Five anchors per jamb from 90 to 96 inches (2286 to 2438 mm) high.
 - 4) Five anchors per jamb plus 1 additional anchor per jamb for each 24 inches (610 mm) or fraction thereof above 96 inches (2438 mm) high.
 - 5) Two anchors per head for frames above 42 inches (1066 mm) wide and mounted in metal-stud partitions.
 - c. Post-installed Expansion Type: Locate anchors not more than 6 inches (152 mm) from top and bottom of frame. Space anchors not more than 26 inches (660 mm) O.C.
7. Door Silencers: Except on weather-stripped doors, drill stops to receive door silencers as follows. Keep holes clear during construction.

- a. Single-Door Frames: Drill stop in strike jamb to receive three door silencers.
 - b. Double-Door Frames: Drill stop in head jamb to receive two door silencers.
 - E. Fabricate concealed stiffeners, edge channels, and hardware reinforcement from either cold- or hot-rolled steel sheet.
 - F. Hardware Preparation: Factory prepare hollow metal work to receive templated mortised hardware; include cutouts, reinforcement, mortising, drilling, and tapping according to the Door Hardware Schedule and templates furnished as specified in Division 08 Section "Door Hardware."
 - 1. Locate hardware as indicated, or if not indicated, according to ANSI/SDI A250.8.
 - 2. Reinforce doors and frames to receive nontemplated, mortised and surface-mounted door hardware.
 - 3. Comply with applicable requirements in ANSI/SDI A250.6 and ANSI/DHI A115 Series specifications for preparation of hollow metal work for hardware.
 - 4. Coordinate locations of conduit and wiring boxes for electrical connections with Division 26 Sections.
 - G. Stops and Moldings: Provide stops and moldings around glazed lites where indicated. Form corners of stops and moldings with butted or mitered hairline joints.
 - 1. Single Glazed Lites: Provide fixed stops and moldings welded on secure side of hollow metal work.
 - 2. Multiple Glazed Lites: Provide fixed and removable stops and moldings so that each glazed lite is capable of being removed independently.
 - 3. Provide fixed frame moldings on outside of exterior and on secure side of interior doors and frames.
 - 4. Provide loose stops and moldings on inside of hollow metal work.
 - 5. Coordinate rabbet width between fixed and removable stops with type of glazing and type of installation indicated.
- 2.9 STEEL FINISHES
- A. Prime Finish: Apply manufacturer's standard primer immediately after cleaning and pretreating.
 - 1. Shop Primer: Manufacturer's standard, fast-curing, lead- and chromate-free primer complying with ANSI/SDI A250.10 acceptance criteria; recommended by primer manufacturer for substrate; compatible with substrate and field-applied coatings despite prolonged exposure.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in for embedded and built-in anchors to verify actual locations before frame installation.

- C. For the record, prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Remove welded-in shipping spreaders installed at factory. Restore exposed finish by grinding, filling, and dressing, as required to make repaired area smooth, flush, and invisible on exposed faces.
- B. Prior to installation, adjust and securely brace welded hollow metal frames for squareness, alignment, twist, and plumbness to the following tolerances:
 - 1. Squareness: Plus or minus 1/16 inch (1.6 mm), measured at door rabbet on a line 90 degrees from jamb perpendicular to frame head.
 - 2. Alignment: Plus or minus 1/16 inch (1.6 mm), measured at jambs on a horizontal line parallel to plane of wall.
 - 3. Twist: Plus or minus 1/16 inch (1.6 mm), measured at opposite face corners of jambs on parallel lines, and perpendicular to plane of wall.
 - 4. Plumbness: Plus or minus 1/16 inch (1.6 mm), measured at jambs on a perpendicular line from head to floor.
- C. Drill and tap doors and frames to receive nontemplated, mortised, and surface-mounted door hardware.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install hollow metal work plumb, rigid, properly aligned, and securely fastened in place; comply with Drawings and manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Hollow Metal Frames: Install hollow metal frames of size and profile indicated. Comply with ANSI/SDI A250.11.
 - 1. Set frames accurately in position, plumbed, aligned, and braced securely until permanent anchors are set. After wall construction is complete, remove temporary braces, leaving surfaces smooth and undamaged.
 - a. At fire-protection-rated openings, install frames according to NFPA 80.
 - b. Where frames are fabricated in sections because of shipping or handling limitations, field splice at approved locations by welding face joint continuously; grind, fill, dress, and make splice smooth, flush, and invisible on exposed faces.
 - c. Install frames with removable glazing stops located on secure side of opening.
 - d. Install door silencers in frames before grouting.
 - e. Remove temporary braces necessary for installation only after frames have been properly set and secured.
 - f. Check plumbness, squareness, and twist of frames as walls are constructed. Shim as necessary to comply with installation tolerances.
 - g. Field apply bituminous coating to backs of frames that are filled with grout containing antifreezing agents.
 - 2. Floor Anchors: Provide floor anchors for each jamb and mullion that extends to floor, and secure with postinstalled expansion anchors.

- a. Floor anchors may be set with powder-actuated fasteners instead of postinstalled expansion anchors if so indicated and approved on Shop Drawings.
3. Metal-Stud Partitions: Solidly pack mineral-fiber insulation behind frames.
4. Masonry Walls: Coordinate installation of frames to allow for solidly filling space between frames and masonry with grout.
5. Concrete Walls: Solidly fill space between frames and concrete with grout. Take precautions, including bracing frames, to ensure that frames are not deformed or damaged by grout forces.
6. In-Place Concrete or Masonry Construction: Secure frames in place with postinstalled expansion anchors. Countersink anchors, and fill and make smooth, flush, and invisible on exposed faces.
7. Ceiling Struts: Extend struts vertically from top of frame at each jamb to overhead structural supports or substrates above frame unless frame is anchored to masonry or to other structural support at each jamb. Bend top of struts to provide flush contact for securing to supporting construction. Provide adjustable wedged or bolted anchorage to frame jamb members.
8. Installation Tolerances: Adjust hollow metal door frames for squareness, alignment, twist, and plumb to the following tolerances:
 - a. Squareness: Plus or minus 1/16 inch (1.6 mm), measured at door rabbet on a line 90 degrees from jamb perpendicular to frame head.
 - b. Alignment: Plus or minus 1/16 inch (1.6 mm), measured at jambs on a horizontal line parallel to plane of wall.
 - c. Twist: Plus or minus 1/16 inch (1.6 mm), measured at opposite face corners of jambs on parallel lines, and perpendicular to plane of wall.
 - d. Plumbness: Plus or minus 1/16 inch (1.6 mm), measured at jambs at floor.
- C. Hollow Metal Doors: Fit hollow metal doors accurately in frames, within clearances specified below. Shim as necessary.
 1. Non-Fire-Rated Standard Steel Doors:
 - a. Jambs and Head: 1/8 inch (3 mm) plus or minus 1/16 inch (1.6 mm).
 - b. Between Edges of Pairs of Doors: 1/8 inch (3 mm) plus or minus 1/16 inch (1.6 mm).
 - c. Between Bottom of Door and Top of Threshold: Maximum 3/8 inch (9.5 mm).
 - d. Between Bottom of Door and Top of Finish Floor (No Threshold): Maximum 3/4 inch (19 mm).
 2. Fire-Rated Doors: Install doors with clearances according to NFPA 80.
 3. Smoke-Control Doors: Install doors according to NFPA 105.
- D. Glazing: Comply with installation requirements in Division 08 Section "Glazing" and with hollow metal manufacturer's written instructions.
 1. Secure stops with countersunk flat- or oval-head machine screws spaced uniformly not more than 9 inches (230 mm) o.c. and not more than 2 inches (50 mm) o.c. from each corner.

3.4 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

April 2015

A-012651
State of Kansas - Energy & Service Center

- A. Final Adjustments: Check and readjust operating hardware items immediately before final inspection. Leave work in complete and proper operating condition. Remove and replace defective work, including hollow metal work that is warped, bowed, or otherwise unacceptable.
- B. Remove grout and other bonding material from hollow metal work immediately after installation.
- C. Prime-Coat Touchup: Immediately after erection, sand smooth rusted or damaged areas of prime coat and apply touchup of compatible air-drying, rust-inhibitive primer.
- D. Metallic-Coated Surfaces: Clean abraded areas and repair with galvanizing repair paint according to manufacturer's written instructions.

END OF SECTION 08 1113

08 1113 - 11
HOLLOW METAL DOORS AND FRAMES

SECTION 08 1416 - FLUSH WOOD DOORS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Solid-core doors with wood-veneer faces.
 - 2. Factory finishing flush wood doors.
 - 3. Factory machining for hardware
- B. Related Sections:
 - 1. Division 08 Section "Glazing" for glass view panels in flush wood doors.
 - 2. Division 08 Section "Door Hardware" for hardware on wood doors.
 - 3. Division 08 Section "Hollow Metal Doors and Frames" for wood doors in steel frames.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of door indicated. Include details of core and edge construction and trim for openings. Include factory-finishing specifications.
- B. Shop Drawings: Indicate location, size, and hand of each door; elevation of each kind of door; construction details not covered in Product Data; location and extent of hardware blocking; and other pertinent data.
 - 1. Indicate dimensions and locations of mortises and holes for hardware.
 - 2. Indicate dimensions and locations of cutouts.
 - 3. Indicate requirements for veneer matching.
 - 4. Indicate doors to be factory finished and finish requirements.
 - 5. Indicate fire-protection ratings for fire-rated doors.
 - 6. Labeled fire rated doors showing conformance w/ NFPA 80.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For factory-finished doors.
- D. Samples for Verification:
 - 1. Factory finishes applied to actual door face materials, approximately 8 by 10 inches (200 by 250 mm), for each material and finish.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

08 1416 - 1
FLUSH WOOD DOORS

B. Laboratory Test Reports:

1. Screw holding capacity test report in accordance with WDMA T.M. 10.
2. Split resistance test report in accordance with WDMA T.M. 5.
3. Cycle/slam test report in accordance with WDMA T.M. 8.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: A qualified manufacturer that is certified for chain of custody by an FSC-accredited certification body.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain flush wood doors from single manufacturer.
- C. Quality Standard: In addition to requirements specified, comply with WDMA I.S.1-A, "Architectural Wood Flush Doors."

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Comply with requirements of referenced standard and manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Package doors individually in cardboard cartons and wrap bundles of doors in plastic sheeting.
- C. Mark each door on top and bottom rail with opening number used on Shop Drawings.

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install doors until spaces are enclosed and weathertight, wet work in spaces is complete and dry, and HVAC system is operating and maintaining ambient temperature and humidity conditions at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.

1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace doors that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Warping (bow, cup, or twist) more than 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) in a 42-by-84-inch (1067-by-2134-mm) section.
 - b. Telegraphing of core construction in face veneers exceeding 0.01 inch in a 3-inch (0.25 mm in a 76.2-mm) span.
 2. Warranty shall also include installation and finishing that may be required due to repair or replacement of defective doors.
 3. Warranty Period for Solid-Core Interior Doors: Life of installation.

1.9 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS

- A. Publications listed below form a part of this specification to extend referenced publications are referenced in text by basic designation only.
- B. Window and Door Manufacturers Association (WDMA):
- | | | |
|----|-------------|--|
| 1. | I.S. 1-A-04 | Architectural Wood Flush Doors |
| 2. | I.S. 4-07A | Water-Repellent Preservative Non-Pressure Treatment for Millwork |
| 3. | I.S.6A-01 | Architectural Wood Stile and Rail Doors |
| 4. | T.M. 5-90 | Split resistance Test Method |
| 5. | T.M. 6-08 | Adhesive (Glue Bond) Durability Test Method |
| 6. | T.M. 7-08 | Cycle-Slam Test Method |
| 7. | T.M. 8-08 | Hinge Loading Test Method |
| 8. | T.M.10-08 | Screw-holding Test Method |
- C. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA):
- | | | |
|----|--------|--|
| 1. | 80-07 | Protection of Buildings from Exterior Fire |
| 2. | 252-08 | Fire Tests of Door Assemblies |
- D. ASTM International (ASTM):
- | | | |
|----|--------|---|
| 1. | E90-04 | Laboratory Measurements of Airborne Sound Transmission Loss |
|----|--------|---|

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
- | | |
|----|--------------------------------------|
| 1. | Algoma Hardwoods, Inc. |
| 2. | Eggers Industries. |
| 3. | Graham; an Assa Abloy Group company. |
| 4. | VT Industries Inc. |

2.2 DOOR CONSTRUCTION, GENERAL

- A. Low-Emitting Materials: Fabricate doors with adhesives and composite wood products that do not contain urea formaldehyde.
- B. WDMA I.S.1-A Performance Grade: Extra Heavy Duty.
- C. Particleboard-Core Doors:
- | | |
|----|--|
| 1. | Particleboard: ANSI A208.1, Grade LD-2, made with binder containing no urea-formaldehyde resin. |
| 2. | Blocking: Provide wood blocking in particleboard-core doors as needed to eliminate through-bolting hardware. |
| 3. | Provide doors with structural-composite-lumber cores instead of particleboard cores for doors indicated to receive exit devices. |

D. Structural-Composite-Lumber-Core Doors:

1. Structural Composite Lumber: WDMA I.S.10.
 - a. Screw Withdrawal, Face: 700 lbf (3100 N).
 - b. Screw Withdrawal, Edge: 400 lbf (1780 N).

E. Mineral-Core Doors:

1. Core: Noncombustible mineral product complying with requirements of referenced quality standard and testing and inspecting agency for fire-protection rating indicated.
2. Blocking: Provide composite blocking with improved screw-holding capability approved for use in doors of fire-protection ratings indicated as needed to eliminate through-bolting hardware.
3. Edge Construction: At hinge stiles, provide laminated-edge construction with improved screw-holding capability and split resistance. Comply with specified requirements for exposed edges.

2.3 VENEERED-FACED DOORS FOR TRANSPARENT FINISH

A. Interior Solid-Core Doors:

1. Grade: Premium, with Grade A faces.
2. Species: Red oak.
3. Cut: Plain sliced (flat sliced).
4. Match between Veneer Leaves: Book match.
5. Assembly of Veneer Leaves on Door Faces: Running match.
6. Pair and Set Match: Provide for doors hung in same opening or separated only by mullions.
7. Exposed Vertical Edges: Same species as faces.
8. Core: Particleboard or structural composite lumber.
9. Construction: Five plies. Stiles and rails are bonded to core, then entire unit abrasive planed before veneering. Faces are bonded to core using a hot press.
10. WDMA I.S.1-A Performance Grade: Extra Heavy Duty.

2.4 LIGHT FRAMES

A. Wood Beads for Light Openings in Wood Doors: Provide manufacturer's standard wood beads as follows unless otherwise indicated.

1. Wood Species: Same species as door faces.
2. Profile: Manufacturer's standard shape.
3. At wood-core doors with 20 to 60-minute fire-protection ratings, provide wood beads and metal glazing clips approved for such use.

2.5 FABRICATION

A. Factory fit doors to suit frame-opening sizes indicated. Comply with clearance requirements of referenced quality standard for fitting unless otherwise indicated.

1. Comply with requirements in NFPA 80 for fire-rated doors.

- B. Factory machine doors for hardware that is not surface applied. Locate hardware to comply with DHI-WDHS-3. Comply with final hardware schedules, door frame Shop Drawings, DHI A115-W series standards, and hardware templates.
 - 1. Coordinate with hardware mortises in metal frames to verify dimensions and alignment before factory machining.
 - 2. Metal Astragals: Factory machine astragals and formed-steel edges for hardware for pairs of fire-rated doors.
 - 3. Provide factory application of sealer to edge and routings.
- C. Openings: Cut and trim openings through doors in factory.
 - 1. Light Openings: Trim openings with moldings of material and profile indicated.
 - 2. Glazing: Factory install glazing in doors indicated to be factory finished. Comply with applicable requirements in Division 08 Section "Glazing."

2.6 IDENTIFICATION MARK

- A. On top edge of door.
- B. Provide either a stamp, brand or other indelible mark, giving manufacturer's name, door's trade name, construction of door, code date of manufacture and quality
- C. Accompanied by either of the following additional requirements:
 - 1. An identification mark or a separate certification including name of inspection organization
 - 2. Identification of standards for door, including glue type.
 - 3. Identification of veneer and quality certification.
 - 4. Identification of preservative treatment for stile and rail doors.

2.7 FACTORY FINISHING

- A. General: Comply with referenced quality standard for factory finishing. Complete fabrication, including fitting doors for openings and machining for hardware that is not surface applied, before finishing.
 - 1. Finish faces, all four edges, edges of cutouts, and mortises. Stains and fillers may be omitted on top and bottom edges, edges of cutouts, and mortises.
- B. Finish doors at factory.
- C. Finish doors at factory that are indicated to receive transparent finish. Field finish doors indicated to receive opaque finish.
- D. Transparent Finish:
 - 1. Grade: Premium.
 - 2. Finish: WDMA TR-6 catalyzed polyurethane.
 - 3. Staining: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
 - 4. Effect: Open-grain finish.
 - 5. Sheen: Satin.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine doors and installed door frames before hanging doors.
 - 1. Verify that frames comply with indicated requirements for type, size, location, and swing characteristics and have been installed with level heads and plumb jambs.
 - 2. Reject doors with defects.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Hardware: For installation, see Division 08 Section "Door Hardware."
- B. Installation Instructions: Install doors to comply with manufacturer's written instructions and the referenced quality standard, and as indicated.
 - 1. Install fire-rated doors in corresponding fire-rated frames according to NFPA 80.
- C. Job-Fitted Doors: Align and fit doors in frames with uniform clearances and bevels as indicated below; do not trim stiles and rails in excess of limits set by manufacturer or permitted for fire-rated doors. Machine doors for hardware. Seal edges of doors, edges of cutouts, and mortises after fitting and machining.
 - 1. Clearances: Provide 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) at heads, jambs, and between pairs of doors. Provide 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) from bottom of door to top of decorative floor finish or covering unless otherwise indicated. Where threshold is shown or scheduled, provide 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) from bottom of door to top of threshold unless otherwise indicated.
 - a. Comply with NFPA 80 for fire-rated doors.
 - 2. Bevel non-fire-rated doors 1/8 inch in 2 inches (3-1/2 degrees) at lock and hinge edges.
 - 3. Bevel fire-rated doors 1/8 inch in 2 inches (3-1/2 degrees) at lock edge; trim stiles and rails only to extent permitted by labeling agency.
- D. Factory-Finished Doors: Restore finish before installation if fitting or machining is required at Project site.

3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Operation: Re-hang or replace doors that do not swing or operate freely.
- B. Finished Doors: Replace doors that are damaged or that do not comply with requirements. Doors may be repaired or refinished if work complies with requirements and shows no evidence of repair or refinishing.

3.4 DOOR PROTECTION

April 2015

A-012651
State of Kansas - Energy & Service Center

- A. As door installation is completed, place polyethylene bag or cardboard shipping container over door and tape in place
- B. Provide protective covering over knobs and handles in addition to covering door.
- C. Maintain covering in good condition until removal is approved by Owner.

END OF SECTION 08 1416

08 1416 - 7
FLUSH WOOD DOORS

SECTION 08 3113 - ACCESS DOORS AND FRAMES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Access doors and frames for walls and ceilings.
2. Floor Access Doors.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include construction details, materials, individual components and profiles, and finishes.

- B. Shop Drawings:

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
2. Detail fabrication and installation of access doors and frames for each type of substrate.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 ACCESS DOORS AND FRAMES FOR WALLS AND CEILINGS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Acudor Products, Inc.
2. Jensen Industries; Div. of Broan-Nutone, LLC.
3. J. L. Industries, Inc.; Div. of Activar Construction Products Group.
4. Larsen's Manufacturing Company.
5. MIFAB, Inc.
6. Milcor Inc.
7. Nystrom, Inc.

- B. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of access door and frame from single source from single manufacturer.

- C. Flush Access Doors with Exposed Flanges:

1. Assembly Description: Fabricate door to fit flush to frame. Provide manufacturer's standard-width exposed flange, proportional to door size.
 2. Locations: Wall and ceiling.
 3. Door Size:
 - a. Wall Locations: 24 inches by 24 inches (610 mm by 610 mm).
 - b. Ceiling Locations: 12 inches by 12 inches (305 mm by 305 mm)
 4. Uncoated Steel Sheet for Door: Nominal 0.060 inch (1.52 mm), 16 gage.
 - a. Finish: Factory prime.
 5. Frame Material: Same material, thickness, and finish as door.
 6. Hinges: Manufacturer's standard continuous hinge.
 7. Hardware: Latch.
- D. Hardware:
1. Latch: Cam latch.

2.2 FLOOR ACCESS DOOR

- A. Basis-of-Design Manufacturer: Type J-AL Access Door by The Bilco Company.
- B. Type: Furnish and install where indicated on plans vault access door Type J-AL, size width 36 x length 30 (914 x 762 mm). Length denotes hinge sides. The floor access door shall be single leaf and pre-assembled from the manufacturer.
- C. Performance characteristics:
1. Cover: Shall be reinforced to support a minimum live load of 300 psf (1464 kg/m²) with a maximum deflection of 1/150th of the span.
 2. Operation of the cover shall be smooth and easy with controlled operation throughout the entire arc of opening and closing.
 3. Operation of the cover shall not be affected by temperature.
 4. Entire door, including all hardware components, shall be highly corrosion resistant.
- D. Cover: Shall be 1/4" (6mm) aluminum diamond pattern.
- E. Frame: Channel frame shall be extruded aluminum with bend down anchor tabs around the perimeter.
- F. Hinges: Shall be specifically designed for horizontal installation and shall be through bolted to covers with tamperproof Type 316 stainless steel lock bolts and shall be through bolted to the frame with Type 316 stainless steel bolts and locknuts.
- G. Drain Coupling: Provide a 1-1/2" (38mm) drain coupling located in the right front corner of the channel frame [note: can be placed at a different location if specified].
- H. Lifting mechanisms: Manufacturer shall provide the required number and size of compression spring operators enclosed in telescopic tubes to provide, smooth, easy, and controlled cover operation throughout the entire arc of opening and to act as a check in retarding downward motion of the covers when closing. The upper tube shall be the outer tube to prevent

accumulation of moisture, grit, and debris inside the lower tube assembly. The lower tube shall interlock with a flanged support shoe fastened to a formed 1/4" (6mm) gusset support plate.

- I. A removable exterior turn/lift handle with a spring loaded ball detent shall be provided to open the cover and the latch release shall be protected by a flush, gasketed, removable screw plug.
- J. Hardware:
 - 1. Hinges: Heavy forged Type 316 stainless steel hinges, each having a minimum 1/4" (6mm) diameter Type 316 stainless steel pin, shall be provided and shall pivot so the covers do not protrude into the channel frame.
 - 2. Cover shall be equipped with a hold open arm which automatically locks each cover in the open position.
 - 3. Cover shall be fitted with the required number and size of compression spring operators. Springs and spring tubes shall be Type 316 stainless steel.
 - 4. A Type 316 stainless steel snap lock with fixed handle shall be mounted on the underside of one cover.
 - 5. Hardware: Shall be Type 316 stainless steel throughout.
- K. Finishes: Factory finish shall be mill finish aluminum with bituminous coating applied to the exterior of the frame.

2.3 MATERIALS

- A. Steel Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
- B. Steel Sheet: Uncoated or electrolytic zinc coated, ASTM A 879/A 879M, with cold-rolled steel sheet substrate complying with ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, Commercial Steel (CS), exposed.
- C. Frame Anchors: Same type as door face.
- D. Inserts, Bolts, and Anchor Fasteners: Hot-dip galvanized steel according to ASTM A 153/A 153M or ASTM F 2329.

2.4 FABRICATION

- A. General: Provide access door and frame assemblies manufactured as integral units ready for installation.
- B. Metal Surfaces: For metal surfaces exposed to view in the completed Work, provide materials with smooth, flat surfaces without blemishes. Do not use materials with exposed pitting, seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names, or roughness.
- C. Doors and Frames: Grind exposed welds smooth and flush with adjacent surfaces. Furnish attachment devices and fasteners of type required to secure access doors to types of supports indicated.
 - 1. Provide mounting holes in frames for attachment of units to metal or wood framing.
 - 2. Provide mounting holes in frame for attachment of masonry anchors.
- D. Latching Mechanisms: Furnish number required to hold doors in flush, smooth plane when closed.

2.5 FINISHES

- A. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- B. Steel and Metallic-Coated-Steel Finishes:
 - 1. Factory Prime: Apply manufacturer's standard, fast-curing, lead- and chromate-free, universal primer immediately after surface preparation and pretreatment.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installing access doors and frames.
- B. Install doors flush with adjacent finish surfaces or recessed to receive finish material.

3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust doors and hardware, after installation, for proper operation.
- B. Remove and replace doors and frames that are warped, bowed, or otherwise damaged.

END OF SECTION 08 3113

SECTION 08 3323 - OVERHEAD COILING DOORS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Insulated service doors.
 - 2. Counter doors.
- B. Related Sections:
 - 1. Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for miscellaneous steel supports.
 - 2. Section 064023 "Interior Architectural Woodwork" for solid surface counters.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Design overhead coiling doors, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
- B. Structural Performance, Exterior Doors: Exterior overhead coiling doors shall withstand the wind loads, the effects of gravity loads, and loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated according to SEI/ASCE 7.
 - 1. Wind Loads: Uniform pressure (velocity pressure) of 20 lbf/sq. ft., acting inward and outward.
 - a. Basic Wind Speed: 90 mph.
 - b. Exposure Category: C.
 - 2. Deflection Limits: Design overhead coiling doors to withstand design wind load without evidencing permanent deformation or disengagement of door components.
- C. Operability under Wind Load, Exterior Doors: Design overhead coiling doors to remain operable under design wind load, acting inward and outward.
- D. Seismic Performance: Overhead coiling doors shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to SEI/ASCE 7.
 - 1. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified."
 - 2. Seismic Component Importance Factor: 1.0.

08 3323 - 1
OVERHEAD COILING DOORS

- E. Operation Cycles: Provide overhead coiling door components and operators capable of operating for not less than number of cycles indicated for each door. One operation cycle is complete when a door is opened from the closed position to the fully open position and returned to the closed position.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type and size of overhead coiling door and accessory. Include the following:
 - 1. Construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components, profiles for slats, and finishes.
 - 2. Rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings: For each installation and for special components not dimensioned or detailed in manufacturer's product data. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
 - 1. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
 - 2. Show locations of replaceable fusible links.
 - 3. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: Manufacturer's finish charts showing full range of colors and textures available for units with factory-applied finishes.
 - 1. Include similar Samples of accessories involving color selection.
- D. Samples for Verification: For each type of exposed finish required, prepared on Samples of size indicated below.
 - 1. Curtain Slats: 12 inches long.
 - 2. Bottom Bar: 6 inches long with sensor edge.
 - 3. Guides: 6 inches long.
 - 4. Brackets: 6 inches square.
 - 5. Hood: 6 inches square.
- E. Maintenance and Operating Manuals: Furnish complete manuals describing the materials, devices and procedures to be followed in operating and maintaining all coiling insulated service doors under this section. Include manufacturer's brochures and parts lists describing the actual materials used in the product

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.
- B. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For overhead coiling doors, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.

- C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For overhead coiling doors indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
 - 1. Detail fabrication and assembly of seismic restraints.
 - 2. Summary of forces and loads on walls and jambs.
- 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS
 - A. Maintenance Data: For overhead coiling doors to include in maintenance manuals.
- 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE
 - A. Installer Qualifications: Manufacturer's authorized representative who is trained and approved for both installation and maintenance of units required for this Project.
 - B. Source Limitations: Obtain overhead coiling doors from single source from single manufacturer.
 - 1. Obtain operators and controls from overhead coiling door manufacturer.
 - C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
 - D. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with applicable provisions in the U.S. Architectural & Transportation Barriers Compliance Board's ADA-ABA Accessibility Guidelines.
- 1.8 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS
 - A. The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referenced in the text by the basic designation only.
 - B. American Society for Testing and Materials

1. A36/A36M-05 2. A167-99 (R2004) 3. A653/A653m-07 4. B209/209M-07 5. B221/B221M-06	- Structural Steel - Stainless and Heat-Resisting Chromium-Nickel Steel Plate, Sheet and Strip - Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip process - Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy sheet and Plate - Aluminum-Alloy Extruded Bars, Rods, Wire, Shapes, and Tubes
---	---
 - C. National Electrical Manufacturers Association (NEMA):

1. ICS 1-00(R2005) 2. ICS 2-00(R2005) 3. ICS 6-93 (R2006) 4. MG 1-06 5. ST 20-92 (R1997)	- Industrial Control and Systems General Requirements - Industrial Control, and Systems, Controllers, Contractors, and Overload Relays - Industrial Control and Systems Enclosures - Motors and Generators - Dry-Type Transformers for General Applications
--	---
 - D. Master Painters Institute (MPI):

1. MPI #35 Exterior Bituminous Coating
 2. MPI #76 Quick Drying Alkyd Metal Primer
- E. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA):
1. 70-07 National Electrical Code 1999 Edition
 2. 80-06 Fire Doors and Fire Windows
- F. National Association of Architectural Metal Manufacturers (NAAMM):
1. AMP 500 Series Metal Finishes Manual
- G. Underwriters Library, Inc.
1. 2007 Fire Resistance Directory

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 DOOR CURTAIN MATERIALS AND CONSTRUCTION

- A. Door Curtains: Fabricate overhead coiling-door curtain of interlocking metal slats, designed to withstand wind loading indicated, in a continuous length for width of door without splices. Unless otherwise indicated, provide slats of thickness and mechanical properties recommended by door manufacturer for performance, size, and type of door indicated, and as follows:
1. Steel Door Curtain Slats: Zinc-coated (galvanized), cold-rolled structural steel sheet; complying with ASTM A 653/A 653M, with G90 (Z275) zinc coating; nominal sheet thickness (coated) of 0.028 inch and as required to meet requirements.
 2. Vision-Panel Glazing: Manufacturer's standard translucent glazing, fabricated from transparent acrylic sheet or fire-protection rated glass as required for type of door; set in glazing channel secured to curtain slats.
 3. Insulation: Fill slats for insulated doors with manufacturer's standard thermal insulation complying with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 75 and 450, respectively, according to ASTM E 84. Enclose insulation completely within slat faces.
 4. Metal Interior Curtain-Slat Facing: Match metal of exterior curtain-slat face.
 5. Gasket Seal: Provide insulated slats with manufacturer's standard interior-to-exterior thermal break or with continuous gaskets between slats.
- B. Endlocks and Windlocks for Service Doors: Malleable-iron casings galvanized after fabrication, secured to curtain slats with galvanized rivets or high-strength nylon. Provide locks on not less than alternate curtain slats for curtain alignment and resistance against lateral movement.
- C. Endlocks for Counter Doors: Manufacturer's standard locks on not less than alternate curtain slats for curtain alignment and resistance against lateral movement.
- D. Bottom Bar for Service Doors: Consisting of two angles, each not less than 1-1/2 by 1-1/2 by 1/8 inch thick; fabricated from manufacturer's standard hot-dip galvanized steel, stainless steel, or aluminum extrusions to match curtain slats and finish.
- E. Bottom Bar for Counter Doors: Manufacturer's standard continuous channel or tubular shape, fabricated from manufacturer's standard hot-dip galvanized steel, stainless steel, or aluminum extrusions to match curtain slats and finish.

- F. Astragal for Interior Doors: Equip each door bottom bar with a replaceable, adjustable, continuous, compressible gasket of flexible vinyl, rubber, or neoprene as a cushion bumper.
- G. Curtain Jamb Guides: Manufacturer's standard angles or channels and angles of same material and finish as curtain slats unless otherwise indicated, with sufficient depth and strength to retain curtain, to allow curtain to operate smoothly, and to withstand loading. Slot bolt holes for guide adjustment. Provide removable stops on guides to prevent overtravel of curtain, and a continuous bar for holding windlocks.

2.2 HOOD

- A. General: Form sheet metal hood to entirely enclose coiled curtain and operating mechanism at opening head. Contour to fit end brackets to which hood is attached. Roll and reinforce top and bottom edges for stiffness. Form closed ends for surface-mounted hoods and fascia for any portion of between-jamb mounting that projects beyond wall face. Equip hood with intermediate support brackets as required to prevent sagging.
 - 1. Galvanized Steel: Nominal 0.028-inch- thick, hot-dip galvanized steel sheet with G90 (Z275) zinc coating, complying with ASTM A 653/A 653M.

2.3 LOCKING DEVICES

- A. Slide Bolt: Fabricate with side-locking bolts to engage through slots in tracks for locking by padlock, located on both left and right jamb sides, operable from coil side.
- B. Chain Lock Keeper: Suitable for padlock.
- C. Safety Interlock Switch: Equip power-operated doors with safety interlock switch to disengage power supply when door is locked.

2.4 CURTAIN ACCESSORIES

- A. Weatherseals: Equip each service door with weather-stripping gaskets fitted to entire perimeter of door for a weathertight installation, unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. At door head, use 1/8-inch- thick, replaceable, continuous sheet secured to inside of hood.
 - 2. At door jambs, use replaceable, adjustable, continuous, flexible, 1/8-inch- thick seals of flexible vinyl, rubber, or neoprene.
- B. Push/Pull Handles: Equip each push-up-operated or emergency-operated door with lifting handles on each side of door, finished to match door.
 - 1. Provide pull-down straps or pole hooks for doors more than 84 inches high.

2.5 COUNTERBALANCING MECHANISM

- A. General: Counterbalance doors by means of manufacturer's standard mechanism with an adjustable-tension, steel helical torsion spring mounted around a steel shaft and contained in a spring barrel connected to top of curtain with barrel rings. Use grease-sealed bearings or self-lubricating graphite bearings for rotating members.

- B. Counterbalance Barrel: Fabricate spring barrel of manufacturer's standard hot-formed, structural-quality, welded or seamless carbon-steel pipe, of sufficient diameter and wall thickness to support rolled-up curtain without distortion of slats and to limit barrel deflection to not more than 0.03 in./ft. of span under full load.
- C. Spring Balance: One or more oil-tempered, heat-treated steel helical torsion springs. Size springs to counterbalance weight of curtain, with uniform adjustment accessible from outside barrel. Secure ends of springs to barrel and shaft with cast-steel barrel plugs.
- D. Torsion Rod for Counterbalance Shaft: Fabricate of manufacturer's standard cold-rolled steel, sized to hold fixed spring ends and carry torsional load.
- E. Brackets: Manufacturer's standard mounting brackets of either cast iron or cold-rolled steel plate.

2.6 MANUAL DOOR OPERATORS

- A. Equip door with manufacturer's recommended manual door operator unless another type of door operator is indicated.
- B. Push-up Door Operation: Design counterbalance mechanism so required lift or pull for door operation does not exceed 25 lbf (111 N).
- C. Chain-Hoist Operator: Consisting of endless steel hand chain, chain-pocket wheel and guard, and gear-reduction unit with a maximum 25 lbf force for door operation. Provide alloy-steel hand chain with chain holder secured to operator guide.

2.7 ELECTRIC DOOR OPERATORS

- A. General: Electric door operator assembly of size and capacity recommended and provided by door manufacturer for door and operation-cycles requirement specified, with electric motor and factory-prewired motor controls, starter, gear-reduction unit, solenoid-operated brake, clutch, remote-control stations, control devices, integral gearing for locking door, and accessories required for proper operation.
 - 1. Comply with NFPA 70.
 - 2. Provide control equipment complying with NEMA ICS 1, NEMA ICS 2, and NEMA ICS 6, with NFPA 70 Class 2 control circuit, maximum 24 V, ac or dc.
- B. Usage Classification: Electric operator and components capable of operating for not less than number of cycles per hour indicated for each door.
- C. Door Operator Location(s): Operator location indicated for each door.
 - 1. Electric Motor Operator: Coiling insulated service door shall be provided with a direct drive power unit model type ADF. The operator shall not utilize any drive chains between the door's inner shaft and the motor operator, the drive shaft of the door shall run directly into the gearbox of the operator without the use of any drive chains or drive sprockets. High efficiency helical gearing running in an oil bath shall be furnished together with a rectifier-operated brake completely housed to protect against damage, dust, and moisture. An efficient overload protection device, which will break the power circuit, and protect against damage to the motor windings shall be integral with the unit. The motor

operator shall be designed to operate the door at an average speed of 6" per second. Operator is to be NEMA type 1 enclosure

- a. Motor: shall be intermediate duty, thermally protected, ball bearing type with a class A or better insulation. Horsepower of motor is to be ¾ hp minimum or of manufacturer's recommended size, whichever is greater.
 - b. Starter: shall be size "0" magnetic reversing starter, across the line type with mechanical and electrical interlocks, with 10 amp continuous rating and 24 volt control circuit.
 - c. Reducer: Helical gear type, 75% efficient minimum.
 - d. Brake: Magnetically activated, integral within the operator's housing
- D. Electric Motors: Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements specified in Section 110513 "Common Motor Requirements for Equipment" unless otherwise indicated.
1. Electrical Characteristics:
 - a. Phase: Single phase.
 - b. Volts: 208 V.
 - c. Hertz: 60.
 2. Motor Type and Controller: Reversible motor and controller (disconnect switch) for motor exposure indicated.
 3. Motor Size: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough to start, accelerate, and operate door in either direction from any position, at a speed not less than 8 in./sec. and not more than 12 in./sec., without exceeding nameplate ratings or service factor.
 4. Operating Controls, Controllers (Disconnect Switches), Wiring Devices, and Wiring: Manufacturer's standard unless otherwise indicated.
 5. Coordinate wiring requirements and electrical characteristics of motors and other electrical devices with building electrical system and each location where installed.
- E. Limit Switches: Equip each motorized door with adjustable switches interlocked with motor controls and set to automatically stop door at fully opened and fully closed positions.
- F. Obstruction Detection Device: Equip motorized door with indicated external automatic safety sensor capable of protecting full width of door opening. For non-fire-rated doors, activation of device immediately stops and reverses downward door travel.
1. Sensor Edge: Automatic safety sensor edge, located within astragal or weather stripping mounted to bottom bar. Contact with sensor activates device. Connect to control circuit using manufacturer's standard take-up reel or self-coiling cable.
 - a. Self-Monitoring Type: Four-wire configured device designed to interface with door operator control circuit to detect damage to or disconnection of sensor edge.
- G. Remote-Control Station: Momentary-contact, three-button control station with push-button controls labeled "Open," "Close," and "Stop."
1. Interior units, full-guarded, surface-mounted, heavy-duty type, with general-purpose NEMA ICS 6, Type 1 enclosure.
 2. Exterior units, full-guarded, standard-duty, surface-mounted, weatherproof type, NEMA ICS 6, Type 4 enclosure, key operated.

- H. Emergency Manual Operation: Equip each electrically powered door with capability for emergency manual operation. Design manual mechanism so required force for door operation does not exceed 25 lbf.
- I. Emergency Operation Disconnect Device: Equip operator with hand-operated disconnect mechanism for automatically engaging manual operator and releasing brake for emergency manual operation while disconnecting motor without affecting timing of limit switch. Mount mechanism so it is accessible from floor level. Include interlock device to automatically prevent motor from operating when emergency operator is engaged.
- J. Motor Removal: Design operator so motor may be removed without disturbing limit-switch adjustment and without affecting emergency manual operation.
- K. Audible and Visual Signals: Audible alarm and visual indicator lights in compliance with regulatory requirements for accessibility.

2.8 DOOR ASSEMBLY – SERVICE DOORS

- A. Insulated Service Door: Overhead coiling door formed with curtain of interlocking metal slats.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product by one of the following:
 - a. McKeon Door Company (Basis of Design)
 - b. Overhead Door Corporation.
 - c. Raynor.
 - d. Wayne-Dalton Corp.
 - e. Cornell Ironworks
- B. Model: IS3018-ADF-G as manufactured by McKeon Door Company
- C. Operation Cycles: Not less than 50,000.
 - 1. Include tamperproof cycle counter.
- D. STC Rating: 26.
- E. Curtain R-Value: 6.0 deg F x h x sq. ft./Btu.
- F. Door Curtain Material: Galvanized steel.
- G. Door Curtain Slats: Shall be assembled of interlocking galvanized steel slats. Slats shall have a combination of endlocks and windlocks locking each end of all alternate slats to act as a wearing surface, maintain slat alignment and retain the curtain in the guides under wind pressure. Curtain shall be formed of 18 gauge front and back panel slats. The void of the curtain slats shall be filled with foamed-in-place polyurethane insulation and the front and back panel slats must have a positive interlock. Slats with snap-in back panels are not acceptable.
 - 1. Slats: Shall be of a cross section not less than 3" wide by 1" deep.
 - 2. Vision Panels: Approximately 10- by 1-5/8-inch openings spaced approximately 2 inches apart and beginning 12 inches from end guides; in three rows of slats at height indicated on Drawings; installed with insulated vision-panel glazing.
 - 3. Insulated-Slat Interior Facing: Metal.

- H. Curtain Jamb Guides: Galvanized steel with exposed finish matching curtain slats. Provide continuous integral wear strips to prevent metal-to-metal contact and to minimize operational noise. Each guide assembly shall be fabricated of a minimum 4" x 4" steel support angle, a 2½" x 4" inner guide angle and a 4" x 4" outer guide angle. Guides shall be designed with integral windbars in order to engage and retain the curtain under heavy wind pressures. Provide neoprene weather seals extending the full height of both guides.
- I. Bottom Bar: Shall consist of two (2) angles, each not less than 2" x 2" x 1/8" steel formed to fit slats.
- J. Mounting Brackets: Fabricated of hot rolled 3/16" steel plate minimum, brackets shall be provided to house ends of the counterbalance barrel assembly
- K. Hood: Match curtain material and finish. Shall be provided to entirely enclose curtain and counterbalance barrel assembly. Hood shall be fabricated 22 gauge galvanized steel and designed to match brackets. Top and bottom shall be bent and reinforced for stiffness. Provide internal neoprene air baffle to minimize air infiltration at the head
 - 1. Shape: Square.
 - 2. Mounting: Face of wall.
- L. Counterbalance Assembly: Coiling insulated service door shall be counterbalanced by means of adjustable steel helical torsion springs attached to shaft enclosed in pipe with required mounting blocks or rings for attachment of curtain. Grease sealed bearings or self-lubricating graphite bearings shall be attached to the spring barrel which shall be fabricated of hot formed structural quality carbon steel seamless pipe
- M. Locking Devices: Equip door with locking device assembly and chain lock keeper.
 - 1. Locking Device Assembly: Single-jamb side locking bars, operable from inside with thumb turn.
- N. Electric Door Operator: Coiling insulated service door shall be provided with a direct drive power unit model type ADF. The operator shall not utilize any drive chains between the door's inner shaft and the motor operator, the drive shaft of the door shall run directly into the gearbox of the operator without the use of any drive chains or drive sprockets. High efficiency helical gearing running in an oil bath shall be furnished together with a rectifier-operated brake completely housed to protect against damage, dust, and moisture. An efficient overload protection device, which will break the power circuit and protect against damage to the motor windings shall be integral with the unit. The motor operator shall be designed to operate the door at an average speed of 6" per second. Operator is to be NEMA type 1 enclosure.
 - 1. Usage Classification: Standard duty, up to 60 cycles per hour.
 - 2. Motor: Shall be intermediate duty, thermally protected, ball bearing type with a class A or better insulation. Horsepower of motor is to be ¾ hp minimum or of manufacturer's recommended size, whichever is greater.
 - 3. Starter: Shall be size "0" magnetic reversing starter, across the line type with mechanical and electrical interlocks, with 10 amp continuous rating and 24 volt control circuit.
 - 4. Reducer: Helical gear type, 75% efficiency minimum.
 - 5. Brake: Magnetically activated, integral within the operator's housing.
 - 6. Control Station: Provide surface mount push button control station marked open, close and stop
 - 7. Operator Location: Manufacturers Standard.
 - 8. Motor Exposure: Interior.
 - 9. Emergency Manual Operation: Chain type.

10. Obstruction-Detection Device: The coiling insulated service door shall be designed with an obstruction sensing safety edge. In the event that the safety edge meets an obstruction during the normal closing operation, the coiling insulated service door shall stop, reverse and return to the open position
 - a. Sensor Edge Bulb Color: Black.
 11. Remote-Control Station: Interior.
- O. Door Finish:
1. Baked-Enamel or Powder-Coated Finish: Color as selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
 2. Interior Curtain-Slat Facing: Match finish of exterior curtain-slat face.
 3. After completion of fabrication, clean all metal surfaces to remove dirt and chemically treat to provide for paint adhesion. Slats are to receive a prime coat finish of .2 mils of epoxy primer and .8 mils of polyester paint

2.9 DOOR ASSEMBLY – COUNTER DOORS

- A. Insulated Counter Door: Overhead coiling door formed with curtain of interlocking metal slats.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product by one of the following:
 - a. McKeon Door Company (Basis of Design)
 - b. Overhead Door Corporation.
 - c. Raynor.
 - d. Wayne-Dalton Corp.
- B. Model: CS 3000-PP-PC as manufactured by McKeon Door Company
- C. Operation Cycles: Not less than 50,000.
- D. STC Rating: 26.
- E. Curtain R-Value: 6.0 deg F x h x sq. ft./Btu.
- F. Door Curtain Material: Galvanized steel.
- G. Door Curtain Slats: Shall be assembled of interlocking galvanized steel slats. Slats shall have a combination of endlocks locking each end of all alternate slats to act as a wearing surface, maintain slat alignment. Curtain shall be formed of 18 gauge front and back panel slats. The void of the curtain slats shall be filled with foamed-in-place polyurethane insulation and the front and back panel slats must have a positive interlock. Slats with snap-in back panels are not acceptable.
1. Slats: Shall be of a cross section not less than 1 ½" wide by ½" deep.
 2. Insulated-Slat Interior Facing: Metal.
- H. Curtain Jamb Guides: Galvanized steel with exposed finish matching curtain slats. Provide continuous integral wear strips to prevent metal-to-metal contact and to minimize operational noise. Each guide assembly shall be fabricated of a minimum 1/8" steel support angles and

channels formed to a box type configuration. Provide neoprene weather seals extending the full height of both guides.

- I. Bottom Bar: Shall consist of a single 1 1/2" x 1 1/2" x 1/8" steel formed to fit slats.
- J. Mounting Brackets: Fabricated of hot rolled 1/8" steel plate minimum, brackets shall be provided to house ends of the counterbalance barrel assembly
- K. Hood: Match curtain material and finish. Shall be provided to entirely enclose curtain and counterbalance barrel assembly. Hood shall be fabricated 22 gauge galvanized steel and designed to match brackets. Top and bottom shall be bent and reinforced for stiffness. Provide internal neoprene air baffle to minimize air infiltration at the head
 - 1. Shape: Square.
 - 2. Mounting: Face of wall.
- L. Counterbalance Assembly: Coiling insulated service door shall be counterbalanced by means of adjustable steel helical torsion springs attached to shaft enclosed in pipe with required mounting blocks or rings for attachment of curtain. Grease sealed bearings or self-lubricating graphite bearings shall be attached to the spring barrel which shall be fabricated of hot formed structural quality carbon steel seamless pipe
- M. Locking Devices: Equip door with locking device assembly and chain lock keeper.
 - 1. Locking Device Assembly: Two-jamb slide locking bars, operable from inside with thumb turn.
- N. Manual Operation: Counter shutter shall be designed so that it may be manually opened and closed. The counter shutter shall not require more than 35 pounds of operational force to move the shutter in either direction.

2.10 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- B. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

2.11 STEEL AND GALVANIZED-STEEL FINISHES

- A. Baked-Enamel or Powder-Coat Finish: Manufacturer's standard baked-on finish consisting of prime coat and thermosetting topcoat. Comply with coating manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning, pretreatment, application, and minimum dry film thickness.
 - 1. Baked-Enamel or Powder-Coated Finish: Color as selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
 - 2. Interior Curtain-Slat Facing: Match finish of exterior curtain-slat face.
 - 3. After completion of fabrication, clean all metal surfaces to remove dirt and chemically treat to provide for paint adhesion. Slats are to receive a prime coat finish of .2 mils of epoxy primer and .8 mils of polyester paint

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates areas and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for substrate construction and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine locations of electrical connections.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install overhead coiling doors and operating equipment complete with necessary hardware, anchors, inserts, hangers, and equipment supports; according to manufacturer's written instructions and as specified.
- B. Install overhead coiling doors, hoods, and operators at the mounting locations indicated for each door.
- C. Accessibility: Install overhead coiling doors, switches, and controls along accessible routes in compliance with regulatory requirements for accessibility.

3.3 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform startup service.
 - 1. Perform installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 2. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust hardware and moving parts to function smoothly so that doors operate easily, free of warp, twist, or distortion.
- B. Lubricate bearings and sliding parts as recommended by manufacturer.
- C. Adjust seals to provide weathertight fit around entire perimeter.

3.5 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain overhead coiling doors.

END OF SECTION 08 3323

SECTION 083613 - SECTIONAL DOORS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes electrically operated sectional doors.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for miscellaneous steel supports.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type and size of sectional door and accessory.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components, profile door sections, and finishes.
 - 2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings: For each installation and for special components not dimensioned or detailed in manufacturer's product data.
 - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting details.
 - 2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
 - 3. Include points of attachment and their corresponding static and dynamic loads imposed on structure.
 - 4. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For units with factory-applied finishes.
 - 1. Include Samples of accessories involving color selection.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For sectional doors to include in maintenance manuals.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An entity that employs installers and supervisors who are trained and approved by manufacturer for both installation and maintenance of units required for this Project.

1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of sectional doors that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Structural failures including, but not limited to, excessive deflection.
 - b. Failure of components or operators before reaching required number of operation cycles.
 - c. Faulty operation of hardware.
 - d. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal weathering and use; rust through.
 - e. Delamination of exterior or interior facing materials.

2. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

- B. Special Finish Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components that show evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.

1. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS, GENERAL

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain sectional doors from single source from single manufacturer.

1. Obtain operators and controls from sectional door manufacturer.

2.2 DOOR ASSEMBLY

- A. Operation Cycles: Door components and operators capable of operating for not less than 50,000. One operation cycle is complete when a door is opened from the closed position to the fully open position and returned to the closed position.
- B. Air Infiltration: Maximum rate of 0.08 cfm/sq. ft. (0.406 L/s per sq. m) at 15 and 25 mph (24.1 and 40.2 km/h) when tested according to ASTM E 283.
- C. R-Value: 17.5 deg F x h x sq. ft./Btu (3.082 K x sq. m/W).
- D. Steel Sections: Zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet with G90 (Z275) zinc coating.
1. Section Thickness: 2 inches (51 mm) .
 2. Exterior-Face, Steel Sheet Thickness: Insert dimension nominal coated thickness.

- a. Surface: Manufacturer's standard, grooved .
 - 3. Insulation: Foamed in place.
 - 4. Interior Facing Material: Zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet with a nominal coated thickness of **0.019 inch (0.48 mm)**.
 - E. Track Configuration: High-lift track
 - F. Weatherseals: Fitted to bottom and top and around entire perimeter of door. Provide combination bottom weatherseal and sensor edge.
 - G. Windows: Size indicated on Drawings; installed with glazing of the following type:
 - 1. Insulating Glass: Manufacturer's standard.
 - H. Roller-Tire Material: Manufacturer's standard.
 - I. Locking Devices: Equip door with slide bolt for padlock.
 - J. Counterbalance Type: Torsion spring.
 - K. Electric Door Operator:
 - 1. Usage Classification: Heavy duty, 25 or more cycles per hour and more than 90 cycles per day.
 - 2. Operator Type: Manufacturer's standard for door requirements.
 - 3. Safety: Listed according to UL 325 by a qualified testing agency for commercial or industrial use; **moving parts of operator enclosed or guarded if exposed and mounted at 8 feet (2.4 m) or lower.**
 - 4. Motor Exposure: Interior, clean, and dry.
 - 5. Emergency Manual Operation: Push-up type.
 - 6. Obstruction-Detection Device: Automatic electric sensor edge on bottom section.
 - a. Sensor Edge Bulb Color: Black.
 - 7. Other Equipment:
 - L. Door Finish:
 - 1. Baked-Enamel or Powder-Coat Finish: Color and gloss as selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
 - 2. Finish of Interior Facing Material: Finish as selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
- 2.3 MATERIALS, GENERAL
- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- 2.4 STEEL DOOR SECTIONS
- A. Exterior Section Faces and Frames: Zinc-coated (galvanized), cold-rolled, commercial steel (CS) sheet, complying with ASTM A 653/A 653M, with indicated zinc coating and thickness.

1. Fabricate section faces from single sheets to provide sections not more than **24 inches (610 mm)** high and of indicated thickness. Roll horizontal meeting edges to a continuous, interlocking, keyed, rabbeted, shiplap, or tongue-in-groove weather-resistant seal, with a reinforcing flange return.
 2. For insulated doors, provide sections with continuous thermal-break construction, separating the exterior and interior faces of door.
- B. Section Ends and Intermediate Stiles: Enclose open ends of sections with channel end stiles formed from galvanized-steel sheet not less than **0.064-inch (1.63-mm)** nominal coated thickness and welded to door section. Provide intermediate stiles formed from not less than **0.064-inch (1.63-mm)** thick galvanized-steel sheet, cut to door section profile, and welded in place. Space stiles not more than **48 inches (1219 mm)** apart.
- C. Reinforce bottom section with a continuous channel or angle conforming to bottom-section profile.
- D. Reinforce sections with continuous horizontal and diagonal reinforcement, as required to stiffen door and for wind loading. Provide galvanized-steel bars, struts, trusses, or strip steel, formed to depth and bolted or welded in place. Ensure that reinforcement does not obstruct vision lites.
- E. Provide reinforcement for hardware attachment.
- F. Foamed-in-Place Thermal Insulation: Insulate interior of steel sections with door manufacturer's standard CFC-free polyurethane insulation, foamed in place to completely fill interior of section and pressure bonded to face sheets to prevent delamination under wind load, and with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 75 and 450, respectively, according to ASTM E 84. Enclose insulation completely within steel sections and the interior facing material, with no exposed insulation.
- G. Interior Facing Material: Zinc-coated (galvanized), cold-rolled, commercial steel (CS) sheet, complying with ASTM A 653/A 653M, with indicated thickness.
- H. Fabricate sections so finished door assembly is rigid and aligned, with tight hairline joints and free of warp, twist, and deformation.

2.5 TRACKS, SUPPORTS, AND ACCESSORIES

- A. Tracks: Manufacturer's standard, galvanized-steel track system of configuration indicated, sized for door size and weight, designed for lift type indicated and clearances indicated on Drawings. Provide complete system including brackets, bracing, and reinforcement to ensure rigid support of ball-bearing roller guides for required door type, size, weight, and loading.
1. Galvanized Steel: ASTM A 653/A 653M, minimum **G60 (Z180)** zinc coating.
 2. Slope tracks at an angle from vertical or design tracks to ensure tight closure at jambs when door unit is closed.
 3. Track Reinforcement and Supports: Galvanized-steel members to support track without sag, sway, and vibration during opening and closing of doors. Slot vertical sections of track spaced **2 inches (51 mm)** apart for door-drop safety device.
 - a. For Vertical Track: Continuous reinforcing angle from end of track, attached to track and supported at points by laterally braced attachments to overhead structural members.

- B. Weatherseals: Replaceable, adjustable, continuous, compressible weather-stripping gaskets of flexible vinyl, rubber, or neoprene fitted to bottom and top of sectional door unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Windows: Manufacturer's standard window units of type, size, and in arrangement indicated. Set glazing in vinyl, rubber, or neoprene glazing channel for metal-framed doors and elastic glazing compound for wood doors, as required. Provide removable stops of same material as door-section frames.

2.6 HARDWARE

- A. General: Heavy-duty, corrosion-resistant hardware, with hot-dip galvanized, stainless-steel, or other corrosion-resistant fasteners, to suit door type.
- B. Hinges: Heavy-duty, galvanized-steel hinges of not less than 0.079-inch (2.01-mm) nominal coated thickness at each end stile and at each intermediate stile, according to manufacturer's written recommendations for door size. Attach hinges to door sections through stiles and rails with bolts and lock nuts or lock washers and nuts. Use rivets or self-tapping fasteners where access to nuts is impossible. Provide double-end hinges where required, for doors more than 16 feet (4.88 m) wide unless otherwise recommended by door manufacturer.
- C. Rollers: Heavy-duty rollers with steel ball-bearings in case-hardened steel races, mounted with varying projections to suit slope of track. Extend roller shaft through both hinges where double hinges are required. Provide 3-inch (76-mm) diameter roller tires for 3-inch (76-mm) wide track and 2-inch (51-mm) diameter roller tires for 2-inch (51-mm) wide track.

2.7 LOCKING DEVICES

- A. Slide Bolt: Fabricate with side-locking bolts to engage through slots in tracks for locking by padlock, located on single-jamb side, operable from inside only.
- B. Safety Interlock Switch: Equip power-operated doors with safety interlock switch to disengage power supply when door is locked.

2.8 COUNTERBALANCE MECHANISM

- A. Torsion Spring: Counterbalance mechanism consisting of adjustable-tension torsion springs fabricated from steel-spring wire complying with ASTM A 229/A 229M, mounted on torsion shaft made of steel tube or solid steel. Provide springs designed for number of operation cycles indicated.
- B. Cable Drums and Shaft for Doors: Cast-aluminum or gray-iron casting cable drums mounted on torsion shaft and grooved to receive door-lifting cables as door is raised. Mount counterbalance mechanism with manufacturer's standard ball-bearing brackets at each end of torsion shaft. Provide one additional midpoint bracket for shafts up to 16 feet (4.88 m) long and two additional brackets at one-third points to support shafts more than 16 feet (4.88 m) long unless closer spacing is recommended by door manufacturer.
- C. Cables: Galvanized-steel, multi-strand, lifting cables with cable safety factor of at least 5 to 1.

- D. Cable Safety Device: Include a spring-loaded steel or spring-loaded bronze cam mounted to bottom door roller assembly on each side and designed to automatically stop door if either lifting cable breaks.
- E. Bracket: Provide anchor support bracket as required to connect stationary end of spring to the wall and to level the shaft and prevent sag.
- F. Bumper: Provide spring bumper at each horizontal track to cushion door at end of opening operation.

2.9 ELECTRIC DOOR OPERATORS

- A. General: Electric door operator assembly of size and capacity recommended and provided by door manufacturer for door and "operation cycles" requirement specified, with electric motor and factory-prewired motor controls, starter, gear-reduction unit, solenoid-operated brake, clutch, control stations, control devices, integral gearing for locking door, and accessories required for proper operation.
 - 1. Comply with NFPA 70.
 - 2. Control equipment complying with NEMA ICS 1, NEMA ICS 2, and NEMA ICS 6; with NFPA 70, Class 2 control circuit, maximum 24-V ac or dc.
- B. Usage Classification: Electric operator and components capable of operating for not less than number of cycles per hour indicated for each door.
- C. Door-Operator Type: Unit consisting of electric motor, gears, pulleys, belts, sprockets, chains, and controls needed to operate door and meet required usage classification.
- D. Motors: Reversible-type motor with controller (disconnect switch) for motor exposure indicated.
 - 1. Electrical Characteristics:
 - a. Phase: Single phase.
 - b. Volts: **115 V**.
 - c. Hertz: 60.
 - 2. Motor Size: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough to start, accelerate, and operate door in either direction from any position, at a speed not less than **8 in./sec. (203 mm/s)** and not more than **12 in./sec. (305 mm/s)**, without exceeding nameplate ratings or service factor.
 - 3. Operating Controls, Controllers (Disconnect Switches), Wiring Devices, and Wiring: Manufacturer's standard unless otherwise indicated.
 - 4. Coordinate wiring requirements and electrical characteristics of motors and other electrical devices with building electrical system and each location where installed.
 - 5. Use adjustable motor-mounting bases for belt-driven operators.
- E. Limit Switches: Equip motorized door with adjustable switches interlocked with motor controls and set to automatically stop door at fully opened and fully closed positions.
- F. Obstruction Detection Device: External entrapment protection consisting of indicated automatic safety sensor capable of protecting full width of door opening. Activation of device immediately stops and reverses downward door travel.

1. Electric Sensor Edge: Automatic safety sensor edge, located within astragal or weather stripping mounted to bottom section. Contact with sensor activates device. Connect to control circuit using manufacturer's standard take-up reel or self-coiling cable.
 - a. Self-Monitoring Type: Four-wire configured device designed to interface with door-operator control circuit to detect damage to or disconnection of sensor edge.
 - G. Emergency Manual Operation: Equip electrically powered door with capability for emergency manual operation. Design manual mechanism so required force for door operation does not exceed 25 lbf (111 N).
 - H. Emergency Operation Disconnect Device: Equip operator with hand-operated disconnect mechanism for automatically engaging manual operator and releasing brake for emergency manual operation while disconnecting motor without affecting timing of limit switch. Mount mechanism so it is accessible from floor level. Include interlock device to automatically prevent motor from operating when emergency operator is engaged.
 - I. Motor Removal: Design operator so motor may be removed without disturbing limit-switch adjustment and without affecting emergency manual operation.
- 2.10 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS
- A. Comply with NAAMM/NOMMA's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products (AMP 500-06)" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
 - B. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.
- 2.11 STEEL AND GALVANIZED-STEEL FINISHES
- A. Baked-Enamel or Powder-Coat Finish: Manufacturer's standard baked-on finish consisting of prime coat and thermosetting topcoat. Comply with coating manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning, pretreatment, application, and minimum dry film thickness.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

- 3.1 EXAMINATION
- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for substrate construction and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
 - B. Examine locations of electrical connections.
 - C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install sectional doors and operating equipment complete with necessary hardware, anchors, inserts, hangers, and equipment supports; according to manufacturer's written instructions and as specified.
- B. Tracks:
 - 1. Fasten vertical track assembly to opening jambs and framing, spaced not more than **24 inches (610 mm)** apart.
 - 2. Hang vertical track assembly from structural overhead framing with angles or channel hangers attached to framing by welding or bolting, or both. Provide sway bracing, diagonal bracing, and reinforcement as required for rigid installation of track and door-operating equipment.
- C. Accessibility: Install sectional doors, switches, and controls along accessible routes in compliance with regulatory requirements for accessibility.
- D. Power-Operated Doors: Install automatic garage doors openers according to UL 325.

3.3 STARTUP SERVICES

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform startup service.
 - 1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 2. Test and adjust controls and safety devices. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust hardware and moving parts to function smoothly so that doors operate easily, free of warp, twist, or distortion.
- B. Lubricate bearings and sliding parts as recommended by manufacturer.
- C. Adjust doors and seals to provide weather-resistant fit around entire perimeter.
- D. Touch-up Painting: Immediately after welding galvanized materials, clean welds and abraded galvanized surfaces and repair galvanizing to comply with ASTM A 780/A 780M.

3.5 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain sectional doors.

END OF SECTION 083613

SECTION 08 4113 - ALUMINUM-FRAMED ENTRANCES AND STOREFRONTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Exterior and Interior storefront framing.
 - 2. Interior manual-swing entrance doors and door-frame units.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. ADA/ABA Accessibility Guidelines: U.S. Architectural & Transportation Barriers Compliance Board's "Americans with Disability Act (ADA) and Architectural Barriers Act (ABA) Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities."

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General Performance: Aluminum-framed systems shall withstand the effects of the following performance requirements without exceeding performance criteria or failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction:
 - 1. Movements of supporting structure indicated on Drawings including, but not limited to, story drift and deflection from uniformly distributed and concentrated live loads.
 - 2. Dimensional tolerances of building frame and other adjacent construction.
 - 3. Failure includes the following:
 - a. Deflection exceeding specified limits.
 - b. Thermal stresses transferring to building structure.
 - c. Framing members transferring stresses, including those caused by thermal and structural movements to glazing.
 - d. Noise or vibration created by wind and by thermal and structural movements.
 - e. Loosening or weakening of fasteners, attachments, and other components.
 - f. Sealant failure.
 - g. Failure of operating units.
- B. Delegated Design: Design aluminum-framed systems, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
- C. Structural Loads:
 - 1. Wind Loads: As indicated on Drawings.
- D. Deflection of Framing Members:
 - 1. Deflection Normal to Wall Plane: Limited to 1/175 of clear span for spans up to 13 feet 6 inches and to 1/240 of clear span plus 1/4 inch for spans greater than 13 feet 6 inches or

- an amount that restricts edge deflection of individual glazing lites to 3/4 inch, whichever is less.
2. Deflection Parallel to Glazing Plane: Limited to L/360 of clear span or 1/8 inch, whichever is smaller.
- E. Structural-Test Performance: Provide aluminum-framed systems tested according to ASTM E 330 as follows:
1. When tested at positive and negative wind-load design pressures, systems do not evidence deflection exceeding specified limits.
 2. When tested at 150 percent of positive and negative wind-load design pressures, systems, including anchorage, do not evidence material failures, structural distress, and permanent deformation of main framing members exceeding 0.2 percent of span.
 3. Test Durations: As required by design wind velocity, but not fewer than 10 seconds.
- F. Air Infiltration: Provide aluminum-framed systems with maximum air leakage through fixed glazing and framing areas of 0.06 cfm/sq. ft. of fixed wall area when tested according to ASTM E 283 at a minimum static-air-pressure difference of 6.24 lbf/sq. ft..
- G. Water Penetration under Static Pressure: Provide aluminum-framed systems that do not evidence water penetration through fixed glazing and framing areas when tested according to ASTM E 331 at a minimum static-air-pressure difference of 20 percent of positive wind-load design pressure, but not less than 6.24 lbf/sq. ft..
- H. Water Penetration under Dynamic Pressure: Provide aluminum-framed systems that do not evidence water leakage through fixed glazing and framing areas when tested according to AAMA 501.1 under dynamic pressure equal to 20 percent of positive wind-load design pressure, but not less than 6.24 lbf/sq. ft..
1. Maximum Water Leakage: No uncontrolled water penetrating aluminum-framed systems or water appearing on systems' normally exposed interior surfaces from sources other than condensation. Water leakage does not include water controlled by flashing and gutters that is drained to exterior and water that cannot damage adjacent materials or finishes.
- I. Thermal Movements: Provide aluminum-framed systems that allow for thermal movements resulting from the following maximum change (range) in ambient and surface temperatures. Base engineering calculation on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.
1. Temperature Change (Range): 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.
 2. Test Performance: No buckling; stress on glass; sealant failure; excess stress on framing, anchors, and fasteners; or reduction of performance when tested according to AAMA 501.5.
 - a. High Exterior Ambient-Air Temperature: That which produces an exterior metal-surface temperature of 180 deg F.
 - b. Low Exterior Ambient-Air Temperature: 0 deg F.
 3. Interior Ambient-Air Temperature: 75 deg F.
- J. Condensation Resistance: Provide aluminum-framed systems with fixed glazing and framing areas having condensation-resistance factor (CRF) of not less than 53 when tested according to AAMA 1503.

- K. Thermal Conductance: Provide aluminum-framed systems with fixed glazing and framing areas having an average U-factor of not more than 0.57 Btu/sq. ft. x h x deg F when tested according to AAMA 1503.
 - L. Sound Transmission: Provide aluminum-framed systems with fixed glazing and framing areas having the following sound-transmission characteristics:
 - 1. Sound Transmission Class (STC): Minimum 35 STC when tested for laboratory sound transmission loss according to ASTM E 90 and determined by ASTM E 413.
- 1.5 SUBMITTALS
- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for aluminum-framed systems.
 - B. Shop Drawings: For aluminum-framed systems. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
 - 1. Include details of provisions for system expansion and contraction and for drainage of moisture in the system to the exterior.
 - 2. For entrance doors, include hardware schedule and indicate operating hardware types, functions, quantities, and locations.
 - C. Samples for Initial Selection: For units with factory-applied color finishes.
 - D. Delegated-Design Submittal: For aluminum-framed systems indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
 - 1. Detail fabrication and assembly of aluminum-framed systems.
 - 2. Include design calculations.
 - E. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.
 - F. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency, for aluminum-framed systems, indicating compliance with performance requirements.
 - G. Warranties: Sample of special warranties.
- 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE
- A. Installer Qualifications: Manufacturer's authorized representative who is trained and approved for installation of units required for this Project.
 - B. Engineering Responsibility: Prepare data for aluminum-framed systems, including Shop Drawings, based on testing and engineering analysis of manufacturer's standard units in systems similar to those indicated for this Project.
 - C. Product Options: Information on Drawings and in Specifications establishes requirements for systems' aesthetic effects and performance characteristics. Aesthetic effects are indicated by dimensions, arrangements, alignment, and profiles of components and assemblies as they relate to sightlines, to one another, and to adjoining construction. Performance characteristics

are indicated by criteria subject to verification by one or more methods including preconstruction testing, field testing, and in-service performance.

1. Do not revise intended aesthetic effects, as judged solely by Architect, except with Architect's approval. If revisions are proposed, submit comprehensive explanatory data to Architect for review.
- D. Accessible Entrances: Comply with applicable provisions in the U.S. Architectural & Transportation Barriers Compliance Board's ADA-ABA Accessibility Guidelines and ICC/ANSI A117.1.
- E. Source Limitations for Aluminum-Framed Systems: Obtain from single source from single manufacturer.
- F. Pre-installation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify actual locations of structural supports for aluminum-framed systems by field measurements before fabrication and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.

1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of aluminum-framed systems that do not comply with requirements or that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Structural failures including, but not limited to, excessive deflection.
 - b. Noise or vibration caused by thermal movements.
 - c. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal weathering.
 - d. Water leakage through fixed glazing and framing areas.
 - e. Failure of operating components.

2. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Final Completion.

- B. Special Finish Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components on which finishes do not comply with requirements or that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period. Warranty does not include normal weathering.

1. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Final Completion.

1.9 MAINTENANCE SERVICE

- A. Entrance Door Hardware:
 1. Maintenance Tools and Instructions: Furnish a complete set of specialized tools and maintenance instructions as needed for Owner's continued adjustment, maintenance, and removal and replacement of entrance door hardware.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. EFCO Corporation.
2. Kawneer North America; an Alcoa company.
3. TRACO.
4. Tubelite.
5. United States Aluminum.
6. YKK AP America Inc.
7. Manko Window Systems, Inc.
8. Special Lite Mfg.
9. Arch Aluminum & Glass Co., Inc.

2.2 MATERIALS

- A. Aluminum: Alloy and temper recommended by manufacturer for type of use and finish indicated.

1. Sheet and Plate: ASTM B 209.
2. Extruded Bars, Rods, Profiles, and Tubes: ASTM B 221.
3. Extruded Structural Pipe and Tubes: ASTM B 429.
4. Structural Profiles: ASTM B 308/B 308M.
5. Welding Rods and Bare Electrodes: AWS A5.10/A5.10M.

- B. Steel Reinforcement: Manufacturer's standard zinc-rich, corrosion-resistant primer, complying with SSPC-PS Guide No. 12.00; applied immediately after surface preparation and pretreatment. Select surface preparation methods according to recommendations in SSPC-SP COM and prepare surfaces according to applicable SSPC standard.

1. Structural Shapes, Plates, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
2. Cold-Rolled Sheet and Strip: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M.
3. Hot-Rolled Sheet and Strip: ASTM A 1011/A 1011M.

2.3 FRAMING SYSTEMS

- A. Framing Members: Manufacturer's standard extruded-aluminum framing members of thickness required and reinforced as required to support imposed loads.

1. Construction: Full Thermally broken at exterior locations; non-thermally broken at interior locations.
2. Glazing System: Retained mechanically with gaskets on four sides.
3. Glazing Plane: Front.

- B. Sheet Panning: Manufacturer's standard sheet and plant aluminum, minimum .125 inch thickness.

- C. Brackets and Reinforcements: Manufacturer's standard high-strength aluminum with nonstaining, nonferrous shims for aligning system components.

- D. Fasteners and Accessories: Manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant, nonstaining, nonbleeding fasteners and accessories compatible with adjacent materials.

1. Use self-locking devices where fasteners are subject to loosening or turning out from thermal and structural movements, wind loads, or vibration.
 2. Reinforce members as required to receive fastener threads.
- E. Concealed Flashing: Manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant, nonstaining, nonbleeding flashing compatible with adjacent materials.
- F. Framing System Gaskets and Sealants: Manufacturer's standard, recommended by manufacturer for joint type.
- 2.4 GLAZING SYSTEMS
- A. Glazing: As specified in Division 08 Section "Glazing."
- B. Glazing Gaskets: Manufacturer's standard compression types; replaceable, molded or extruded, of profile and hardness required to maintain watertight seal.
- C. Spacers and Setting Blocks: Manufacturer's standard elastomeric type.
- D. Bond-Breaker Tape: Manufacturer's standard TFE-fluorocarbon or polyethylene material to which sealants will not develop adhesion.
- 2.5 ENTRANCE DOOR SYSTEMS
- A. Entrance Doors: Manufacturer's standard glazed entrance doors for manual-swing operation.
1. Door Construction: 2-inch overall thickness, with minimum 0.188-inch- thick, extruded-aluminum tubular rail and stile members. Mechanically fasten corners with reinforcing brackets that are deeply penetrated and fillet welded or that incorporate concealed tie rods.
 - a. Thermal Construction: High-performance plastic connectors separate aluminum members exposed to the exterior from members exposed to the interior.
 2. Door Design: Wide stile; 5-inch nominal width.
 - a. Accessible Doors: Smooth surfaced for width of door in area within 12 inches above floor or ground plane.
 3. Glazing Stops and Gaskets: Beveled, snap-on, extruded-aluminum stops and preformed gaskets.
 - a. Provide nonremovable glazing stops on outside of door.
- B. Entrance Door Hardware: As specified in Division 08 Section "Door Hardware."
- 2.6 FIBERGLASS REINFORCED POLYESTER (FRP) DOORS
- A. Entrance Doors: Manufacturer's standard flush FRP entrance doors for manual-swing operation.
1. Door Construction: 1-3/4 inch overall thickness, Special Lite Model SL-17 (.Basis of Design):

- a. SpecLite3 fiberglass reinforced polyester (FRP) face sheets.
 - 2. Door Design: Flush.
 - 3. Stiles & Rails: Aluminum Alloy 6063-T5, Minimum of 2-5/16" depth.
 - 4. Corners: Mitered.
 - 5. Provide joinery of 3/8-inch diameter full-width tie rods through extruded splines top and bottom integral to standard tubular shaped stiles and rails reinforced to accept hardware as specified.
 - 6. Securing Internal Door Extrusions: 3/16-inch angle blocks and locking hex nuts for joinery. Welds, glue, or other methods are not acceptable.
 - 7. Furnish extruded stiles and rails with integral reglets to accept face sheets. Lock face sheets into place to permit flush appearance.
 - 8. Rail caps or other face sheet capture methods are not acceptable.
 - 9. Extrude top and bottom rail legs for interlocking continuous weather bar.
 - 10. Meeting Stiles: Pile brush weatherseals. Extrude meeting stile to include integral pocket to accept pile brush weatherseals.
 - 11. Bottom of Door: Install bottom weather bar with nylon brush weatherstripping into extruded interlocking edge of bottom rail.
 - 12. Glue: Use of glue to bond sheet to core or extrusions is not acceptable.
- B. Face Sheet:
 - 1. Material: SpecLite 3 FRP, .120inch thickness, finish color throughout. Abuse resistant engineered surface.
 - 2. Texture: Pebble.
 - 3. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturers full range.
- C. Core:
 - 1. Material: Poured in place polyurethane foam.
 - 2. Density: Minimum of 5 pounds per cubic foot.
 - 3. R-Value: Minimum of R-11.
- D. Hardware:
 - 1. Premachine doors in accordance with templates from specified hardware manufacturers and hardware schedule.

2.7 ACCESSORY MATERIALS

- A. Joint Sealants: For installation at perimeter of aluminum-framed systems, as specified in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants."
- B. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied, asphalt-mastic paint complying with SSPC-Paint 12 requirements except containing no asbestos; formulated for 30-mil thickness per coat.
- C. Bent Plates to as detailed on drawings.
 - 1. Match finish of adjacent aluminum frames.

2.8 FABRICATION

- A. Form or extrude aluminum shapes before finishing.
- B. Framing Members, General: Fabricate components that, when assembled, have the following characteristics:

1. Profiles that are sharp, straight, and free of defects or deformations.
 2. Accurately fitted joints with ends coped or mitered.
 3. Means to drain water passing joints, condensation within framing members, and moisture migrating within the system to exterior.
 4. Physical and thermal isolation of glazing from framing members.
 5. Accommodations for thermal and mechanical movements of glazing and framing to maintain required glazing edge clearances.
 6. Provisions for field replacement of glazing from interior for vision glass and exterior for spandrel glazing or metal panels.
 7. Fasteners, anchors, and connection devices that are concealed from view to greatest extent possible.
- C. Mechanically Glazed Framing Members: Fabricate for flush glazing without projecting stops.
- D. Storefront Framing: Fabricate components for assembly using screw-spline system.
- E. Entrance Door Frames: Reinforce as required to support loads imposed by door operation and for installing entrance door hardware.
1. At exterior doors, provide compression weather stripping at fixed stops.
 2. At interior doors, provide silencers at stops to prevent metal-to-metal contact. Install three silencers on strike jamb of single-door frames and two silencers on head of frames for pairs of doors.
- F. Entrance Doors: Reinforce doors as required for installing entrance door hardware.
1. At pairs of exterior doors, provide sliding-type weather stripping retained in adjustable strip and mortised into door edge.
 2. At exterior doors, provide weather sweeps applied to door bottoms.
- G. Entrance Door Hardware Installation: Factory install entrance door hardware to the greatest extent possible. Cut, drill, and tap for factory-installed entrance door hardware before applying finishes.
- H. After fabrication, clearly mark components to identify their locations in Project according to Shop Drawings.

2.9 ALUMINUM FINISHES

- A. Clear Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, AA-M12C22A41, Class I, 0.018 mm or thicker.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. General:

1. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Do not install damaged components.
3. Fit joints to produce hairline joints free of burrs and distortion.
4. Rigidly secure non-movement joints.
5. Install anchors with separators and isolators to prevent metal corrosion and electrolytic deterioration.
6. Seal joints watertight unless otherwise indicated.

B. Metal Protection:

1. Where aluminum will contact dissimilar metals, protect against galvanic action by painting contact surfaces with primer or applying sealant or tape, or by installing nonconductive spacers as recommended by manufacturer for this purpose.
2. Where aluminum will contact concrete or masonry, protect against corrosion by painting contact surfaces with bituminous paint.
3. Install components to drain water passing joints, condensation occurring within framing members, and moisture migrating within the system to exterior.

C. Set continuous sill members and flashing in full sealant bed as specified in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" to produce weather-tight installation.

D. Install components plumb and true in alignment with established lines and grades, and without warp or rack.

E. Install glazing as specified in Division 08 Section "Glazing."

F. Entrance Doors: Install doors to produce smooth operation and tight fit at contact points.

1. Exterior Doors: Install to produce weather-tight enclosure and tight fit at weather stripping.
2. Field-Installed Entrance Door Hardware: Install surface-mounted entrance door hardware according to entrance door hardware manufacturers' written instructions using concealed fasteners to greatest extent possible.

G. Install perimeter joint sealants as specified in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" to produce weather-tight installation.

3.3 ERECTION TOLERANCES

A. Install aluminum-framed systems to comply with the following maximum erection tolerances:

1. Location and Plane: Limit variation from true location and plane to 1/8 inch in 12 feet; 1/4 inch over total length.
2. Alignment:
 - a. Where surfaces abut in line, limit offset from true alignment to 1/16 inch.
 - b. Where surfaces meet at corners, limit offset from true alignment to 1/32 inch.

B. Diagonal Measurements: Limit difference between diagonal measurements to 1/8 inch.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

April 2015

A-012651
State of Kansas - Energy & Service Center

- A. Repair or remove work if test results and inspections indicate that it does not comply with specified requirements.
- B. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.
- C. Aluminum-framed assemblies will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust operating entrance door hardware to function smoothly as recommended by manufacturer.
 - 1. For entrance doors accessible to people with disabilities, adjust closers to provide a 3-second closer sweep period for doors to move from a 70-degree open position to 3 inches from the latch, measured to the leading door edge.

END OF SECTION 08 4113

08 4113 - 10
ALUMINUM-FRAMED ENTRANCES AND STOREFRONTS

SECTION 08 4413 - GLAZED ALUMINUM CURTAIN WALLS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes conventionally glazed aluminum curtain walls installed as stick assemblies.
- B. Related Sections:
 - 1. Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" for installation of joint sealants installed with glazed aluminum curtain walls and for sealants to the extent not specified in this Section.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. ADA/ABA Accessibility Guidelines: U.S. Architectural & Transportation Barriers Compliance Board's "Americans with Disability Act (ADA) and Architectural Barriers Act (ABA) Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities."

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General Performance: Comply with performance requirements specified, as determined by preconstruction testing of glazed aluminum curtain walls representing those indicated for this Project without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction.
 - 1. Glazed aluminum curtain walls shall withstand movements of supporting structure including, but not limited to, story drift, twist, column shortening, long-term creep, and deflection from uniformly distributed and concentrated live loads.
 - 2. Failure also includes the following:
 - a. Thermal stresses transferring to building structure.
 - b. Glass breakage.
 - c. Noise or vibration created by wind and thermal and structural movements.
 - d. Loosening or weakening of fasteners, attachments, and other components.
- B. Delegated Design: Design glazed aluminum curtain walls, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
- C. Structural Loads:
 - 1. Wind Loads: As indicated on Drawings.

2. Blast Loads for Exterior Locations: Designed to meet UFC 4-010-01, dated October 8, 2003 including Change 1, dated January 22, 2007, including Appendix B-3.1, Standard 10:
 - a. Applicable Explosive Weight: 1.
 - b. Conventional Standoff Distance: 45m (148 ft.).
 - c. Location: Parking and Roadways without a Controlled Perimeter
 - d. Building Category: Primary Gathering Building.
- D. Structural-Test Performance: Test according to ASTM E 330 as follows:
 1. When tested at positive and negative wind-load design pressures, assemblies do not evidence deflection exceeding specified limits.
 2. When tested at 150 percent of positive and negative wind-load design pressures, assemblies, including anchorage, do not evidence material failures, structural distress, and permanent deformation of main framing members exceeding 0.2 percent of span.
 3. Test Durations: As required by design wind velocity, but not less than 10 seconds.
- E. Deflection of Framing Members: At design wind pressure, as follows:
 1. Deflection Normal to Wall Plane: Limited to edge of glass in a direction perpendicular to glass plane not exceeding L/175 of the glass edge length for each individual glazing lite or an amount that restricts edge deflection of individual glazing lites to 3/4 inch (19 mm), whichever is less.
 2. Deflection Parallel to Glazing Plane: Limited to L/360 of clear span or 1/8 inch (3.2 mm), whichever is smaller.
 3. Cantilever Deflection: Where framing members overhang an anchor point, limit deflection to two times the length of cantilevered member, divided by 175.
- F. Seismic Performance: Glazed aluminum curtain walls shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to SEI/ASCE 7.
 1. Component Importance Factor is 1.5.
- G. Water Penetration under Static Pressure: No evidence of water penetration through fixed glazing and framing areas when tested according to ASTM E 331 at a minimum static-air-pressure differential of 20 percent of positive wind-load design pressure, but not less than 10 lbf/sq. ft. (480 Pa).
- H. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements resulting from the following maximum change (range) in ambient and surface temperatures:
 1. Temperature Change (Range): 120 deg F (67 deg C), ambient; 180 deg F (100 deg C), material surfaces.
 2. Test Interior Ambient-Air Temperature: 75 deg F (24 deg C).
 3. Test Performance: No buckling; stress on glass; sealant failure; excess stress on framing, anchors, and fasteners; or reduction of performance when tested according to AAMA 501.5.
- I. Energy Performance: Glazed aluminum curtain walls shall have certified and labeled energy performance ratings in accordance with NFRC.
 1. Thermal Transmittance (U-factor): Fixed glazing and framing areas shall have U-factor of not more than 0.57 Btu/sq. ft. x h x deg F (3.23 W/sq. m x K) as determined according to NFRC 100.

2. Solar Heat Gain Coefficient: Fixed glazing and framing areas shall have a solar heat gain coefficient of no greater than 0.40 as determined according to NFRC 200.
3. Air Infiltration: Maximum air leakage through fixed glazing and framing areas of 0.30 cfm/sq. ft. (1.50 L/s per sq. m) of fixed wall area as determined according to ASTM E 283 at a minimum static-air-pressure differential of 6.24 lbf/sq. ft. (300 Pa).
4. Condensation Resistance: Fixed glazing and framing areas shall have an NFRC-certified condensation resistance rating of no less than 45 as determined according to NFRC 500.

1.5 PRECONSTRUCTION TESTING

- A. Preconstruction Testing Service: Provide glazed aluminum curtain walls that comply with test-performance requirements indicated, as evidenced by reports of tests performed on manufacturer's standard assemblies by a qualified testing agency.

1.6 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
- B. LEED Submittals:
 1. Product Data for Credit IEQ 4.1: For glazing sealants used inside of the weatherproofing system, documentation including printed statement of VOC content.
 2. Recycled Content – Credit MR 4.2: Provide documentation indicating percentages of post-consumer and pre-consumer recycled content by weight per unit of product or assembly containing the product. Indicate the percentage of the dollar of the recycled content compared to the total dollar value of the product or assembly containing the product.
- C. Shop Drawings: For glazed aluminum curtain walls. Include plans, elevations, sections, full-size details, and attachments to other work.
 1. Include details of provisions for assembly expansion and contraction and for draining moisture occurring within the assembly to the exterior.
 2. Include full-size isometric details of each vertical-to-horizontal intersection of glazed aluminum curtain walls, showing the following:
 - a. Joinery, including concealed welds.
 - b. Anchorage.
 - c. Expansion provisions.
 - d. Glazing.
 - e. Flashing and drainage.
 3. Include laboratory mockup Shop Drawings, prepared by a qualified preconstruction testing agency, showing details of laboratory mockup.
 - a. Resubmit Shop Drawings with changes made to glazed aluminum curtain walls to successfully complete preconstruction testing.
- D. Samples for Initial Selection: For units with factory-applied color finishes.

- E. Samples for Verification: For each type of exposed finish required, in manufacturer's standard sizes.
- F. Fabrication Sample: Of each vertical-to-horizontal intersection of assemblies, made from 12-inch (300-mm) lengths of full-size components and showing details of the following:
 - 1. Joinery, including concealed welds.
 - 2. Anchorage.
 - 3. Expansion provisions.
 - 4. Glazing.
 - 5. Flashing and drainage.

1.7 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer and preconstruction testing agency.
- B. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For glazed aluminum curtain walls, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
 - 1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
- C. Welding certificates.
- D. Energy Performance Certificates: For glazed aluminum curtain walls, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
 - 1. Basis for Certification: NFRC-certified energy performance values for each glazed aluminum curtain wall.
- E. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified preconstruction testing agency, for glazed aluminum curtain walls, indicating compliance with performance requirements.
- F. Field quality-control reports.
- G. Warranties: Sample of special warranties.
- H. Delegated-Design Submittal: For glazed aluminum curtain walls indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1.8 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For glazed aluminum curtain walls to include in maintenance manuals.

1.9 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Manufacturer's authorized representative who is trained and approved for installation of units required for this Project.

- B. Preconstruction Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ISO/IEC 17025 and accredited by ICC-ES for preconstruction testing indicated.
- C. Product Options: Information on Drawings and in Specifications establishes requirements for aesthetic effects and performance characteristics of assemblies. Aesthetic effects are indicated by dimensions, arrangements, alignment, and profiles of components and assemblies as they relate to sightlines, to one another, and to adjoining construction.
 - 1. Do not revise intended aesthetic effects, as judged solely by Architect, except with Architect's approval. If revisions are proposed, submit comprehensive explanatory data to Architect for review.
- D. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
 - 1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
 - 2. AWS D1.2/D1.2M, "Structural Welding Code - Aluminum."
- E. Energy Performance Standards: Comply with NFRC for minimum standards of energy performance, materials, components, accessories, and fabrication. Comply with more stringent requirements if indicated.
 - 1. Provide NFRC-certified glazed aluminum curtain walls with an attached label.
- F. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.10 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify actual locations of structural supports for glazed aluminum curtain walls by field measurements before fabrication and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.

1.11 WARRANTY

- A. Special Assembly Warranty: Standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of glazed aluminum curtain walls that do not comply with requirements or that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Structural failures including, but not limited to, excessive deflection.
 - b. Noise or vibration created by wind and thermal and structural movements.
 - c. Deterioration of metals, and other materials beyond normal weathering.
 - d. Water penetration through fixed glazing and framing areas.
 - e. Failure of operating components.
 - 2. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Final Completion.
- B. Special Finish Warranty: Standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair finishes or replace aluminum that shows evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Final Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide or comparable product by one of the following:
1. EFCO Corporation.
 2. Kawneer North America; an Alcoa company.
 3. Manko Window Systems, Inc.; 250 Series and 275 Series. (Basis of Design).
 4. United States Aluminum.

2.2 MATERIALS

- A. Aluminum: Alloy and temper recommended by manufacturer for type of use and finish indicated.
1. Sheet and Plate: ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M).
 2. Extruded Bars, Rods, Profiles, and Tubes: ASTM B 221 (ASTM B 221M).
 3. Extruded Structural Pipe and Tubes: ASTM B 429.
 4. Structural Profiles: ASTM B 308/B 308M.
 5. Welding Rods and Bare Electrodes: AWS A5.10/A5.10M.
- B. Steel Reinforcement: Manufacturer's standard zinc-rich, corrosion-resistant primer complying with SSPC-PS Guide No. 12.00; applied immediately after surface preparation and pretreatment. Select surface preparation methods according to recommendations in SSPC-SP COM and prepare surfaces according to applicable SSPC standard.
1. Structural Shapes, Plates, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
 2. Cold-Rolled Sheet and Strip: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M.
 3. Hot-Rolled Sheet and Strip: ASTM A 1011/A 1011M.
 4. Sheet and Plate: ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M).

2.3 FRAMING

- A. Framing Members: Manufacturer's standard extruded- or formed-aluminum framing members of thickness required and reinforced as required to support imposed loads.
1. Construction: Thermally broken.
 2. Glazing System: Retained mechanically with gaskets on four sides.
 3. Glazing Plane: Front.
- B. Sheet Panning: Manufacturer's standard sheet and plant aluminum, minimum .125 inch thickness.
- C. Brackets and Reinforcements: Manufacturer's standard high-strength aluminum with nonstaining, nonferrous shims for aligning system components.
- D. Fasteners and Accessories: Manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant, nonstaining, nonbleeding fasteners and accessories compatible with adjacent materials.

1. Use self-locking devices where fasteners are subject to loosening or turning out from thermal and structural movements, wind loads, or vibration.
 2. Reinforce members as required to receive fastener threads.
 3. Use exposed fasteners with countersunk Phillips screw heads, fabricated from 300 series stainless steel.
- E. Anchors: Three-way adjustable anchors with minimum adjustment of 1 inch (25.4 mm) that accommodate fabrication and installation tolerances in material and finish compatible with adjoining materials and recommended by manufacturer.
1. Concrete and Masonry Inserts: Hot-dip galvanized cast-iron, malleable-iron, or steel inserts complying with ASTM A 123/A 123M or ASTM A 153/A 153M requirements.
- F. Concealed Flashing: Dead-soft, 0.018-inch- (0.457-mm-) thick stainless steel, ASTM A 240/A 240M of type recommended by manufacturer.
- G. Framing Sealants: Manufacturer's standard sealants.

2.4 GLAZING

- A. Glazing: Comply with Division 08 Section "Glazing."
- B. Glazing Sealants: As recommended by manufacturer.
1. Sealants used inside the weatherproofing system shall have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

2.5 ACCESSORY MATERIALS

- A. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt-mastic paint complying with SSPC-Paint 12 requirements except containing no asbestos, formulated for 30-mil (0.762-mm) thickness per coat.

2.6 FABRICATION

- A. Form or extrude aluminum shapes before finishing.
- B. Weld in concealed locations to greatest extent possible to minimize distortion or discoloration of finish. Remove weld spatter and welding oxides from exposed surfaces by descaling or grinding.
- C. Fabricate components that, when assembled, have the following characteristics:
1. Profiles that are sharp, straight, and free of defects or deformations.
 2. Accurately fitted joints with ends coped or mitered.
 3. Physical and thermal isolation of glazing from framing members.
 4. Accommodations for thermal and mechanical movements of glazing and framing to maintain required glazing edge clearances.
 5. Provisions for field replacement of glazing from exterior.
 6. Fasteners, anchors, and connection devices that are concealed from view to greatest extent possible.

- D. Fabricate components that, when assembled, have the following characteristics:
 - 1. Internal guttering system or other means to drain water passing joints, condensation occurring within framing members, and moisture migrating within glazed aluminum curtain wall to exterior.
 - 2. Pressure-equalized system or double barrier design with primary air and vapor barrier at interior side of glazed aluminum curtain wall and secondary seal weeped and vented to exterior.
- E. Curtain-Wall Framing: Fabricate components for assembly using shear-block system, screw-spline system, head-and-sill-receptor system with shear blocks at intermediate horizontal members or manufacturer's standard as required to comply with requirements specified.
- F. After fabrication, clearly mark components to identify their locations in Project according to Shop Drawings.

2.7 ALUMINUM FINISHES

- A. Clear Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, AA-M12C22A41, Class I, 0.018 mm or thicker.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. General:
 - 1. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 2. Do not install damaged components.
 - 3. Fit joints to produce hairline joints free of burrs and distortion.
 - 4. Rigidly secure nonmovement joints.
 - 5. Install anchors with separators and isolators to prevent metal corrosion and electrolytic deterioration and to prevent impeding movement of moving joints.
 - 6. Weld components in concealed locations to minimize distortion or discoloration of finish. Protect glazing surfaces from welding.
 - 7. Seal joints watertight unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Metal Protection:
 - 1. Where aluminum will contact dissimilar metals, protect against galvanic action by painting contact surfaces with primer or by applying sealant or tape or installing nonconductive spacers as recommended by manufacturer for this purpose.
 - 2. Where aluminum will contact concrete or masonry, protect against corrosion by painting contact surfaces with bituminous paint.

- C. Install components to drain water passing joints, condensation occurring within framing members, and moisture migrating within glazed aluminum curtain wall to exterior.
- D. Install components plumb and true in alignment with established lines and grades.
- E. Install operable units level and plumb, securely anchored, and without distortion. Adjust weather-stripping contact and hardware movement to produce proper operation.
- F. Install glazing as specified in Division 08 Section "Glazing."

3.3 ERECTION TOLERANCES

- A. Erection Tolerances: Install glazed aluminum curtain walls to comply with the following maximum tolerances:
 - 1. Plumb: 1/8 inch in 10 feet (3.2 mm in 3 m); 1/4 inch in 40 feet (6 mm in 12 m).
 - 2. Level: 1/8 inch in 20 feet (3.2 mm in 6 m); 1/4 inch in 40 feet (6 mm in 12 m).
 - 3. Alignment:
 - a. Where surfaces abut in line or are separated by reveal or protruding element up to 1/2 inch (12.7 mm) wide, limit offset from true alignment to 1/16 inch (1.6 mm).
 - b. Where surfaces are separated by reveal or protruding element from 1/2 to 1 inch (12.7 to 25.4 mm) wide, limit offset from true alignment to 1/8 inch (3.2 mm).
 - c. Where surfaces are separated by reveal or protruding element of 1 inch (25.4 mm) wide or more, limit offset from true alignment to 1/4 inch (6 mm).
 - 4. Location: Limit variation from plane to 1/8 inch in 12 feet (3.2 mm in 3.7 m); 1/2 inch (12.7 mm) over total length.

END OF SECTION 08 4413

SECTION 085653 - SECURITY WINDOWS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Fixed, transaction security windows.

1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate installation of anchorages for security windows. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors, that are to be embedded in adjacent construction. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.

1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Pre-installation Conference: Conduct Conference at Project Site.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer and testing agency.
- B. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An authorized representative who is trained and approved by manufacturer for installation and maintenance of units required for this Project.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Pack security windows in wood crates for shipment. Crate glazing separate from frames unless factory glazed.
- B. Label security window packaging with drawing designation.
- C. Store crated security windows on raised blocks to prevent moisture damage.

1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

Field Measurements: Verify actual dimensions of openings by field measurements before fabrication.

1.9 WARRANTY

- A. All materials and workmanship shall be warranted against defects for a period of one (1) year from the substantial completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 FIXED, TRANSACTION SECURITY WINDOWS

- A. Provide fixed, framed transaction windows with operable sash or ventilator capable of allowing transfer of currency and documents:
 - 1. Reference:
 - A. UNDERWRITERS LABORATORY UL 752 11th Edition dated Sept. 5, 2005
Standard for Bullet Resistant Equipment
 - B. AMERICAN WELDING SOCIETY
 - 2. Design:
 - A. Frames shall be of the "non-ricochet type".
 - B. The capturing barrier shall be UL LISTED BULLET RESISTANT COMPOSITE manufactured by Armortex. Ballistic protection level shall be UL level (Ballistic level 7). Frames shall have ballistic protection level equal to or greater than glazing. Units must be manufactured in strict accordance with the specifications, design and details. No field alterations to construction of the units fabricated under acceptable standards is allowed unless approved by the manufacturer and the architect.
 - C. All welds shall be in accordance with the requirements and standard practices of the American Welding Society. All exposed welds shall be ground flush and finished smooth. Standard manufacturing tolerances shall be +/- 1/16" for frame opening, diagonal dimensions of frame, overall frame width, height, depth, etc. Aluminum or aluminum clad units are not acceptable.
 - 3. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide **Armortex, Model SSTW-19, Bullet Resistant Three sided Natural Voice Window.**

2.2 FABRICATION

- A. General: Fabricate security windows to provide a complete system for installation.
- B. Frame: Three sided hollow metal "natural voice" frame modules shall be of a "non-ricochet type" design, constructed of brake formed commercial grade cold rolled 16 ga. steel and screw applied stops. (substitute 16 ga. #3 brushed stainless steel in lieu of 16 ga. cold rolled steel if required). Frame lined with UL LISTED BULLET RESISTANT ARMORTEX® COMPOSITE. Steel shall be free of scale, pitting, coil breaks and finish work shall be neat and free of defects. Corners shall be continuously welded the full length of the intersection. Knocked down and mechanical joints are unacceptable. Frame modules shall be capable of being joined with other frame modules to form a continuous hard line. Replacement of glazing shall be from the secure side of the window or wall unit and will not require the removal of the frame from the opening.
- C. Shelf: Provide a shelf not less than 2" thick with a recessed dip tray. The shelf to be full width of window and a minimum of 12" deep centered under the glazing covered with a black high pressure laminate.
- D. Dip Tray: Model RMDT1016 constructed of 16 ga. stainless steel, # 3 finish 10" x 16" from the outside edge of flanges with a clear open depth under the glazing of 1 5/8".
- E. Finish: Prime painted gray factory applied on cold rolled steel. (painting not required if stainless steel finish frames are specified). Field paint and finish in accordance with and as directed in the finish section specifications 09 00 00.

- F. Glazing: The glazing must be UL Listed Level (specify Ballistic level) Laminated Glass or Glass/Polycarbonate Composite or Glass Clad Polycarbonate or Multi-ply Polycarbonate or Acrylic Polycarbonate Composite or other type of glazing material specified in 08 80 00 Glazing section. Bottom edge of the glazing panel shall have a stainless steel cap of 18 ga. with a # 3 brushed finish.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of security windows.
- B. For the record, prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of security windows.
- C. For glazing materials whose orientation is critical for performance, verify installation orientation.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Set frames and glaze in accordance with manufacturer's instructions. Proper anchoring device shall be determined by the material to be anchored. Repair damaged units as directed (if approved by the manufacturer and the architect) prior to completion and the acceptance of the project. Or replace with new units as directed by the architect.

3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Remove and replace defective work, including security windows that are warped, bowed, or otherwise unacceptable.

3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean surfaces promptly after installation of security windows. Take care to avoid damaging the finish. Remove excess glazing and sealant compounds, dirt and other substances.
 - 1. Lubricate sliding security window hardware per Manufacturer Recommendations.
- B. Clean glass of pre-glazed security windows promptly after installation.
- C. Provide temporary protection to ensure that security windows are without damage at time of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 085653

SECTION 087100 – DOOR HARDWARE

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes commercial door hardware for the following:
 - 1. Swinging doors.
 - 2. Other doors to the extent indicated.
 - 3. Sliding Window.
- B. Door hardware includes, but is not necessarily limited to, the following:
 - 1. Mechanical door hardware.
 - 2. Electromechanical door hardware, power supplies, back-ups and surge protection.
 - 3. Automatic operators.
 - 4. Cylinders specified for doors in other sections.
- C. Related Sections:
 - 1. Division 08 Section "Door Hardware Schedule".
 - 2. Division 08 Section "Hollow Metal Doors and Frames".
 - 3. Division 08 Section "Interior Aluminum Doors and Frames".
 - 4. Division 08 Section "Flush Wood Doors".
 - 5. Division 08 Section "Automatic Door Operators".
 - 6. Division 08 Section "Access Control Hardware".
- D. Codes and References: Comply with the version year adopted by the Authority Having Jurisdiction.
 - 1. ANSI A117.1 - Accessible and Usable Buildings and Facilities.
 - 2. ICC/IBC - International Building Code.
 - 3. NFPA 80 - Fire Doors and Windows.
 - 4. NFPA 101 - Life Safety Code.
 - 5. NFPA 105 - Installation of Smoke Door Assemblies.
 - 6. UL/ULC and CSA C22.2 – Standards for Automatic Door Operators Used on Fire and Smoke Barrier Doors and Systems of Doors.
 - 7. State Building Codes, Local Amendments.
- E. Standards: All hardware specified herein shall comply with the following industry standards:
 - 1. ANSI/BHMA Certified Product Standards - A156 Series
 - 2. UL10C – Positive Pressure Fire Tests of Door Assemblies

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Manufacturer's product data sheets including installation details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, operational descriptions and finishes.
- B. Door Hardware Schedule: Prepared by or under the supervision of supplier, detailing fabrication and assembly of door hardware, as well as procedures and diagrams. Coordinate the final Door Hardware Schedule with doors, frames, and related work to ensure proper size, thickness, hand, function, and finish of door hardware.
 - 1. Format: Comply with scheduling sequence and vertical format in DHI's "Sequence and Format for the Hardware Schedule."
 - 2. Organization: Organize the Door Hardware Schedule into door hardware sets indicating complete designations of every item required for each door or opening. Organize door hardware sets in same order as in the Door Hardware Sets at the end of Part 3. Submittals that do not follow the same format and order as the Door Hardware Sets will be rejected and subject to resubmission.
 - 3. Content: Include the following information:
 - a. Type, style, function, size, label, hand, and finish of each door hardware item.
 - b. Manufacturer of each item.
 - c. Fastenings and other pertinent information.
 - d. Location of door hardware set, cross-referenced to Drawings, both on floor plans and in door and frame schedule.
 - e. Explanation of abbreviations, symbols, and codes contained in schedule.
 - f. Mounting locations for door hardware.
 - g. Door and frame sizes and materials.
 - 4. Submittal Sequence: Submit the final Door Hardware Schedule at earliest possible date, particularly where approval of the Door Hardware Schedule must precede fabrication of other work that is critical in the Project construction schedule. Include Product Data, Samples, Shop Drawings of other work affected by door hardware, and other information essential to the coordinated review of the Door Hardware Schedule.
- C. Shop Drawings: Details of electrified access control hardware indicating the following:
 - 1. Wiring Diagrams: Upon receipt of approved schedules, submit detailed system wiring diagrams for power, signaling, monitoring, communication, and control of the access control system electrified hardware. Differentiate between manufacturer-installed and field-installed wiring. Include the following:
 - a. Elevation diagram of each unique access controlled opening showing location and interconnection of major system components with respect to their placement in the respective door openings.
 - b. Complete (risers, point-to-point) access control system block wiring diagrams.
 - 2. Electrical Coordination: Coordinate with related Division 26 Electrical Sections the voltages and wiring details required at electrically controlled and operated hardware openings.
- D. Keying Schedule: Prepared under the supervision of the Owner, separate schedule detailing final keying instructions for locksets and cylinders in writing. Include keying system explanation,

door numbers, key set symbols, hardware set numbers and special instructions. Owner to approve submitted keying schedule prior to the ordering of permanent cylinders.

- E. Operating and Maintenance Manuals: Provide manufacturers operating and maintenance manuals for each item comprising the complete door hardware installation in quantity as required in Division 01, Closeout Submittals. The manual to include the name, address, and contact information of the manufacturers providing the hardware and their nearest service representatives. The final copies delivered after completion of the installation test to include "as built" modifications made during installation, checkout, and acceptance.
- F. Warranties and Maintenance: Special warranties and maintenance agreements specified in this Section.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturers Qualifications: Engage qualified manufacturers with a minimum 5 years of documented experience in producing hardware and equipment similar to that indicated for this Project and that have a proven record of successful in-service performance.
- B. Installer Qualifications: Installers, trained by the primary product manufacturers, with a minimum 3 years documented experience installing both standard and electrified builders hardware similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project and whose work has resulted in construction with a record of successful in-service performance.
- C. Door Hardware Supplier Qualifications: Experienced commercial door hardware distributors with a minimum 5 years documented experience supplying both mechanical and electromechanical hardware installations comparable in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project. Supplier recognized as a factory direct distributor in good standing by the manufacturers of the primary materials with a warehousing facility in Project's vicinity. Supplier to have on staff a certified Architectural Hardware Consultant (AHC) available during the course of the Work to consult with Contractor, Architect, and Owner concerning both standard and electromechanical door hardware and keying.
 - 1. Scheduling Responsibility: Preparation of door hardware and keying schedules.
- D. Automatic Operator Supplier Qualifications: Power operator products and accessories are required to be supplied and installed through current members of the manufacturer's "Power Operator Preferred Installer" program. Suppliers are to be factory trained, certified, and a direct purchaser of the specified power operators and be responsible for the installation and maintenance of the units and accessories indicated for the Project.
- E. Source Limitations: Obtain each type and variety of Door Hardware specified in this Section from a single source, qualified supplier unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Electrified modifications or enhancements made to a source manufacturer's product line by a secondary or third party source will not be accepted.
 - 2. Provide electromechanical door hardware from the same manufacturer as mechanical door hardware, unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with NFPA 70, NFPA 80, NFPA 101 and ANSI A117.1 requirements and guidelines as directed in the model building code including, but not limited to, the following:

1. NFPA 70 "National Electrical Code", including electrical components, devices, and accessories listed and labeled as defined in Article 100 by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
 2. Where indicated to comply with accessibility requirements, comply with Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA), "Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities (ADAAG)," ANSI A117.1 as follows:
 - a. Handles, Pulls, Latches, Locks, and other Operating Devices: Shape that is easy to grasp with one hand and does not require tight grasping, tight pinching, or twisting of the wrist.
 - b. Door Closers: Comply with the following maximum opening-force requirements indicated:
 - 1) Interior Hinged Doors: 5 lbf applied perpendicular to door.
 - 2) Fire Doors: Minimum opening force allowable by authorities having jurisdiction.
 - c. Thresholds: Not more than 1/2 inch high. Bevel raised thresholds with a slope of not more than 1:2.
 3. NFPA 101: Comply with the following for means of egress doors:
 - a. Latches, Locks, and Exit Devices: Not more than 15 lbf to release the latch. Locks shall not require the use of a key, tool, or special knowledge for operation.
 - b. Thresholds: Not more than 1/2 inch high.
 4. Fire-Rated Door Assemblies: Provide door hardware for assemblies complying with NFPA 80 that are listed and labeled by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, for fire ratings indicated, based on testing according to NFPA 252 (neutral pressure at 40" above sill) or UL-10C.
 - a. Test Pressure: Positive pressure labeling.
- G. Each unit to bear third party permanent label demonstrating compliance with the referenced standards.
- H. Pre-Submittal Conference: Conduct coordination conference in compliance with requirements in Division 01 Section "Project Meetings" with attendance by representatives of Supplier(s), Installer(s), and Contractor(s) to review proper methods and the procedures for receiving, handling, and installing door hardware.
1. Prior to installation of door hardware, conduct a project specific training meeting to instruct the installing contractors' personnel on the proper installation and adjustment of their respective products. Product training to be attended by installers of door hardware (including electromechanical hardware) for aluminum, hollow metal and wood doors. Training will include the use of installation manuals, hardware schedules, templates and physical product samples as required.
 2. Inspect and discuss electrical roughing-in, power supply connections, and other preparatory work performed by other trades.
 3. Review sequence of operation narratives for each unique access controlled opening.
 4. Review and finalize construction schedule and verify availability of materials.
 5. Review the required inspecting, testing, commissioning, and demonstration procedures

- I. At completion of installation, provide written documentation that components were applied to manufacturer's instructions and recommendations and according to approved schedule.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Inventory door hardware on receipt and provide secure lock-up and shelving for door hardware delivered to Project site. Do not store electronic access control hardware, software or accessories at Project site without prior authorization.
- B. Tag each item or package separately with identification related to the final Door Hardware Schedule, and include basic installation instructions with each item or package.
- C. Deliver, as applicable, permanent keys, cylinders, cores, access control credentials, software and related accessories directly to Owner via registered mail or overnight package service. Instructions for delivery to the Owner shall be established at the "Keying Conference".

1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Templates: Obtain and distribute to the parties involved templates for doors, frames, and other work specified to be factory prepared for installing standard and electrified hardware. Check Shop Drawings of other work to confirm that adequate provisions are made for locating and installing hardware to comply with indicated requirements.
- B. Door Hardware and Electrical Connections: Coordinate the layout and installation of scheduled electrified door hardware and related access control equipment with required connections to source power junction boxes, low voltage power supplies, detection and monitoring hardware, and fire and detection alarm systems.
- C. Door and Frame Preparation: Related Division 08 Sections (Steel, Aluminum and Wood) doors and corresponding frames are to be prepared, reinforced and pre-wired (if applicable) to receive the installation of the specified electrified, monitoring, signaling and access control system hardware without additional in-field modifications.

1.7 WARRANTY

- A. General Warranty: Reference Division 01, General Requirements. Special warranties specified in this Article shall not deprive Owner of other rights Owner may have under other provisions of the Contract Documents and shall be in addition to, and run concurrent with, other warranties made by Contractor under requirements of the Contract Documents.
- B. Warranty Period: Written warranty, executed by manufacturer(s), agreeing to repair or replace components of standard and electrified door hardware that fails in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period after final acceptance by the Owner. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 1. Structural failures including excessive deflection, cracking, or breakage.
 2. Faulty operation of the hardware.
 3. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal weathering.
 4. Electrical component defects and failures within the systems operation.
- C. Standard Warranty Period: Three years from date of Substantial Completion, unless otherwise indicated.

D. Special Warranty Periods:

1. Ten years for mortise locks and latches.
2. Twenty five years for manual surface door closers.
3. Two years for electromechanical door hardware.

1.8 MAINTENANCE SERVICE

- A. Maintenance Tools and Instructions: Furnish a complete set of specialized tools and maintenance instructions as needed for Owner's continued adjustment, maintenance, and removal and replacement of door hardware.
- B. Continuing Service: Beginning at Substantial Completion, and running concurrent with the specified warranty period, provide continuous (6) months full maintenance including repair and replacement of worn or defective components, lubrication, cleaning, and adjusting as required for proper door opening operation. Provide parts and supplies as used in the manufacture and installation of original products. Include quarterly preventative maintenance.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SCHEDULED DOOR HARDWARE

- A. General: Provide door hardware for each door to comply with requirements in Door Hardware Sets and each referenced section that products are to be supplied under.
 1. Designations: Requirements for quantity, item, size, finish or color, grade, function, and other distinctive qualities of each type of door hardware are indicated in the Door Hardware Sets at the end of Part 3. Products are identified by using door hardware designations, as follows:
 - a. Named Manufacturer's Products: Product designation and manufacturer are listed for each door hardware type required for the purpose of establishing requirements. Manufacturers' names are abbreviated in the Door Hardware Schedule.
- B. Substitutions: Requests for substitution and product approval for inclusive mechanical and electromechanical door hardware in compliance with the specifications must be submitted in writing and in accordance with the procedures and time frames outlined in Division 01, Substitution Procedures. Approval of requests is at the discretion of the architect, owner, and their designated consultants.

2.2 HINGING DEVICES

- A. Hinges: ANSI/BHMA A156.1 certified butt hinges with number of hinge knuckles as specified in the Door Hardware Sets.
 1. Quantity: Provide the following hinge quantity, unless otherwise indicated:
 - a. Two Hinges: For doors with heights up to 60 inches.
 - b. Three Hinges: For doors with heights 61 to 90 inches.

- c. Four Hinges: For doors with heights 91 to 120 inches.
 - d. For doors with heights more than 120 inches, provide 4 hinges, plus 1 hinge for every 30 inches of door height greater than 120 inches.
 - 2. Hinge Size: Provide the following, unless otherwise indicated, with hinge widths sized for door thickness and clearances required:
 - a. Widths up to 3'6": 4-1/2" standard or heavy weight as specified.
 - b. Sizes from 3'7" to 4'0": 5" standard or heavy weight as specified.
 - 3. Hinge Weight and Base Material: Unless otherwise indicated, provide the following:
 - a. Exterior Doors: Heavy weight, non-ferrous, ball bearing or oil impregnated bearing hinges unless Hardware Sets indicate standard weight.
 - b. Interior Doors: Standard weight, steel, ball bearing or oil impregnated bearing hinges unless Hardware Sets indicate heavy weight.
 - 4. Hinge Options: Comply with the following where indicated in the Hardware Sets or on Drawings:
 - a. Non-removable Pins: Provide set screw in hinge barrel that, when tightened into a groove in hinge pin, prevents removal of pin while door is closed; for the following applications:
 - 1) Out-swinging exterior doors.
 - 2) Out-swinging access controlled doors.
 - 3) Out-swinging lockable doors.
 - 5. Acceptable Manufacturers:
 - a. Hager Companies (HA).
 - b. McKinney Products (MK).
- B. Continuous Geared Hinges: ANSI/BHMA A156.26 certified continuous geared hinge with minimum 0.120-inch thick extruded 6060 T6 aluminum alloy hinge leaves and a minimum overall width of 4 inches. Hinges are non-handed, reversible and fabricated to template screw locations. Provide concealed flush mount (with or without inset), full surface, or half surface, in standard and heavy duty models, as specified in the Hardware Sets. Concealed continuous hinges to be U.L. listed for use on up to and including 90 minute rated door installations and U.L. listed for windstorm components where applicable. Factory cut hinges for door size and provide with removable service power transfer panel where indicated at electrified openings.
- 1. Acceptable Manufacturers:
 - a. McKinney Products (MK).
 - b. Pemko Manufacturing (PE).
 - c. Stanley Hardware (ST).

2.3 POWER TRANSFER DEVICES

- A. Electrified Quick Connect Transfer Hinges: Provide electrified transfer hinges with Molex™ standardized plug connectors and sufficient number of concealed wires (up to 12) to accommodate the electrified functions specified in the Door Hardware Sets. Connectors plug

directly to through-door wiring harnesses for connection to electric locking devices and power supplies. Wire nut connections are not acceptable.

1. Acceptable Manufacturers:

- a. Hager Companies (HA) - ETW-QC (# wires) Option.
- b. McKinney Products (MK) - QC (# wires) Option.

- B. Concealed Quick Connect Electric Power Transfers: Provide concealed wiring pathway housing mortised into the door and frame for low voltage electrified door hardware. Furnish with Molex™ standardized plug connectors and sufficient number of concealed wires (up to 12) to accommodate the electrified functions specified in the Door Hardware Sets. Connectors plug directly to through-door wiring harnesses for connection to electric locking devices and power supplies. Wire nut connections are not acceptable.

1. Acceptable Manufacturers:

- a. McKinney (MK) - EL-EPT.
- b. Securitron (SU) - EL-CEPT Series.
- c. Von Duprin (VD) - EPT-10 Series.

2.4 DOOR OPERATING TRIM

- A. Flush Bolts and Surface Bolts: ANSI/BHMA A156.3 and A156.16, Grade 1, certified automatic, self-latching, and manual flush bolts and surface bolts. Manual flush bolts to be furnished with top rod of sufficient length to allow bolt location approximately six feet from the floor. Furnish dust proof strikes for bottom bolts. Surface bolts to be minimum 8" in length and U.L. listed for labeled fire doors and U.L. listed for windstorm components where applicable. Provide related accessories (mounting brackets, strikes, coordinators, etc.) as required for appropriate installation and operation.

1. Acceptable Manufacturers:

- a. Ives (IV).
- b. Rockwood Manufacturing (RO).
- c. Trimco (TC).

- B. Door Push Plates and Pulls: ANSI/BHMA A156.6 certified door pushes and pulls of type and design specified below or in the Hardware Sets. Coordinate and provide proper width and height as required where conflicting hardware dictates.

1. Push/Pull Plates: Minimum .050 inch thick, size as indicated in hardware sets, with beveled edges, secured with exposed screws unless otherwise indicated.
2. Door Pull and Push Bar Design: Size, shape, and material as indicated in the hardware sets. Minimum clearance of 2 1/2-inches from face of door unless otherwise indicated.
3. Offset Pull Design: Size, shape, and material as indicated in the hardware sets. Minimum clearance of 2 1/2-inches from face of door and offset of 90 degrees unless otherwise indicated.
4. Fasteners: Provide manufacturer's designated fastener type as indicated in Hardware Sets.

a. Acceptable Manufacturers:

- 1) Ives (IV).

- 2) Rockwood Manufacturing (RO).
- 3) Trimco (TC).

2.5 CYLINDERS AND KEYING

- A. General: Cylinder manufacturer to have minimum (10) years experience designing secured master key systems and have on record a published security keying system policy.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of keyed cylinder and keys from the same source manufacturer as locksets and exit devices, unless otherwise indicated.
 1. Acceptable Manufacturers:
 - a. Stanley Best (BE).
 - b. No Substitution – Facility Standard.
- C. Cylinders: Original manufacturer cylinders complying with the following:
 1. Mortise Type: Threaded cylinders with rings and straight- or clover-type cam.
 2. Rim Type: Cylinders with back plate, flat-type vertical or horizontal tailpiece, and raised trim ring.
 3. Bored-Lock Type: Cylinders with tailpieces to suit locks.
 4. Mortise and rim cylinder collars to be solid and recessed to allow the cylinder face to be flush and be free spinning with matching finishes.
- D. Keying System: Each type of lock and cylinders to be factory keyed. Conduct specified "Keying Conference" to define and document keying system instructions and requirements. Furnish factory cut, nickel-silver large bow permanently inscribed with a visual key control number as directed by Owner. Incorporate decisions made in keying conference, and as follows:
 1. Existing System: Master key or grand master key locks to Owner's existing system.
- E. Construction Keying: Provide construction master keyed cylinders or temporary keyed construction cores where specified. Provide construction master keys in quantity as required by project Contractor. Replace construction cores with permanent cores. Furnish permanent cores for installation as directed under specified "Keying Conference".
- F. Key Registration List: Provide keying transcript list to Owner's representative in the proper format for importing into key control software.
- G. Key Control Cabinet: Provide a key control system including envelopes, labels, and tags with self-locking key clips, receipt forms, 3-way visible card index, temporary markers, permanent markers, and standard metal cabinet. Key control cabinet shall have expansion capacity of 150% of the number of locks required for the project.
 1. Acceptable Manufacturers:
 - a. Lund Equipment (LU).
 - b. MMF Industries (MM).
 - c. Telkee (TK).

2.6 MECHANICAL LOCKS AND LATCHING DEVICES

- A. Mortise Locksets, Grade 1 (Heavy Duty): ANSI/BHMA A156.13, Series 1000, Operational Grade 1 certified mortise locksets furnished in the functions as specified in the Hardware Sets. Locksets to be manufactured with a corrosion resistant, stamped 12 gauge minimum formed steel case and be field-reversible for handing without disassembly of the lock body. Lockset trim (including knobs, levers, escutcheons, roses) to be the product of a single manufacturer. Furnish with standard 2 3/4" backset, 3/4" throw anti-friction stainless steel latchbolt, and a full 1" throw stainless steel bolt for deadbolt functions.

1. Acceptable Manufacturers:

- a. Stanley Best (BE) – 40H Series.

- B. Cylindrical Locksets, Grade 1 (Heavy Duty): ANSI/BHMA A156.2, Series 4000, Grade 1 certified cylindrical (bored) locksets furnished in the functions as specified in the Hardware Sets. Lock chassis fabricated of heavy gauge steel, zinc dichromate plated, with through-bolted application. Furnish with solid cast levers, standard 2 3/4" backset, and 1/2" (3/4" at rated paired openings) throw brass or stainless steel latchbolt. Locks are to be non-handed and fully field reversible.

1. Acceptable Manufacturers:

- a. Stanley Best (BE) – 9K Series.
b. No Substitution – Facility Standard.

- C. Lock Trim Design: As specified in Hardware Sets.

2.7 LOCK AND LATCH STRIKES

- A. Strikes: Provide manufacturer's standard strike with strike box for each latch or lock bolt, with curved lip extended to protect frame, finished to match door hardware set, unless otherwise indicated, and as follows:

1. Flat-Lip Strikes: For locks with three-piece antifriction latchbolts, as recommended by manufacturer.
2. Extra-Long-Lip Strikes: For locks used on frames with applied wood casing trim.
3. Aluminum-Frame Strike Box: Provide manufacturer's special strike box fabricated for aluminum framing.

- B. Standards: Comply with the following:

1. Strikes for Mortise Locks and Latches: BHMA A156.13.
2. Strikes for Bored Locks and Latches: BHMA A156.2.
3. Strikes for Auxiliary Deadlocks: BHMA A156.5.
4. Dustproof Strikes: BHMA A156.16.

2.8 CONVENTIONAL EXIT DEVICES

- A. General Requirements: All exit devices specified herein shall meet or exceed the following criteria:

1. At doors not requiring a fire rating, provide devices complying with NFPA 101 and listed and labeled for "Panic Hardware" according to UL305. Provide proper fasteners as

required by manufacturer including sex nuts and bolts at openings specified in the Hardware Sets.

2. Where exit devices are required on fire rated doors, provide devices complying with NFPA 80 and with UL labeling indicating "Fire Exit Hardware". Provide devices with the proper fasteners for installation as tested and listed by UL. Consult manufacturer's catalog and template book for specific requirements.
 3. Except on fire rated doors, provide exit devices with hex key dogging device to hold the pushbar and latch in a retracted position. Provide optional keyed cylinder dogging on devices where specified in Hardware Sets.
 4. Devices must fit flat against the door face with no gap that permits unauthorized dogging of the push bar. The addition of filler strips is not acceptable except in any case where the door light extends behind the device as in a full glass configuration.
 5. Flush End Caps: Provide heavy weight impact resistant flush end caps made of architectural metal in the same finish as the devices as in the Hardware Sets. Plastic end caps will not be acceptable.
 6. Lever Operating Trim: Where exit devices require lever trim, furnish manufacturer's heavy duty trim with cold forged escutcheons, beveled edges, and four threaded studs for thru-bolts.
 - a. Lock Trim Design: As indicated in Hardware Sets, provide finishes and designs to match that of the specified locksets. Provided free-wheeling type trim where indicated.
 - b. Where function of exit device requires a cylinder, provide an interchangeable core type keyed cylinder (Rim or Mortise) as specified in Hardware Sets.
 7. Vertical Rod Exit Devices: Provide and install interior surface and concealed vertical rod exit devices as Less Bottom Rod (LBR) unless otherwise indicated.
 8. Narrow Stile Applications: At doors constructed with narrow stiles, or as specified in Hardware Sets, provide devices designed for maximum 2" wide stiles.
 9. Dummy Push Bar: Nonfunctioning push bar matching functional push bar.
 10. Rail Sizing: Provide exit device rails factory sized for proper door width application.
 11. Through Bolt Installation: For exit devices and trim as indicated in Door Hardware Sets.
- B. Conventional Push Rail Exit Devices (Heavy Duty): ANSI/BHMA A156.3, Grade 1 certified panic and fire exit hardware devices furnished in the functions specified in the Hardware Sets. Mounting rails to be formed from smooth stainless steel, brass or bronze architectural materials no less than 0.072" thick, with push rails a minimum of 0.062" thickness. Painted or aluminum metal rails are not acceptable. Exit device latch to be investment cast stainless steel, pullman type, with deadlock feature.
1. Acceptable Manufacturers:
 - a. Von Duprin (VD) - 35A/98 XP Series.
 - b. No Substitution – Facility Standard.

2.9 ELECTROMECHANICAL CONVENTIONAL EXIT DEVICES

- A. Electrified Conventional Push Rail Devices (Heavy Duty): Subject to same compliance standards and requirements as mechanical exit devices, electrified devices to be of type and design as specified below. Include any specific controllers when conventional power supplies are not sufficient to provide the proper inrush current.
1. Acceptable Manufacturers:
- Von Duprin (VD) - 35A/98/99 Series.
 - No Substitution – Facility Standard.
- B. Electrified Options: As indicated in hardware sets, provide electrified exit device options including: electric latch retraction, electric dogging, outside door trim control, exit alarm, delayed egress, latchbolt monitoring, lock/unlock status monitoring, touchbar monitoring and request-to-exit signaling. Unless otherwise indicated, provide electrified exit devices standard as fail secure.

2.10 DOOR CLOSERS

- A. All door closers specified herein shall meet or exceed the following criteria:
- General: Door closers to be from one manufacturer, matching in design and style, with the same type door preparations and templates regardless of application or spring size. Closers to be non-handed with full sized covers including installation and adjusting information on inside of cover.
 - Standards: Closers to comply with UL-10C and UBC 7-2 for Positive Pressure Fire Test and be U.L. listed for use of fire rated doors.
 - Size of Units: Comply with manufacturer's written recommendations for sizing of door closers depending on size of door, exposure to weather, and anticipated frequency of use. Where closers are indicated for doors required to be accessible to the physically handicapped, provide units complying with ANSI ICC/A117.1.
 - Closer Arms: Provide heavy duty, forged steel closer arms unless otherwise indicated in Hardware Sets.
 - Where closers are indicated to have mechanical dead-stop, provide heavy duty arms and brackets with an integral positive stop.
 - Where closers are indicated to have mechanical hold open, provide heavy duty units with an additional built-in mechanical holder assembly designed to hold open against normal wind and traffic conditions. Holder to be manually selectable to on-off position.
 - Where closers are indicated to have a cushion-type stop, provide heavy duty arms and brackets with spring stop mechanism to cushion door when opened to maximum degree.
 - Closers shall not be installed on exterior or corridor side of doors; where possible install closers on door for optimum aesthetics. Provide drop plates or other accessories as required for proper mounting.
 - Closer Accessories: Provide door closer accessories including custom templates, special mounting brackets, spacers and drop plates, and through-bolt or security type fasteners as specified in the door Hardware Sets.

- B. Door Closers, Surface Mounted (Large Body Cast Iron): ANSI/BHMA A156.4, Grade 1 surface mounted, heavy duty door closers with complete spring power adjustment, sizes 1 thru 6; and fully operational adjustable according to door size, frequency of use, and opening force. Closers to be rack and pinion type, one piece cast iron body construction, with adjustable backcheck and separate non-critical valves for closing sweep and latch speed control.

1. Acceptable Manufacturers:

- a. LCN Closers (LC) - 4040XP Series.
- b. No Substitution – Facility Standard.

2.11 AUTOMATIC DOOR OPERATORS

- A. General: Provide operators of size recommended by manufacturer for door size, weight, and movement; for condition of exposure; and for compliance with UL 325. Coordinate operator mechanisms with door operation, hinges, and activation devices.

1. Fire-Rated Doors: Provide door operators for fire-rated door assemblies that comply with NFPA 80 for fire-rated door components and are listed and labeled by a qualified testing agency.

- B. Electromechanical Door Operators: Self-contained units powered by permanent magnet DC motor, with closing speed controlled mechanically by gear train, connections for power, activation and safety device wiring, and manual operation including spring closing when power is off.

- C. Brackets and Reinforcements: Manufacturer's standard, fabricated from aluminum with nonferrous shims for aligning system components.

- D. Standard: Certified ANSI/BHMA A156.19.

1. Performance Requirements:

- a. Opening Force if Power Fails: Not more than 15 lbf required to release a latch if provided, not more than 30 lbf required to manually set door in motion, and not more than 15 lbf required to fully open door.
- b. Entrapment Protection: Not more than 15 lbf required to prevent stopped door from closing or opening.

- E. Configuration: Surface mounted. Door operators to control single swinging and pair of swinging doors.

- F. Operation: Power opening and spring closing operation capable of meeting ANSI A117.1 accessibility guideline. Provide time delay for door to remain open before initiating closing cycle as required by ANSI/BHMA A156.19. When not in automatic mode, door operator to function as manual door closer with fully adjustable opening and closing forces, with or without electrical power.

1. On-off switch to control power to be key switch operated.

- G. Features: Operator units to have full feature adjustments for door opening and closing force and speed, backcheck, motor assist acceleration from 0 to 30 seconds, time delay, vestibule interface delay, obstruction recycle, and hold open time from 0 up to 30 seconds.

- H. Provide outputs and relays on board the operator to allow for coordination of exit device latch retraction, electric strikes, magnetic locks, card readers, safety and motion sensors and specified auxiliary contacts.
- I. Activation Devices: Provide activation devices in accordance with ANSI/BHMA A156.19 standard, for condition of exposure indicated and for long term, maintenance free operation under normal traffic load operation. Coordinate activation control with electrified hardware and access control interfaces. Activation switches are standard SPST, with optional DPDT availability.
- J. Signage: As required by cited ANSI/BHMA A156.19 standard for the type of operator.
 - 1. Acceptable Manufacturers:
 - a. Besam Automated Entrance Systems (BE) - SW100 Series.
 - b. Horton Automatics (HO) - 4000 Series.
 - c. LCN Closers (LC) - 4640 Series.

2.12 ARCHITECTURAL TRIM

A. Door Protective Trim

- 1. General: Door protective trim units to be of type and design as specified below or in the Hardware Sets.
- 2. Size: Fabricate protection plates (kick, armor, or mop) not more than 2" less than door width (LDW) on stop side of single doors and 1" LDW on stop side of pairs of doors, and not more than 1" less than door width on pull side. Coordinate and provide proper width and height as required where conflicting hardware dictates. Height to be as specified in the Hardware Sets.
- 3. Metal Protection Plates: ANSI/BHMA A156.6 certified metal protection plates (kick, armor, or mop), beveled on four edges (B4E), fabricated from the following:
 - a. Stainless Steel: 300 series, .050-inch thick, with countersunk screw holes (CSK).
- 4. Fasteners: Provide manufacturer's designated fastener type as specified in the Hardware Sets.
- 5. Metal Door Edging: Door protection edging fabricated from a minimum .050-inch thick metal sheet, formed into an angle or "U" cap shapes, surface or mortised mounted onto edge of door. Provide appropriate leg overlap to account for protection plates as required. Height to be as specified in the Hardware Sets.
- 6. Acceptable Manufacturers:
 - a. Ives (IV).
 - b. Rockwood Manufacturing (RO).

2.13 SLIDING WINDOW HARDWARE

- A. General: Provide Factory formed metal tracks designed to be installed on top and bottom of equal sliding glass panels. Include all required accessories.
- B. Roll Bearing Track for Sliding Windows/ Doors: Provide a smooth, ball bearing track system for sliding glass doors to move back and forth with ease.
 - 1. Acceptable Manufacturers:
 - a. Knape & Vogt
 - b. Or approved manufacturer.
 - 2. Product: Roll-Ezy Ball Bearing Track P992 ZC
 - 3. Composition and Material: Pre-coated steel or Zinc
 - a. 953
 - b. 992ASM
 - c. 993-12
 - d. 995
 - e. 997-1
 - f. 999-10
 - 4. Length: 144 inch track
 - 5. Finishes: Pre-coated Steel, Zinc
- C. Applicable Standards:
 - 1. Performance standard ANSI / BHMA A 156.9-2003
- D. Warranty: limited lifetime warranty.
- E. Maintenance: Inspect for proper fit annually and adjust as required.
- F. Provide Glass as specified in drawing.

2.14 DOOR STOPS AND HOLDERS

- A. General: Door stops and holders to be of type and design as specified below or in the Hardware Sets.
- B. Door Stops and Bumpers: ANSI/BHMA A156.16, Grade 1 certified door stops and wall bumpers. Provide wall bumpers, either convex or concave types with anchorage as indicated, unless floor or other types of door stops are specified in Hardware Sets. Do not mount floor stops where they will impede traffic. Where floor or wall bumpers are not appropriate, provide overhead type stops and holders.
 - 1. Acceptable Manufacturers:
 - a. Ives (IV).
 - b. Rockwood Manufacturing (RO).
 - c. Trimco (TC).
- C. Overhead Door Stops and Holders: ANSI/BHMA A156.6, Grade 1 certified overhead stops and holders to be surface or concealed types as indicated in Hardware Sets. Track, slide, arm and jamb bracket to be constructed of extruded bronze and shock absorber spring of heavy tempered steel. Provide non-handed design with mounting brackets as required for proper operation and function.

1. Acceptable Manufacturers:
 - a. Rixson Door Controls (RF).
 - b. Rockwood Manufacturing (RO).
 - c. Sargent Manufacturing (SA).

2.15 ARCHITECTURAL SEALS

- A. General: Thresholds, weatherstripping, and gasket seals to be of type and design as specified below or in the Hardware Sets. Provide continuous weatherstrip gasketing on exterior doors and provide smoke, light, or sound gasketing on interior doors where indicated. At exterior applications provide non-corrosive fasteners and elsewhere where indicated.
- B. Smoke Labeled Gasketing: Assemblies complying with NFPA 105 that are listed and labeled by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, for smoke control ratings indicated, based on testing according to UL 1784.
 1. Provide smoke labeled perimeter gasketing at all smoke labeled openings.
- C. Fire Labeled Gasketing: Assemblies complying with NFPA 80 that are listed and labeled by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, for fire ratings indicated, based on testing according to UL-10C.
 1. Provide intumescent seals as indicated to meet UL10C Standard for Positive Pressure Fire Tests of Door Assemblies, and UBC 7-2, Fire Tests of Door Assemblies.
- D. Sound-Rated Gasketing: Assemblies that are listed and labeled by a testing and inspecting agency, for sound ratings indicated, based on testing according to ASTM E 1408.
- E. Replaceable Seal Strips: Provide only those units where resilient or flexible seal strips are easily replaceable and readily available from stocks maintained by manufacturer.
- F. Acceptable Manufacturers:
 1. National Guard Products (NG).
 2. Pemko Manufacturing (PE).
 3. Reese Enterprises, Inc. (RS).

2.16 ELECTRONIC ACCESSORIES

- A. Key Switches: Key switches furnished standard with stainless steel single gang face plate with a 12/24VDC bi-color LED indicator. Integral backing bracket permits integration with any 1 1/4" or 1 1/2" mortise type cylinder. Key switches available as momentary or maintained action and in narrow face plate options.
 1. Acceptable Manufacturers:
 - a. Securitron (SU) - MK Series.
- B. Door Position Switches: Door position magnetic reed contact switches specifically designed for use in commercial door applications. On recessed models the contact and magnetic housing snap-lock into a 1" diameter hole. Surface mounted models include wide gap distance design

complete with armored flex cabling. Provide SPDT, N/O switches with optional Rare Earth Magnet installation on steel doors with flush top channels.

1. Acceptable Manufacturers:

- a. Securitron (SU) - DPS Series.

C. Proximity Access Cards and Credentials: RF programmable, 125 kHz access control/identification cards utilizing a passive, no battery design allowing for infinite number of reads. Cards are programmable in any HID proximity format up to 85 bits and compatible with all HID proximity readers.

1. Acceptable Manufacturers (125 kHz Proximity):

- a. HID Global (HD) - ISO Prox II Series.

D. Power Supplies: Provide Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory Listed 12VDC or 24VDC (field selectable) filtered and regulated power supplies. Include battery backup option with integral battery charging capability in addition to operating the DC load in event of line voltage failure. Provide the least number of units, at the appropriate amperage level, sufficient to exceed the required total draw for the specified electrified hardware and access control equipment.

1. Acceptable Manufacturers:

- a. Securitron (SU) - BPS Series.
b. Von Duprin (VO) - PS.

2.17 FABRICATION

- A. Fasteners: Provide door hardware manufactured to comply with published templates generally prepared for machine, wood, and sheet metal screws. Provide screws according to manufacturers recognized installation standards for application intended.

2.18 FINISHES

- A. Standard: Designations used in the Hardware Sets and elsewhere indicate hardware finishes complying with ANSI/BHMA A156.18, including coordination with traditional U.S. finishes indicated by certain manufacturers for their products.
- B. Provide quality of finish, including thickness of plating or coating (if any), composition, hardness, and other qualities complying with manufacturer's standards, but in no case less than specified by referenced standards for the applicable units of hardware.
- C. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine scheduled openings, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, labeled fire door assembly construction, wall and floor construction, and other conditions affecting performance.
- B. Notify architect of any discrepancies or conflicts between the door schedule, door types, drawings and scheduled hardware. Proceed only after such discrepancies or conflicts have been resolved in writing.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Hollow Metal Doors and Frames: Comply with ANSI/DHI A115 series.
- B. Wood Doors: Comply with ANSI/DHI A115-W series.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Install each item of mechanical and electromechanical hardware and access control equipment to comply with manufacturer's written instructions and according to specifications.
 - 1. Installers are to be trained and certified by the manufacturer on the proper installation and adjustment of fire, life safety, and security products including: hanging devices; locking devices; closing devices; and seals.
- B. Mounting Heights: Mount door hardware units at heights indicated in following applicable publications, unless specifically indicated or required to comply with governing regulations:
 - 1. Standard Steel Doors and Frames: DHI's "Recommended Locations for Architectural Hardware for Standard Steel Doors and Frames."
 - 2. Wood Doors: DHI WDHS.3, "Recommended Locations for Architectural Hardware for Wood Flush Doors."
 - 3. Where indicated to comply with accessibility requirements, comply with ANSI A117.1 "Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities."
 - 4. Provide blocking in drywall partitions where wall stops or other wall mounted hardware is located.
- C. Power Operator products and accessories are required to be installed through current members of the manufacturer's "Power Operator Preferred Installer" program.
- D. Retrofitting: Install door hardware to comply with manufacturer's published templates and written instructions. Where cutting and fitting are required to install door hardware onto or into surfaces that are later to be painted or finished in another way, coordinate removal, storage, and reinstallation of surface protective trim units with finishing work specified in Division 9 Sections. Do not install surface-mounted items until finishes have been completed on substrates involved.
- E. Thresholds: Set thresholds for exterior and acoustical doors in full bed of sealant complying with requirements specified in Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants."

- F. Storage: Provide a secure lock up for hardware delivered to the project but not yet installed. Control the handling and installation of hardware items so that the completion of the work will not be delayed by hardware losses before and after installation.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Field Inspection: Supplier will perform a final inspection of installed door hardware and state in report whether work complies with or deviates from requirements, including whether door hardware is properly installed, operating and adjusted.

3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Initial Adjustment: Adjust and check each operating item of door hardware and each door to ensure proper operation or function of every unit. Replace units that cannot be adjusted to operate as intended. Adjust door control devices to compensate for final operation of heating and ventilating equipment and to comply with referenced accessibility requirements.

3.6 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Protect all hardware stored on construction site in a covered and dry place. Protect exposed hardware installed on doors during the construction phase. Install any and all hardware at the latest possible time frame.
- B. Clean adjacent surfaces soiled by door hardware installation.
- C. Clean operating items as necessary to restore proper finish. Provide final protection and maintain conditions that ensure door hardware is without damage or deterioration at time of owner occupancy.

Hardware Schedule

Set: 1.0

Doors: 100.1, 129.1

2 Continuous Hinge	CFMHD1 PT		PE
1 Surface Vert Rod Exit	EL RX 3527A-TL 374Tx386DT(Std)	US26D	VD
1 Surface Vert Rod Exit	RX 3527A-DT 386DT(Std)	US26D	VD
2 Core	Uncombined Core w/2 Keys		
2 Cylinder, mortise	1E-74	626	BE
1 Door Closer	4040XP CUSH	AL	LC
1 Spacer	4040XP-61	AL	LC
1 Door Operator	SW100 (includes Actuator Switches)	689	BE

08 7100 - 19
DOOR HARDWARE

April 2015

A-012651
State of Kansas - Energy & Service Center

1 Threshold	273x3AFG		PE
2 Sweep	by Door Manufacturer		
1 Astragal Set	by Door Manufacturer		
2 Electric Power Transfer	EPT10	SP28	VD
2 Position Switch	DPS		SU
1 Keyswitch	MKA		SU
1 iClass Reader	R40 Reader 6120		HD
1 Power Supply	PS914 900-2RS		VD

Notes: ACCESS BY AUTHORIZED CARD CREDENTIAL OR MANUAL KEY. ACCESS CONTROL PROGRAMMABLE FOR PUSH / PULL OPERATION IS AVAILABLE. EXTERIOR ACTUATOR SWITCH ACTIVATED BY CARD READER. ALWAYS FREE EGRESS. SEQUENCE OPERATION WITH INTERIOR VESTIBULE DOOR AS DIRECTED BY OWNER. KEYSWITCH TO TURN OPERATOR ON/OFF FOR MAINTENANCE/SERVICE.

Set: 2.0

Doors: 100.2

2 Continuous Hinge	CFMHD1 PT		PE
1 Surface Vert Rod Exit	EL RX 3527A-TL 374Tx386DT(Std)	US26D	VD
1 Surface Vert Rod Exit	RX 3527A-DT 386DT(Std)	US26D	VD
2 Core	Uncombined Core w/2 Keys		
2 Cylinder, mortise	1E-74	626	BE
1 Door Closer	4040XP CUSH	AL	LC
1 Spacer	4040XP-61	AL	LC
1 Door Operator	SW100 (includes Actuator Switches)	689	BE
1 Astragal Set	by Door Manufacturer		
2 Electric Power Transfer	EPT10	SP28	VD
2 Position Switch	DPS		SU
1 Keyswitch	MKA		SU
1 iClass Reader	R40 Reader 6120		HD
1 Power Supply	PS914 900-2RS		VD

Notes: ACCESS BY MANUAL KEY UNLESS DEVICE IS HELD IN THE OPEN PUSH/PULL POSITION. ACCESS CONTROL PROGRAMMABLE FOR PUSH / PULL OPERATION IS AVAILABLE. ACTUATOR SWITCHES ALWAYS ACTIVE. ALWAYS FREE EGRESS. SEQUENCE OPERATION WITH EXTERIOR VESTIBULE DOOR AS DIRECTED BY OWNER. KEYSWITCH TO TURN OPERATOR ON/OFF FOR MAINTENANCE/SERVICE.

Set: 3.0

Doors: 127.2, 131.2, 136.2, 141.2

1 Core	Uncombined Core w/2 Keys		
1 Cylinder, mortise	1E-74	626	BE
1 Position Switch	DPS		SU
1 iClass Reader	R40 Reader 6120		HD

Notes: ALL REMAINING TO BE PROVIDED BY DOOR SUPPLIER. COORDINATE CARD READER WITH ACCESS CONTROL PROVIDER AT OPENINGS THAT REQUIRE ACCESS CONTROL.

Set: 4.0

Doors: 127.1

1 Continuous Hinge	CFMHD1 PT		PE
1 Rim Exit Device	RX 98EO	US26D	VD
1 Door Closer	4040XP CUSH	AL	LC

08 7100 - 20
DOOR HARDWARE

April 2015

A-012651
State of Kansas - Energy & Service Center

1 Threshold	273x3AFG		PE
1 Gasketing	2891AS		PE
1 Rain Guard	346C		PE
1 Sweep	3452AV		PE
1 Electric Power Transfer	EPT10	SP28	VD
1 Position Switch	DPS		SU
1 Power Supply	PS914		VD

Set: 5.0

Doors: 131.1

2 Hinge (heavy weight)	T4A3386 NRP 4-1/2" x 4-1/2"	US32D	MK
1 Hinge (heavy weight)	T4A3386 CC8 4-1/2" x 4-1/2"	US32D	MK
1 Electrified Mortise Lock	47HW7DEU 15R RQE fail secure	630	BE
1 Core	Uncombined Core w/2 Keys		
1 Door Closer	4040XP CUSH	AL	LC
1 Threshold	273x3AFG		PE
1 Gasketing	2891AS		PE
1 Rain Guard	346C		PE
1 Sweep	3452AV		PE
1 Position Switch	DPS		SU
1 iClass Reader	R40 Reader 6120		HD
1 Power Supply	BPS-24-1		SU

Notes: ACCESS BY AUTHORIZED CARD CREDENTIAL OR MANUAL KEY. ALWAYS FREE EGRESS.

Set: 6.0

Doors: 135.2, 136.1, 141.1

3 Hinge (heavy weight)	T4A3386 NRP 4-1/2" x 4-1/2"	US32D	MK
1 Mortise Lock, storeroom	47H7D 15R	626	BE
1 Core	Uncombined Core w/2 Keys		
1 Door Closer	4040XP HCUSH	AL	LC
1 Threshold	273x3AFG		PE
1 Gasketing	2891AS		PE
1 Rain Guard	346C		PE
1 Sweep	3452AV		PE
1 Position Switch	DPS		SU

Set: 7.0

Doors: 139.0, S104

6 Hinge (heavy weight)	T4A3386 NRP 4-1/2" x 4-1/2"	US32D	MK
1 Surface Vert Rod Exit	9827EO	US26D	VD
1 Surface Vert Rod Exit	9827L-NL 06 06SS-32D 996L-NL	US32D	VD
1 Core	Uncombined Core w/2 Keys		
1 Cylinder, rim	1E-72	626	BE
1 Threshold	273x3AFG		PE
1 Gasketing	2891AS		PE
1 Rain Guard	346C		PE
2 Sweep	3452AV		PE
1 Astragal	303AS		PE
1 Position Switch	DPS		SU

Set: 8.0

Doors: 101.1, 101.2

08 7100 - 21
DOOR HARDWARE

April 2015

A-012651
State of Kansas - Energy & Service Center

2 Hinge (heavy weight)	T4A3786 NRP 4-1/2" x 4-1/2"	US26D	MK
1 Hinge (heavy weight)	T4A3786 CC8 4-1/2" x 4-1/2"	US26D	MK
1 Electrified Mortise Lock	47HW7DEU 15R RQE fail secure	626	BE
1 Core	Uncombined Core w/2 Keys		
1 Door Closer	4040XP CUSH	AL	LC
1 Kickplate	K1050 10" x 2" LDW 4B3 CSK	US32D	RO
3 Silencer	608		RO
1 Position Switch	DPS		SU
1 iClass Reader	R40 Reader 6120		HD
1 Power Supply	BPS-24-1		SU

Notes: ACCESS BY AUTHORIZED CARD CREDENTIAL OR MANUAL KEY. ALWAYS FREE EGRESS.

Set: 9.0

Doors: 102.0

3 Hinge	TA2714 4-1/2" x 4-1/2"	US26D	MK
1 Cylindrical Lock, entrance	9K37AB 15D S3	626	BE
1 Core	Uncombined Core w/2 Keys		
1 Door Closer	4040XP H	AL	LC
1 Kickplate	K1050 10" x 2" LDW 4B3 CSK	US32D	RO
1 Wall Stop	409	US32D	RO
3 Silencer	608		RO

Set: 10.0

Doors: 103.0, 223.0

3 Hinge	TA2714 NRP 4-1/2" x 4-1/2"	US26D	MK
1 Cylindrical Lock, storeroom	9K37D 15D S3	626	BE
1 Core	Uncombined Core w/2 Keys		
1 Door Closer	4040XP CUSH	AL	LC
1 Kickplate	K1050 10" x 2" LDW 4B3 CSK	US32D	RO
1 Gasketing	S88D		PE

Set: 11.0

Doors: 104.0, 110.2, 117.0, 124.0, 133.1, 135.1, 204.0, 209.0, 215.0, 219.0

3 Hinge	TA2714 4-1/2" x 4-1/2"	US26D	MK
1 Cylindrical Lock, storeroom	9K37D 15D S3	626	BE
1 Core	Uncombined Core w/2 Keys		
1 Door Closer	4040XP REG	AL	LC
1 Kickplate	K1050 10" x 2" LDW 4B3 CSK	US32D	RO
1 Wall Stop	409	US32D	RO
3 Silencer	608		RO

Notes: GASKETING AT OPEINGS 209 AND 219.

Set: 12.0

Doors: 105.0

3 Hinge	TA2714 4-1/2" x 4-1/2"	US26D	MK
1 Cylindrical Lock, classroom	9K37R 15D S3	626	BE
1 Core	Uncombined Core w/2 Keys		
1 Door Closer	4040XP H	AL	LC
1 Kickplate	K1050 10" x 2" LDW 4B3 CSK	US32D	RO

08 7100 - 22
DOOR HARDWARE

April 2015

A-012651
State of Kansas - Energy & Service Center

1 Wall Stop	409	US32D	RO
3 Silencer	608		RO

Set: 13.0

Doors: 106.0, 125.1, 125.2, 132.1, 132.2

3 Hinge	TA2714 4-1/2" x 4-1/2"	US26D	MK
1 Cylindrical Lock, entrance	9K37AB 15D S3	626	BE
1 Core	Uncombined Core w/2 Keys		
1 Surface Closer	4040XPT-Pull BUMPER	AL	LC
1 Kickplate	K1050 10" x 2" LDW 4B3 CSK	US32D	RO
3 Silencer	608		RO

Notes: S88D @ 132.2

Set: 14.0

Doors: 107.0, 108.0, 109.0, 111.0, 123.1, 206.0, 207.0, 208.0

3 Hinge	TA2714 4-1/2" x 4-1/2"	US26D	MK
1 Cylindrical Lock, entrance	9K37AB 15D S3	626	BE
1 Core	Uncombined Core w/2 Keys		
1 Door Closer	4040XP REG	AL	LC
1 Kickplate	K1050 10" x 2" LDW 4B3 CSK	US32D	RO
1 Wall Stop	409	US32D	RO
3 Silencer	608		RO

Set: 15.0

Doors: 110.1, 120.0, 200.0

2 Hinge (heavy weight)	T4A3786 4-1/2" x 4-1/2"	US26D	MK
1 Hinge (heavy weight)	T4A3786 CC8 4-1/2" x 4-1/2"	US26D	MK
1 Electrified Mortise Lock	47HW7DEU 15R RQE fail secure	626	BE
1 Core	Uncombined Core w/2 Keys		
1 Door Closer	4040XP REG	AL	LC
1 Kickplate	K1050 10" x 2" LDW 4B3 CSK	US32D	RO
1 Wall Stop	409	US32D	RO
3 Silencer	608		RO
1 Position Switch	DPS		SU
1 iClass Reader	R40 Reader 6120		HD
1 Power Supply	BPS-24-1		SU

Notes: ACCESS BY AUTHORIZED CARD CREDENTIAL OR MANUAL KEY. ALWAYS FREE EGRESS.

Set: 16.0

Doors: 112.0

3 Hinge (heavy weight)	T4A3386 NRP 4-1/2" x 4-1/2"	US32D	MK
1 Rim Exit Device	98EO	US26D	VD
1 Door Closer	4040XP CUSH	AL	LC
1 Threshold	171A		PE
1 Gasketing	S88D		PE
1 Position Switch	DPS		SU

Set: 17.0

Doors: 115.0

08 7100 - 23
DOOR HARDWARE

April 2015

A-012651
State of Kansas - Energy & Service Center

1 Continuous Hinge	DSHP01C-84		PE
1 Mortise Lock, behavioral health	SPSL-ML-W10 16F	630	BE
1 Core	Uncombined Core w/2 Keys		
1 Wall Stop	409	US32D	RO
1 Emergency Stop	ERS84C-NBxHT		PE

Notes: COORDINATE ANY SPECIAL BACKSETS OR TRIM NOTCHING PRIOR TO ORDERING MATERIAL. BEHAVIORAL HEALTH SERIES RESCUE HINGE AND EMERGENCY STOP.

Set: 18.0

Doors: 116.0

3 Hinge	TA2714 4-1/2" x 4-1/2"	US26D	MK
1 Cylindrical Lock, storeroom	9K37D 15D S3	626	BE
1 Core	Uncombined Core w/2 Keys		
1 Wall Stop	409	US32D	RO
3 Silencer	608		RO

Set: 19.0

Doors: 119.0

2 Hinge (heavy weight)	T4A3786 NRP 4-1/2" x 4-1/2"	US26D	MK
1 Hinge (heavy weight)	T4A3786 CC8 4-1/2" x 4-1/2"	US26D	MK
1 Electrified Mortise Lock	47HW7DEU 15R RQE fail secure	626	BE
1 Core	Uncombined Core w/2 Keys		
1 Door Closer	4040XP EDA	AL	LC
1 Kickplate	K1050 10" x 2" LDW 4B3 CSK	US32D	RO
1 Wall Stop	409	US32D	RO
3 Silencer	608		RO
1 Position Switch	DPS		SU
1 iClass Reader	R40 Reader 6120		HD
1 Power Supply	BPS-24-1		SU

Notes: ACCESS BY AUTHORIZED CARD CREDENTIAL OR MANUAL KEY. ALWAYS FREE EGRESS.

Set: 20.0

Doors: 121.0

3 Hinge	TA2714 4-1/2" x 4-1/2"	US26D	MK
1 Cylindrical Lock, privacy	9K30L 15D S3	626	BE
1 Door Closer	4040XP REG	AL	LC
1 Kickplate	K1050 10" x 2" LDW 4B3 CSK	US32D	RO
1 Wall Stop	409	US32D	RO
1 Gasketing	S88D		PE

Set: 21.0

Doors: 123.2

6 Hinge	TA2714 4-1/2" x 4-1/2"	US26D	MK
1 Dust Proof Strike	570	US26D	RO
2 Flush Bolt - HM	555	US26D	RO
1 Cylindrical Lock, classroom	9K37R 15D S3	626	BE
1 Core	Uncombined Core w/2 Keys		
2 Surface Overhead Stop	10-X36	630	RF
2 Door Closer	4040XP REG	AL	LC
2 Silencer	608		RO

08 7100 - 24
DOOR HARDWARE

April 2015

A-012651
State of Kansas - Energy & Service Center

Notes: Z ASTRAGAL TO BE PROVIDED BY HOLLOW METAL DOOR SUPPLIER.

Set: 22.0

Doors: 123.3

3 Hinge	TA2714 4-1/2" x 4-1/2"	US26D	MK
1 Cylindrical Lock, classroom	9K37R 15D S3	626	BE
1 Core	Uncombined Core w/2 Keys		
1 Surface Closer	4040XPT-Pull BUMPER	AL	LC
3 Silencer	608		RO

Set: 23.0

Doors: 125.3, 126.2, S100

3 Hinge	TA2714 NRP 4-1/2" x 4-1/2"	US26D	MK
1 Cylindrical Lock, classroom	9K37R 15D S3	626	BE
1 Core	Uncombined Core w/2 Keys		
1 Door Closer	4040XP CUSH	AL	LC
1 Gasketing	S88D		PE

Set: 24.0

Doors: 126.1

3 Hinge	TA2714 4-1/2" x 4-1/2"	US26D	MK
1 Cylindrical Lock, classroom	9K37R 15D S3	626	BE
1 Core	Uncombined Core w/2 Keys		
1 Surface Overhead Stop	10-X36	630	RF
3 Silencer	608		RO

Set: 25.0

Doors: 126.2

6 Hinge (heavy weight)	T4A3786 NRP 4-1/2" x 4-1/2"	US26D	MK
1 Surface Vert Rod Exit	9827EO	US26D	VD
1 Surface Vert Rod Exit	9827L 996L(Std)	US26D	VD
1 Core	Uncombined Core w/2 Keys		
1 Cylinder, rim	1E-72	626	BE
2 Door Closer	4040XP CUSH	AL	LC
1 Gasketing	S88D		PE

Set: 26.0

Doors: 128.0

6 Hinge	TA2314 NRP 4-1/2" x 4-1/2"	US32D	MK
1 Dust Proof Strike	570	US26D	RO
2 Flush Bolt - HM	555	US26D	RO
1 Cylindrical Lock, storeroom	9K37D 15D S3	626	BE
1 Core	Uncombined Core w/2 Keys		
1 Surface Overhead Stop	10-X36	630	RF
1 Door Closer	4040XP HCUSH	AL	LC

Notes: Z ASTRAGAL BY HOLLOW METAL DOOR SUPPLIER.

08 7100 - 25
DOOR HARDWARE

April 2015

A-012651
State of Kansas - Energy & Service Center

Set: 27.0

Doors: 129.2

2 Continuous Hinge	CFMHD1		PE
1 Core	Uncombined Core w/2 Keys		
1 Cylinder, mortise	1E-74	626	BE
2 Push Bar & Pull	BF15847	US32D	RO
1 Spacer	4040XP-61	AL	LC
1 Door Closer	4040XP EDA	AL	LC
1 Door Operator	SW100 (includes Actuator Switches)	689	BE
2 Wall Stop	409	US32D	RO
1 Set Weatherstrip	by Door Manufacturer		
1 Astragal Set	by Door Manufacturer		00
1 Keyswitch	MKA		SU

Notes: SEQUENCE OPERATION WITH EXTERIOR VESTIBULE DOOR AS DIRECTED BY OWNER. KEYSWITCH TO TURN OPERATOR ON/OFF FOR MAINTENANCE/SERVICE.

Set: 28.0

Doors: 130.1, 142.1

3 Hinge (heavy weight)	T4A3786 4-1/2" x 4-1/2"	US26D	MK
1 Rim Exit Device	98L-BE 996L-BE	US26D	VD
1 Door Closer	4040XP CUSH	AL	LC
1 Kickplate	K1050 10" x 2" LDW 4B3 CSK	US32D	RO
1 Gasketing	S88D		PE

Set: 29.0

Doors: 133.2

3 Hinge (heavy weight)	T4A3386 CC8 4-1/2" x 4-1/2"	US32D	MK
3 Hinge (heavy weight)	T4A3386 4-1/2" x 4-1/2"	US32D	MK
1 Electrified Mortise Lock	47HW7DEU 15R RQE fail secure	626	BE
1 Core	Uncombined Core w/2 Keys		
1 Door Closer	4040XP REG	AL	LC
1 Wall Stop	409	US32D	RO
1 Threshold	171A		PE
1 Gasketing	S88D		PE
1 Position Switch	DPS		SU
1 iClass Reader	R40 Reader 6120		HD
1 Power Supply	BPS-24-1		SU

Notes: ACCESS BY AUTHORIZED CARD CREDENTIAL OR MANUAL KEY. ALWAYS FREE EGRESS.

Set: 30.0

Doors: 134.0, S102

3 Hinge	TA2714 4-1/2" x 4-1/2"	US26D	MK
1 Cylindrical Lock, classroom	9K37R 15D S3	626	BE
1 Core	Uncombined Core w/2 Keys		
1 Door Closer	4040XP REG	AL	LC
1 Wall Stop	409	US32D	RO
3 Silencer	608		RO

Set: 31.0

Doors: 138.0, 140.0, 217.0, 218.0

08 7100 - 26
DOOR HARDWARE

April 2015

A-012651
State of Kansas - Energy & Service Center

3 Hinge (heavy weight)	T4A3786 4-1/2" x 4-1/2"	US26D	MK
1 Push Plate	70C	US32D	RO
1 Pull Plate	110x70C	US32D	RO
1 Door Closer	4040XP REG	AL	LC
1 Wall Stop	409	US32D	RO
1 Gasketing	S88D		PE

Set: 32.0

Doors: 141.3

3 Hinge	TA2714 NRP 4-1/2" x 4-1/2"	US26D	MK
1 Cylindrical Lock, classroom	9K37R 15D S3	626	BE
1 Core	Uncombined Core w/2 Keys		
1 Door Closer	4040XP EDA	AL	LC
1 Wall Stop	409	US32D	RO
1 Gasketing	S88D		PE

Set: 33.0

Doors: 143.0, 203.0

3 Hinge	TA2714 NRP 4-1/2" x 4-1/2"	US26D	MK
1 Cylindrical Lock, storeroom	9K37D 15D S3	626	BE
1 Core	Uncombined Core w/2 Keys		
1 Door Closer	4040XP EDA	AL	LC
1 Wall Stop	409	US32D	RO
1 Gasketing	S88D		PE

Set: 34.0

Doors: 144.0

3 Hinge	TA2714 NRP 4-1/2" x 4-1/2"	US26D	MK
1 Trilogy Proximity Lockset	PDL30200 B	26D	AL
1 Core	Uncombined Core w/2 Keys		
1 Door Closer	4040XP HCUSH	AL	LC
1 Kickplate	K1050 10" x 2" LDW 4B3 CSK	US32D	RO
3 Silencer	608		RO

Notes: ACCESS BY AUTHORIZED CODE OR MANUAL KEY. ALWAYS FREE EGRESS.

Set: 35.0

Doors: 145.0

3 Hinge	TA2714 NRP 4-1/2" x 4-1/2"	US26D	MK
1 Trilogy Proximity Lockset	PDL30200 B	26D	AL
1 Core	Uncombined Core w/2 Keys		
1 Door Closer	4040XP EDA	AL	LC
1 Kickplate	K1050 10" x 2" LDW 4B3 CSK	US32D	RO
1 Wall Stop	409	US32D	RO
1 Gasketing	S88D		PE

Notes: ACCESS BY AUTHORIZED CODE OR MANUAL KEY. ALWAYS FREE EGRESS.

Set: 36.0

Doors: 146

2 Continuous Hinge	CFMHD1 PT		PE
--------------------	-----------	--	----

08 7100 - 27
DOOR HARDWARE

April 2015

A-012651
State of Kansas - Energy & Service Center

1 Surface Vert Rod Exit	EL RX 9827L 06 LBR 996L(Std)	US26D	VD
1 Surface Vert Rod Exit	RX 9827L-DT LBR 996L-DT	US26D	VD
1 Core	Uncombined Core w/2 Keys		
1 Cylinder, rim	1E-72	626	BE
2 Door Closer	4040XP EDA	AL	LC
2 Kickplate	K1050 10" x 2" LDW 4B3 CSK	US32D	RO
2 Wall Stop	409	US32D	RO
1 Gasketing	S88D		PE
1 Astragal	S772D		PE
2 Electric Power Transfer	EPT10	SP28	VD
2 Position Switch	DPS		SU
1 iClass Reader	R40 Reader 6120		HD
1 Power Supply	PS914		VD

Notes: ACCESS BY AUTHORIZED CARD CREDENTIAL OR MANUAL KEY. ALWAYS FREE EGRESS.

Set: 37.0

Doors: 130.2, 142.2

3 Hinge (heavy weight)	T4A3786 4-1/2" x 4-1/2"	US26D	MK
1 Rim Exit Device	98L-BE 996L-BE	US26D	VD
1 Door Closer	4040XP REG	AL	LC
1 Kickplate	K1050 10" x 2" LDW 4B3 CSK	US32D	RO
1 Wall Stop	409	US32D	RO
1 Gasketing	S88D		PE

Set: 38.0

Doors: 201.0

2 Hinge (heavy weight)	T4A3786 NRP 4-1/2" x 4-1/2"	US26D	MK
1 Hinge (heavy weight)	T4A3786 CC8 4-1/2" x 4-1/2"	US26D	MK
1 Electrified Mortise Lock	47HW7TWEL 15R fail safe	626	BE
1 Core	Uncombined Core w/2 Keys		
1 Surface Closer	4040XPT-Pull BUMPER	AL	LC
1 Kickplate	K1050 10" x 2" LDW 4B3 CSK	US32D	RO
3 Silencer	608		RO
1 Position Switch	DPS		SU
1 iClass Reader	R40 Reader 6120		HD
1 Power Supply	BPS-24-1		SU

Notes: ACCESS BY AUTHORIZED CARD CREDENTIAL OR MANUAL KEY. ACCESS CONTROL IN/OUT. FAIL SAFE.

Set: 39.0

Doors: 202.0

3 Hinge	TA2714 4-1/2" x 4-1/2"	US26D	MK
1 Cylindrical Lock, passage	9K30N 15D S3	626	BE
1 Door Closer	4040XP CUSH	AL	LC
1 Kickplate	K1050 10" x 2" LDW 4B3 CSK	US32D	RO
1 Gasketing	S88D		PE

Set: 40.0

Doors: 223B

1 Cylindrical Lock, storeroom	9K37D 15D S3	626	BE
-------------------------------	--------------	-----	----

08 7100 - 28
DOOR HARDWARE

April 2015

A-012651
State of Kansas - Energy & Service Center

1 Core Uncombined Core w/2 Keys

Notes: ALL REMAINING TO BE PROVIDED BY DOOR PROVIDER.

Set: 41.0

Doors: 205.0

3 Hinge	TA2314 4-1/2" x 4-1/2"	US32D	MK
1 Cylindrical Lock, storeroom	9K37D 15D S3	626	BE
1 Core	Uncombined Core w/2 Keys		
1 Wall Stop	409	US32D	RO
1 Gasketing	S88D		PE

Set: 42.0

Doors: 214.0, 221.0, 222.0

3 Hinge	TA2714 4-1/2" x 4-1/2"	US26D	MK
1 Cylindrical Lock, passage	9K30N 15D S3	626	BE
1 Door Closer	4040XP CUSH	AL	LC
1 Gasketing	S88D		PE

Set: 43.0

Doors: 210.0

3 Hinge	TA2714 4-1/2" x 4-1/2"	US26D	MK
1 Cylindrical Lock, classroom	9K37R 15D S3	626	BE
1 Core	Uncombined Core w/2 Keys		
1 Door Closer	4040XP H	AL	LC
1 Kickplate	K1050 10" x 2" LDW 4B3 CSK	US32D	RO
1 Wall Stop	409	US32D	RO
1 Gasketing	S88D		PE

Set: 44.0

Doors: 212.0

6 Hinge (heavy weight)	T4A3786 4-1/2" x 4-1/2"	US26D	MK
1 Dust Proof Strike	570	US26D	RO
1 Auto Flush Bolt WD	2845	US26D	RO
1 Cylindrical Lock, passage	9K30N 15D S3	626	BE
1 Coordinator	2600	Black	RO
2 Mounting Bracket	2601 Mounting Brackets	Black	RO
2 Door Closer	4040XP CUSH	AL	LC
2 Kickplate	K1050 10" x 2" LDW 4B3 CSK	US32D	RO
1 Gasketing	S88D		PE
1 Astragal	S772D		PE

END OF SECTION 087100

08 7100 - 29
DOOR HARDWARE

SECTION 087113 - AUTOMATIC DOOR OPERATORS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Low energy automatic door operators for swinging doors.

- B. Related Sections:

- 1. Division 08 Section "Door Schedule".
 - 2. Division 08 Section "Hollow Metal Doors and Frames".
 - 3. Division 08 Section "Flush Wood Doors".
 - 4. Division 08 Section "Door Hardware".
 - 5. Division 08 Section "Access Control Hardware".
 - 6. Division 26 Section "Electrical".

- A. Codes and Standards: Comply with the version year adopted by the Authority Having Jurisdiction.

- 1. ANSI A117.1 - Accessible and Usable Buildings and Facilities.
 - 2. ANSI/BHMA A156.4 - Door Controls, Door Closers.
 - 3. ANSI/BHMA A156.19 - Power Assist and Low-Energy Power Operated Doors.
 - 4. ICC/IBC - International Building Code.
 - 5. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code.
 - 6. NFPA 80 - Fire Doors and Windows.
 - 7. NFPA 101 - Life Safety Code.
 - 8. NFPA 105 - Installation of Smoke Door Assemblies.
 - 9. UL/ULC and CSA C22.2 - Standards for Automatic Door Operators Used on Fire and Smoke Barrier Doors and Systems of Doors.
 - 10. UL 325 - Door, Drapery, Gate, Louver, and Window Operators and Systems.
 - 11. State Building Codes, Local Amendments.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Automatic door operators to be used on interior or exterior doors; up to 200 pounds (91 kg) weight and maximum door width of 48" (1219 mm).
 - 1. Auto door operator capable of operating within temperature ranges of -22°F (-30°C) and 122°F (50°C).

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Manufacturer's product data sheets including installation details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for automatic door operators, including activation devices. Include operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include details and attachments to other work.
 - 1. Include locations and elevations of each unique entrance showing activation devices.
 - 2. Indicate required clearances, components, and location and size of field connections.
 - 3. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and activation wiring.
- C. Qualification Data: Provide copy of manufacturer's official certification or accreditation document indicating proof of status as a qualified and authorized installer of automatic door operators and accessories.
- D. Operating and Maintenance Manuals: Provide manufacturer's operating and maintenance manual for each item comprising the automatic door operator installation in quantity as required in Division 01, Closeout Submittals. The manual to include the name, address, and contact information of the manufacturer and Installer providing the operators and installation. The final copies delivered after completion of the installation test to include "as built" modifications made during installation, checkout, and acceptance.
- E. Warranties and Maintenance: Special warranties and maintenance agreements specified in this Section.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Manufacturer's authorized representative who is trained and approved for installation and maintenance of units required for this Project.
- B. Certified Installer Qualifications: Locally certified ASSA ABLOY Power Operator Preferred Installer required for the installation and maintenance of the automatic door operator units and accessories indicated for the Project.
- C. Source Limitations: Obtain automatic door operators, including activation devices, from single source, qualified supplier unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- E. Exit Door Requirements: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction for doors with automatic door operators serving as a component of a required means of egress.
- F. Fire Rated Door Assemblies: Provide operators for fire rated door assemblies that are listed and labeled by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for use on types and sizes of labeled fire doors required.
- G. Pre-Submittal Conference: Conduct coordination conference in compliance with requirements in Division 01 Section "Project Meetings" with attendance by representatives of Supplier, Installer, and Contractor to review proper methods and the procedures for receiving, handling, and installing automatic door operators.

1. Prior to installation of automatic door operators, arrange for certified Installer's representative to conduct a project specific meeting to review the installation and maintenance of their respective products. Project meeting to be attended by representatives of related trades furnishing and installing the aluminum, hollow metal and wood doors sections.
2. Review and finalize construction schedule and verify availability of materials.

1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Electrical Systems Coordination: Coordinate the layout and installation of scheduled automatic door operators and related activation devices, with required connections to source power junction boxes, remote power supplies, access control equipment, detection and monitoring hardware, and fire alarm system.
- B. Templates: Obtain and distribute to the parties involved, templates for doors, frames, operators, and other work specified to be factory prepared and reinforced for installing automatic door operators. Check Shop Drawings of other work to confirm that adequate provisions are made for locating and installing automatic door operators to comply with indicated requirements.
- C. Door and Frame Preparation: Related Division 08 Sections (Steel, Aluminum and Wood) doors and corresponding frames are to be prepared, reinforced and pre-wired (if applicable) to receive the installation of the specified automatic door operators without additional in-field modifications.

1.7 WARRANTY

- A. General Warranty: Reference Division 01, General Requirements. Special warranties specified in this Article shall not deprive Owner of other rights Owner may have under other provisions of the Contract Documents and shall be in addition to, and run concurrent with, other warranties made by Contractor under requirements of the Contract Documents.
- B. Special Warranty: Written warranty, executed by manufacturer, agreeing to repair or replace components of automatic door operators that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period after final acceptance by Owner. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 1. Faulty or sporadic operation of automatic door operator, including activation and safety devices.
 2. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal weathering or use.
- C. Special Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.
- D. Provide extended warranty from defects in material or workmanship under normal use for a period of 3 years from the date of substantial completion for units installed by a certified ASSA ABLOY Power Operator Preferred Installer in accordance with the manufacturer's written warranty certificate.

1.8 MAINTENANCE SERVICE

- A. Maintenance Service: Beginning at Substantial Completion, and running concurrent with the specified warranty period, provide continuous (6) months full maintenance by skilled employees of automatic door operator Installer. Include planned and preventive maintenance, repair or